

CDs and Cassettes
available

C O L L O Q U I A L
CROATIAN

The Complete Course for Beginners

Celia Hawkesworth

**Also available as a printed book
see title verso for ISBN details**

Colloquial Croatian

The Colloquial Series

Series Adviser: Gary King

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------|----------------------|
| Afrikaans | French | Portuguese of Brazil |
| Albanian | German | Romanian |
| Amharic | Greek | Russian |
| *Arabic (Levantine) | *Gujarati | Scottish Gaelic |
| Arabic of Egypt | Hebrew | Serbian |
| *Arabic of the Gulf and Saudi Arabia | Hindi | Slovak |
| *Basque | Hungarian | Slovene |
| Breton | Icelandic | *Somali |
| *Bulgarian | Indonesian | Spanish |
| Cambodian | Italian | Spanish of Latin |
| Cantonese | Japanese | America |
| Catalan | Korean | Swahili |
| Chinese | Latvian | Swedish |
| Croatian | Lithuanian | Tamil |
| Czech | Malay | Thai |
| Danish | Mongolian | Turkish |
| Dutch | Norwegian | Ukrainian |
| English | *Panjabi | *Urdu |
| Estonian | Persian | Vietnamese |
| Finnish | Polish | Welsh |
| | Portuguese | |

COLLOQUIAL CD-ROMs

Multimedia Language Courses

Chinese

French

Portuguese

Spanish

Accompanying cassette(s) and CDs are available for all the above titles (cassettes only for the titles marked with *). They can be ordered through your bookseller, or send payment with order to Routledge Ltd, ITPS, Cheriton House, North Way, Andover, Hants SP10 5BE, or to Routledge Inc, 270 Madison Ave, New York, NY 10016, USA.

COLLOQUIAL 2s Series

The Next Step in Language Learning

Dutch

French

Italian

Russian

Spanish

Spanish of Latin America

Colloquial Croatian

The Complete Course for Beginners

Celia Hawkesworth
with Ivana Jović



LONDON AND NEW YORK

First published 2006 by Routledge 2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN
Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by Routledge 270 Madison Ave, New York,
NY 10016

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group

This edition published in the Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2006.

“To purchase your own copy of this or any of Taylor & Francis or Routledge’s collection of
thousands of eBooks please go to <http://www.ebookstore.tandf.co.uk/>.”

© 2006 Celia Hawkesworth

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or
by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including
photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission
in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data A catalogue record for this book is available from
the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data Hawkesworth, Celia, 1942– Colloquial
Croatian: the complete course for beginners/ Celia Hawkesworth; in association with Ivana Jović.
p. cm – (The colloquial series) Includes index. 1. Croatian language – Spoken Croatian. I. Jović,
Ivana. II. Title. II. Series PG1224.8.H39 2005 491.8’383421 – dc22 2005001198

ISBN 0-203-64112-4 Master e-book ISBN

ISBN 0-415-34896-X (pbk)

ISBN 0-415-34895-1 (Print Edition) (audio CDs)

ISBN 0-415-34894-3 (Print Edition) (audio cassettes)

ISBN 0-415-34893-5 (Print Edition) (pack)

Contents

| | |
|---|------|
| Acknowledgements | viii |
| Map of Croatia | ix |
| | |
| Introduction | 1 |
| Pronunciation and alphabet | 4 |
| 1 Na putu On the way | 6 |
| 2 Razgovor o putovanju Conversation about travelling | 20 |
| 3 Dolazak u Zagreb Arrival in Zagreb | 33 |
| 4 Svatko ide na svoju stranu Each goes his own way | 48 |
| 5 Dolazak u hotel Arrival at the hotel | 61 |
| 6 Razgovor o stanu Conversation about a flat | 74 |
| 7 Na pošti At the post office | 86 |
| 8 U restoranu In the restaurant | 95 |
| 9 Na ulici In the street | 108 |
| 10 Posjet prijateljima Visiting friends | 122 |
| 11 Obiteljski odnosi Family relationships | 134 |
| 12 Putni planovi Travel plans | 149 |
| 13 U kazalištu At the theatre | 160 |
| 14 Pakiranje Packing | 174 |
| 15 Polazak Departure | 187 |
| 16 U kvaru Breakdown | 197 |
| 17 U kupnji Shopping | 209 |
| 18 Prometna nesreća Road accident | 226 |
| 19 Razgovor o svakodnevnom životu Conversation about everyday life | 242 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 20 Kraj The end | 257 |
| Grammar summary | 273 |
| Key to exercises | 286 |
| Translations of main texts | 307 |
| Croatian–English glossary | 320 |
| English–Croatian glossary | 343 |
| Subject index | 352 |

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank the friends and colleagues who have helped with the various stages in the evolution of this book: Nada Šoljan and Damir Kalogjera, for their advice on the original version; and Ljiljana Gjurgjan, Višnja Josipović and Vesna Domany-Hardy for their suggestions for the two subsequent editions of *Colloquial Croatian and Serbian*. The present work has benefited from the invaluable expertise of Ivana Jović, who has enriched the original units with many new exercises. She also provided the photographs. For all this, her patience, dedication and unfailing good humour throughout the preparation of this book, I shall always be deeply grateful.



Introduction

Learning Croatian

Pronunciation

Croatian, and its close relations, Bosnian and Serbian, belong to the South Slavonic group of languages, along with Bulgarian, Macedonian and Slovene. Of all the Slavonic languages, the Bosnian/ Croatian/Serbian linguistic complex is the easiest for English speakers to master, and it is considered one of the easiest of all the European languages for English speakers to pronounce. There is just one small hazard for those who have difficulty in producing a rolled 'r'. In some words 'r' has the value of a vowel and carries the stress. Innocent students should be prepared to be exposed to a series of tongue-twisters, such as **Navrh brda vrba mrda** 'On top of the hill a willow sways', or words such as **Grk** (the name of a wine grown on the island of Korčula), or the onomatopoeic **cvrčci** 'cicadas' (pronounced 'tsvrčtsi' with the stress on the 'r').

The alphabet consists of thirty phonemes: one letter for each sound, and the pronunciation of these letters is constant, not varying with its position in a word. Each letter is pronounced, e.g. **pauk** 'spider' consists of two separate syllables. Notice the spelling of **Italija**: without the **j** there would have to be a break between the two final vowels **i-a**. The spelling is phonetic. That is to say, words are written just as they are spoken. In other words, the learner could gain full marks in a dictation from the very beginning!

Stress

There is no absolute rule for the position of the stressed syllable in a word, except that it is never the final syllable. In a polysyllabic word it is generally the pre-penultimate syllable – which in practice generally means the first syllable. This is a fairly safe principle for you to adopt. Listen carefully for words in which there is a long syllable in addition to the stressed syllable: it can sometimes sound as though there are in fact two stresses on a word, see the section on tone below. In certain words, the stress may shift from singular to plural or from one case to another, e.g. **vrijeme** 'time, weather' has genitive singular **vremena** and nominative plural **vremena**. This is something to listen for in the more advanced stages of learning the language. In this book the stress is marked by underlining in the new vocabulary as it is introduced and throughout some of the reading passages so that you do not have to think about it too much as you read. In a word of two syllables the stress is not marked, as it will always fall on the first.

Tone

The Croatian language has a system of tonal stress, which is on the one hand quite complex and on the other more marked among the speakers of some areas than others. This question may be largely ignored in the early stages except for one or two situations indicated below. Nevertheless, the student should be encouraged from the outset to listen carefully to examples of the spoken language and observe the variations in tone. Traditional textbooks identify four tones to indicate the rising or falling of the voice on (a) short and (b) long stressed syllables:


| | | | |
|---|---------------|----|----------------|
| 1 | short rising | \ | gospòdin (Mr) |
| 2 | short falling | \\ | gòspoda |
| 3 | long rising | / | víno (wine) |
| 4 | long falling | ^ | dân (day) |

Naturally, these variations are more noticeable on long syllables. Occasionally they indicate a difference in meaning:

| | | | |
|-------------|------|-------------|-------|
| grâd | town | gràd | hail |
| pâs | belt | pàs | dog |
| lûk | arch | lùk | onion |

One particularly obvious example is when unstressed verbal **sam** 'am' is used in conjunction with the adjective **sam** 'alone'. The statement **sam sam** 'I am alone' consists of two quite distinct sounds.

The recordings which accompany this book enable the learner to hear the language spoken by native Croatian speakers. Dialogues and other sections of text for which there

are recordings are marked with the icon .

Note: When writing Croatian, pay particular attention to the diacritic marks: **c**, **č** and **ć** are all different letters and to omit the diacritic will result in misunderstanding (as in English, if **t** is not crossed it can be read as **l**). Also, when using dictionaries, be aware that **d**, **đ**, **l**, **lj** and **n**, **nj** are all *separate* letters: i.e. **ljiljan** 'lily' will not be found under **l** but under **lj**.

Using the book

The grammar presented here may appear complicated at first as it contains so much that is new to the English speaker. The student is advised to learn to observe the language in practice by close analysis of the reading passages, which have been designed to illustrate each point as it arises. Tackle only one topic at a time and refer frequently to the main text of each unit to observe each point 'in action'. Make sure that you have fully

understood and absorbed each point before going on to the next. Use the exercises to test your understanding and return to the relevant section if you make a mistake or are at all uncertain. The exercises marked with a dagger (†) have answers given in the 'Key to exercises' at the end of the book.

There are two stories running through the book which may be used to monitor your progress: translate each instalment into English, checking your version with the translation at the back of the book, and, at a later date, translate it back into Croatian. If you make a mistake be sure that you understand how you went wrong.

By the end of the book you will have covered all the main points of the grammar and much essential vocabulary. You will then need to consolidate your knowledge and expand your vocabulary by further reading. You should be able to read newspapers with relative ease, as well as more complex texts with the help of a dictionary. Suggestions for further study are listed below.

Every effort that you put into learning the language will be richly rewarded as you find yourself able to communicate increasingly freely.

Good luck!

Suggestions for further study

- Bujas, Željko, *Veliki hrvatsko-engleski rječnik; Veliki englesko-hrvatski rječnik* (Nakladni zavod Globus, Zagreb, 1999), two volume dictionary
 Kalogjera, Damir (editor-in-chief), *Englesko-hrvatski i hrvatsko-engleski rječnik* (Naklada C, Zagreb, 1996), a compact dictionary
 Kordić, Snježana, *Serbo-Croatian grammar* (LINCOM EUROPA, Frei-badstr. 3, D-81543 Munich)

Priručnici na hrvatskom

- Barac-Kostrenčić, Višnja, *Učimo hrvatski* (Centar za strane jezike, Školska knjiga, Zagreb, 1999)
 Barešić, Jasna, *Dobro došli 1 i 2* (Sova, Škola za strane jezike, d.d. Zagreb, Varšavska 14, Zagreb, 2002)
 Raguš, Dragutin, *Praktična hrvatska gramatika* (Medicinska naklada, Zagreb, 1997)

Background information

- Benson, Leslie, *Yugoslavia: A Concise History* (Palgrave, Basingstoke/New York, 2001)
 Glenny, Misha, *The Balkans 1804–1999: Nationalism, War and the Great Powers* (Granta Books, London 1999)
 Goldstein, Ivo, *Croatia: A History* (McGill-Queen's University Press, 2000)
 Silber, Laura and Little, Allan, *The Death of Yugoslavia* (Penguin and BBC Books, London, 1995)
 Tanner, Marcus, *Croatia: A Nation Forged in War* (Yale University Press, New Haven/London, 1997)
 Wachtel, Andrew, *Making a Nation, Breaking a Nation. Literature and Politics in Yugoslavia* (Stanford University Press, Stanford, 1998)

Pronunciation and alphabet

| <i>Alphabet</i> | <i>Approximate pronunciation</i> | <i>Examples</i> |
|-----------------|---|-------------------------------|
| A | a <u>a</u> in f <u>a</u> ther | mama mum |
| B | b as English <u>b</u> | brat brother |
| C | c <u>ts</u> in ca <u>ts</u> | otac father |
| Č | č ch in <u>ch</u> urch | čaj tea |
| Ć | ć roughly <u>tj</u> , as in cap <u>t</u> ure | kuća house |
| D | d as English <u>d</u> | da yes |
| Dž | dž <u>J</u> in <u>J</u> ohn | džemper jumper |
| Đ | đ roughly <u>dj</u> , as in need <u>y</u> ou | đak pupil |
| E | e <u>e</u> in <u>b</u> ed | krevet bed |
| F | f as English <u>f</u> | fotografija photograph |
| G | g as English g, as in gone | govoriti to speak |
| H | h <u>ch</u> in <u>lo</u> ch | hvala thank you |
| I | i <u>e</u> in <u>h</u> e | ili or |
| J | j <u>y</u> in <u>y</u> es | jezik language, tongue |
| K | k as English <u>k</u> | kino cinema |
| L | l as English <u>l</u> | lako easily |
| Lj | lj <u>ll</u> in mi <u>ll</u> ion | ljubav love |
| M | m as English <u>m</u> | molim please |
| N | n as English <u>n</u> | ne no |
| Nj | nj <u>n</u> in <u>n</u> ews | nježan gentle |
| O | o <u>o</u> in <u>no</u> t | ovdje here |
| P | p as English <u>p</u> | pjesma song |

| <i>Alphabet</i> | | <i>Approximate pronunciation</i> | <i>Examples</i> | |
|-----------------|---|------------------------------------|------------------|----------|
| R | r | rolled | roditelji | parents |
| S | s | <u>ss</u> in <u>bl<u>ess</u></u> | sestra | sister |
| Š | š | <u>sh</u> in <u>sh<u>y</u></u> | šljiva | plum |
| T | t | as English <u>t</u> | trg | square |
| U | u | <u>ou</u> in <u>cou<u>ld</u></u> | učiti | to learn |
| V | v | as English <u>v</u> | vino | wine |
| Z | z | as English <u>z</u> | zašto | why |
| Ž | ž | <u>s</u> in <u>plea<u>sure</u></u> | život | life |

1

Na putu

On the way

Note: The main dialogues of Units 1 to 5 are translated at the end of the book.

In this unit we will look at:

- the verb **biti** 'to be'
- personal pronouns: 'I', 'you' etc.
- basic word order
- formation of questions
- introducing yourself
- nationalities

Dialogue 1

Putnici se upoznaju

The travellers meet

Alan and Nora Cameron are travelling to Croatia for the first time. On the plane from London, they start talking to the man sitting next to Alan. Are Alan and Nora both English? Do they understand Croatian? What is Alan's neighbour called?

GOSPODIN CAMERON: Dobar dan.

GOSPODIN ANTIĆ: Dobar dan.

G. CAMERON: Oprostite, gov^ovorite li engleski?

G. ANTIĆ: Ne, n^a žalost. Razumijete li vi hrvatski?

G. CAMERON: Samo malo. Učim. Vi ste Hrvat, zar ne?

G. ANTIĆ: Jesam. A jeste li vi Englezi?

G. CAMERON: Nismo. Ja sam Škot, zovem se Alan Cameron. A moja žena je Irkinja.

Ona se zove Nora.

G. ANTIĆ: Ja sam Marko Antić. Drago mi je.

G. CAMERON: I meni, tak^ođer.



Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------------|---|
| dobar (m.) | good | dan | day |
| drago mi je | pleased to meet you (lit: 'it is dear to me') | gospodin (g.) | Mr |
| | | gospoda (gđa.) | Mrs |
| | | govoriti | to speak (2nd pers. pl. govorite) |
| hrvatski | Croatian | | |
| i | and, also | i meni | and I (lit. 'and to me') |
| ja | I | | |
| je | is | jesam | I am |
| jeste | you are | li | (interrog. part.) |
| malo | a little | moja | my (f.) (m. moj) |
| na žalost | unfortunately | nismo | we're not |
| ona | she | oprostite | excuse (me) |
| putnik (pl. putnici) | traveller, passenger | razumjeti | to understand (1st pers. sing. razumijem ; 2nd pers. pl. razumijete) |
| samo | only | | |
| ste | are (2nd pers. pl. of biti 'to be') | učiti | to learn (1st pers. sing. učim) |
| također | likewise | | |

upoznavati to meet, to get to know (1st pers. sing.
(se) **upoznajem**; 3rd pers. pl. **upoznaju**)

vi you (pl. and formal)

zar ne? isn't that so?

zovem I am called (3rd pers. sing. **zove se**)

žena wife

Language points 1

Greetings

Dobar dan 'good day' is used as the basic greeting for most of the day. The phrase **dobro jutro** 'good morning' is used only up to about 10 a.m., **dobra večer** 'good evening' after about 6 p.m. The previously common informal greeting **zdravo** for either 'hello' or 'goodbye' is becoming less used in Croatia because of its associations with communism and also because it can be felt to be too Serbian. In Zagreb in particular you will now mainly hear **bog** (a contraction of **zbogom** '(go) with God'), or its more colloquial version **bok**.

Absence of the article

There is no article in Croatian. **Putnik** may mean 'a traveller' or 'the traveller', according to the context.

Word families

Many words are related to one another. Try to collect new words in groups as you come across them. For example:

put 'path', 'road', 'way'

autoput (also **autocesta**)

motorway

putnik

traveller, passenger, tourist

putovati

to travel

putna torba

travel bag

preko puta

across the way, opposite

govor 'speech'

govoriti

to speak

razgovor

conversation

dogovor

agreement

dogovorit se

to come to an agreement

ugovor

contract

Personal pronouns

| | <i>Singular</i> | | <i>Plural</i> | |
|-----|-----------------|----------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| 1st | ja | I | mi | we |
| 2nd | ti | you (familiar) | vi | you (formal, polite) |
| 3rd | on | he | oni | they (m., or mixed gender) |
| | ona | she | one | they (f.) |
| | ono | it | ona | they (n.) |

Notice the two different words for ‘you’. **Ti** is the familiar singular form, used for family, contemporaries, close friends, colleagues, children and animals. **Vi** is used for more than one person and also as a more formal way of addressing one person to show distance and respect for age or social status. Like nouns and adjectives, the pronouns have different forms depending on their function in a sentence. You will learn these later.

Because the verb endings in Croatian clearly denote the person of the subject, personal pronouns are not used when they are the subject (i.e. in the nominative case) except for emphasis. Compare:

Kako se zovete? (no personal pronoun)

What are you called?

Zovem se Slavko. Kako se vi zovete?

I am called Slavko. What are *you* called?

Ne razumiju engleski. Govori li on hrvatski?

They don’t understand English. Does *he* speak Croatian?

The verb biti ‘to be’

This is the first verb you must learn. The verb **biti** has two forms: a long stressed form and a short unstressed (*enclitic*) form. The short form is the more common, while the stressed form is used in certain specific situations.

There are several short forms of this kind in Croatian, known as ‘enclitics’. These are words which carry no stress and are pronounced as though they were part of the preceding word. Consequently, they cannot be placed first in a sentence or clause.

The short form

| | | |
|-------|---------------|------------|
| (I) | (ja) | sam |
| (you) | (ti) | si |

| | | |
|-------------|----------------------|------------|
| (he/she/it) | (on/ona/ono) | je |
| (we) | (mi) | smo |
| (you) | (vi) | ste |
| (they) | (oni/one/ona) | su |

Ja sam Englez.

I am English.

Ona je Irkinja.

She is Irish.

Vi ste Hrvat.

You are Croatian.

Mi smo putnici.

We are passengers.

Exercise 1Complete the following sentences with the correct form of **biti**:

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------|---|-------------------|
| 1 | Ja _____ Englez. | 2 | Mi _____ Hrvati. |
| 3 | On _____ Škot. | 4 | Vi _____ Englezi. |
| 5 | Ona _____ Irkinja. | 6 | Ti _____ Hrvat. |
| 7 | Oni _____ Škoti. | | |

Language point 2*The verb biti**The long form*

Once you have learned the short forms, you can move on to the long forms. You will see that the endings are the same but they have an additional initial syllable. They are generally used *without the personal pronoun*.

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--------|--------------|
| (I) | jesam | (we) | jesmo |
| (you) | jesi | (you) | jeste |
| (he/she/it) | je | (they) | jesu |

Remember: The short forms are the norm, the long forms are used only in certain specific situations:

1 In questions which follow this model:

stressed verb + interrog. part. **li** + subject

| | | |
|--------------|-----------|--------------------|
| jeste | li | Englez? |
| jesu | li | Škoti? |
| jesi | li | Amerikanac? |

2 In single-word answers to such questions as:

Jeste li Englez? Jesam.

Are you English? Yes, I am.

3 For special emphasis:

Jeste li umorni? Ja jesam, ali Alan nije.

Are you tired? Yes *I* am, but Alan is not.

Exercise 2

Answer the following questions, using the long forms:

1 Jeste li Englez/Engleskinja?

2 Jesu li Alan i Nora putnici?

3 Jesmo li studenti?

4 Jesam li profesor?

5 Je li Marko Antić Hrvat?

Language point 3

The negative form of biti

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|----------------------|--------------|
| (ja) | nisam | (mi) | nismo |
| (ti) | nisi | (vi) | niste |
| (on/ona/ono) | nije | (oni/one/ona) | nisu |

Ja nisam umoran.

I am not tired.

On nije Hrvat.

He is not Croatian.

Mi nismo studenti.

We are not students.

Exercise 3

(a) Complete the sentences in Exercise 1 and answer the questions in Exercise 2, this time with the *negative* forms.

(b) † Fill the gaps with the most appropriate forms of **biti** 'to be':

1 Ne, Ana _____ Engleskinja, Ana _____ Irkinja.

2 Da, ja _____ Englez.

3 _____ li vi Englezi?

4 Oni _____ Škoti.

5 _____ li ti Škot?

6 Moja žena _____ Irkinja.

7 Ne, mi _____ studenti, mi _____ profesori.

8 Ne, ja _____ umoran, ja _____ gladan.

9 _____ li Marko student?

10 Ne, on _____ student.

gladnan, gladna hungry

Dialogue 2

Ante and Branko meet in a Zagreb street.

ANTE: Bog, Branko!

BRANKO: Bog, Ante!

ANTE: Kako si?

BRANKO: Dobro, hvala. Kako si ti?

ANTE: *Hi, Branko!*

BRANKO: *Hi, Ante!*

ANTE: *How are you?*

BRANKO: *Well, thanks. How are you?*

Answers to all exercises marked † are given in the key at the end of the book.

Exercise 4

Introduce yourself, using all the vocabulary you have learned so far.

Language point 4

Word order

There are several small unstressed words which the foreign learner can find tiresome to start with. They include the short forms of **biti** (which we have learned), the short forms of the personal pronouns, the interrogative particle **li** and the reflexive particle **se**. They are all what are called enclitics and must be placed immediately after the *first* stressed word, or phrase, in a sentence or clause. Examples are:

Ja sam umoran.

I am tired.

Mislⁱm da ste uporni.

I think you're tired.

Nisam, gladan sam.

No, I'm hungry.

It follows that, where unstressed forms are concerned, word order is quite strict, and that it is affected by the presence or absence of the personal pronoun. Compare:

Mi smo gladni.

Gladni smo.

We are hungry.

The meaning here is identical, except that the use of the personal pronoun tends to make the sentence emphatic.

Zovem se Marija. (neutral)

Ja se zovem Marija. (emphatic)

Exercise 5†

Complete the following passage, filling in the gaps:

Alan Cameron _____ Škot. _____ li on putnik? _____ . _____ li gladan, Alan? _____ , a vi, jeste li _____ gladni? Ne, _____ gladan, hvala. Je _____ Nora Irkinja? Je, ona _____ Irkinja. Možda _____ ona gladna!

Language points 5

Formation of questions

As in English, questions may be expressed through intonation alone:

Vi ste Englez?

You're English?

In the written language, however, one of the other ways for forming questions should be used.

(i) Questions may be introduced by an interrogative:

interrog.

verb

Zašto

učite hrvatski?

Why are you learning Croatian?

Tko

ste vi?

Who are you?

Što

radiš ovdje?

What are you doing here?

(ii) When a sentence does not contain an interrogative word, the particle **li** is used (a particle is a short, indeclinable part of speech). This is placed immediately after the main verb, which must then be the first word in the sentence:

verb

interrog. part.

Dolazite

li često ovamo?

Do you come here often?

Puši

li vaša žena?

Does your wife smoke?

(iii) Another way of using the particle **li** is to combine it with the conjunction **da**. In this case the main verb may be placed anywhere in the sentence:

question marker

Da li često putujete?

Do you travel often?

Da li studenti mnogo piju?

Do the students drink a lot?

Note: This structure is used only in spoken Croatian. Structure (ii) (verb + **li**) is the norm and the one you should use.

(iv) Negative questions are introduced by **zar**:

particle

negative verb

Zar

nisi Englez?

Aren't you English?

Zar

studenti ne piju?

Don't the students drink?

See 'Grammar summary', 7 (p. 303) for three other patterns.

Exercise 6†

(a) Put the jumbled up sentences in order:

1 engleski, govorite li?

2 Englez, li, jeste?

3 gospodin vi zar niste Cameron?

4 se ja Petar zovem.

5 umorni mi smo.

6 učite hrvatski li?

(b) Fill the gaps in the following dialogue with the most appropriate words:

A: Dobar _____ .

B: _____ dan.

A: Ja _____ Ivan Balog.

B: Drago mi _____ . Ja _____ Declan Daly.

A: _____ li vi Englez?

B: Ne, _____ , ja _____ Irac.

A: _____ li vi student?

B: Ne, _____ , ja _____ profesor.

A: Govorite _____ hrvatski?

B: Samo _____ . Učim.

Reading passage 

Priča našeg vremena

A story of our time

This story of an English businessman's adventures in Croatia runs through the whole of this course. It is intended to illustrate the language in action and some useful vocabulary, using mainly narrative. There is another story 'Love story', also in instalments, illustrating the use of colloquial dialogue. New words will be listed underneath each instalment, but do not feel you should attempt to learn them all at this stage. There are translations of the complete stories at the end of the book. These can be used later on as translation exercises: you should try to translate them back into Croatian.



U avionu

Mark Dunlop is travelling to Croatia on business. He is on the plane to Zagreb. Does he speak Croatian? Is he wide awake?

Mark Dunlop je Englez. Putuje u Zagreb. On uči hrvatski. Dosta razumije jezik, ali kaže da još ne govori dobro. Sada je umoran. Neka spava!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------|--------------------|----------------|
| jezik | language | još ne | not yet |
| kaže | he says | neka spava! | let him sleep! |
| putovati | to travel | sada | now |
| (putujem) | | spavati | to sleep |
| umoran | tired | (spavam) | |

Exercise 7

Answer the following questions in Croatian:

- 1 Je li Mark Dunlop Hrvat?
- 2 Putuje li u London?
- 3 Uči li kineski?¹
- 4 Razumije li hrvatski?
- 5 Govori li dobro?
- 6 Je li sada gladan?²

1 Chinese; 2 hungry

Language points 6*Nationalities*

For the time being you will need to learn each of these individually: there are set patterns and with time you will recognize them. In many cases the name of the country is the feminine form of the adjective which also gives the name of the language (for example: **Engleska** 'England', **engleski** 'English'; **Hrvatska** 'Croatia', **hrvatski** 'Croatian'), but the nationalities (for example: **Englez**, **Engleskinja**, **Hrvat**, **Hrvatica**) have to be learned.

Other countries, languages and nationalities are:

- In the area near Croatia:

| | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Slovenija | slovenski | Slovenac | Slovenka |
| Bosna | bosanski | Bosanac | Bosanka |
| Hercegovina | (bosanski) | Hercegovac | Hercegovka |
| Srbija | srpski | Srbini | Srbinja |
| Crna Gora | (srpski) | Crnogorac | Crnogorka |
| Makedonija | makedonski | Makedonac | Makedonka |

- In the British Isles:

| | | | |
|---------|---------|----------|-----------|
| Škotska | škotski | Škot | Škotkinja |
| Irska | irski | Irac | Irkinja |
| (Wales) | velški | Velšanin | Velšanka |

• More generally:

| | | | |
|--------------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| Njemačka (Germany) | njemački | Nijemac | Njemica |
| Francuska | francuski | Francuz | Francuskinja |
| Amerika | engleski | Amerikanac | Amerikanka |
| Italija | talijanski | Talijan | Talijanka |
| Španjolska | španjolski | Španjolac | Španjolka |
| Portugal | portugalski | Portugalac | Portugalka |

Language in action

Questions and answers

Damir is showing John round his home town.

| | | |
|--------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| JOHN: | Što je ovo? | <i>What is this?</i> |
| DAMIR: | Ovo je pošta. | <i>This is a post office.</i> |
| JOHN: | Što je to? | <i>What is that?</i> |
| DAMIR: | To je kazalište. | <i>That is a theatre.</i> |
| JOHN: | Je li to kiosk? | <i>Is that a tobacconist?</i> |
| DAMIR: | Ne, to je knjižara. | <i>No, that's a bookshop.</i> |
| JOHN: | Gdje je ljekarna? | <i>Where is the chemist?</i> |
| DAMIR: | Tamo, preko puta. | <i>There, across the road.</i> |

Culture point

Drago mi je means 'I am glad', 'I am delighted' or 'pleased to meet you'. This expression is used frequently when people are introduced to one another. A third person is not needed to make the introduction: strangers will introduce themselves, telling you their name, or just their surname, as they shake your hand.

Exercise 8

(a) Answer the following questions on Dialogue 1 at the beginning of this unit. Do this only when you feel you have really got to grips with the unit.

- 1 Govori li g. Antić engleski?
- 2 Razumije li g. Cameron hrvatski?
- 3 Je li g. Antić Englez?
- 4 A¹ g. Cameron, je li on Englez?
- 5 Kako² se zove gđa. Cameron?
- 6 Je li Nora Engleskinja?

1 The word **a** is somewhere between ‘and’ and ‘but’: here it conveys something like ‘and what about ...?’. 2 **kako** ‘how’, **kako se zovete** ‘what is your name?’ (lit. ‘how are you called?’).

(b)† Translate the following passage into Croatian:

I am Mr Smith. Who¹ are you? My name is Marko. Are you English? No, I’m a Croat. Do you speak English? No, unfortunately. But you understand Croatian! Only a bit.

1 ‘who’ **tko**

(c) Supply the missing half of the following dialogue:

ANTIĆ: Dobar dan.

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Razumijete li hrvatski?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Kako se zove vaša žena?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Drago mi je. Ja sam Miroslav Antić.

CAMERON: _____

(d)† Fill in the missing word in each case:

- 1 John je Englez. On govori _____ .
- 2 Martina je Slovenka. Ona govori _____ .
- 3 Gospodin Antić je Hrvat. On govori _____ .
- 4 Marta je Njemica. Ona govori _____ .
- 5 Pierre je Francuz. On govori _____ .
- 6 Roberto je Talijan. On govori _____ .
- 7 Jorge je Španjolac. On govori _____ .

(e)† Give questions for the following answers:

- 1 _____ ? On se zove Miroslav Antić.
- 2 _____ ? Ja sam dobro.
- 3 _____ ? Mi smo Englezi.
- 4 _____ ? Ne, ja nisam Englez.
- 5 _____ ? Ja govorim engleski.

(f) Match the questions with their answers:

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| Što je ovo? | Da, on govori engleski. |
| Govori li on engleski? | Zovem se Marko Antić. |
| Gdje je knjižara? | Ne, to je pošta. |
| Je li to banka? | Tamo, preko puta. |
| Kako se zovete? | Ovo je pošta. |

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (1)

Love story

Ivo and Mara live in Dubrovnik. They are in love. Where are they sitting? Why doesn't Mara want Ivo to kiss her?

Ivo i Mara se vole. Sjede u Gradskoj kavani i gledaju se u oči.

- Tako si lijepa! Jako te volim! – kaže Ivo.
- I ti si lijep. Baš sam sretna! – kaže Mara.
- Dođi ovamo da te poljubim!
- Ali ne ovdje, Ivo! Svi nas gledaju! Znaš da je Dubrovnik mali grad!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| baš (emph. part.) | really | baš sam sretna! | I'm really happy! (m. sretan) |
| da | that | dodi | come (doći, dođem 'to come') |
| gledati (se) (gledam) | to look at (one another) | grad | town |
| lijep (m.), lijepa (f.) | beautiful, handsome | kavana | café |
| | | mali | small |
| nas | us (object case) | oči (fem. pl.) | eyes |
| ovamo | over here | poljubiti | to kiss |
| sjediti (imp.) | to sit, be sitting | svi | everyone (all) |
| tako | so | voljeti (volim) | to love |

2

Razgovor o putovanju

Conversation about travelling

In this unit we will look at:

- main conjugations of verbs
- verbal aspect
- reflexive verbs
- adverbs

Dialogue 1

Razgovor u zrakoplovu

Conversation on the plane

Alan and Mr Antić discuss travelling and different forms of travel. Does Alan like travelling? How does Mr Antić like to travel when he has time? What does he like doing when he's on a train?

G. ANTIĆ: Volite li putovati?

G. CAMERON: Da, jako volim. Često putujem. A vi? Volite li putovati?

G. ANTIĆ: Volim, naročito vlakom kad imam vremena. Na žalost moram često poslovno putovati zrakoplovom.¹

G. CAMERON: Rado se vozim autom, ali Zagreb je predaleko. I ja volim putovati vlakom.

G. ANTIĆ: Da, volim gledati kroz prozor dok putujem, pomalo i spavati, a ponekad izlazim u hodnik da popušim cigaretu. Ugodno je.

G. CAMERON: Slažem se! Ali čovjek rijetko ima vremena za to ...



Parni stroj

1 Now brought back into official use, **zrakoplov** is an old Croatian word; the word **avion** is more commonly used in spoken Croatian; **avionom** ‘by air, by plane’.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| ali | but | autom | by car (auto , automobil) |
| cigaretu | cigarette (object case) | često | often |
| čovjek | a man, one | da | (<i>here</i>) in order to |
| dok | while | gledati (gledam) | to look at |
| hodnik | corridor | imati | to have |
| imati vremena | to have time | izlaziti (izlazim) | to go out |
| jako | very; very much | kad | when |
| kroz (+ acc.) | through | morati (moram) | to have to |
| naočito | particularly | pomalo | a little |
| ponekad | sometimes | popušiti (popušim) | to have a smoke |
| poslovno | on business | | |
| predaleko | too far | prozor | window |
| rado | gladly | rijetko | rarely |
| slagati se (slažem se) | to agree, get on | u | in, into |
| | | ugodan, -dna | pleasant |

| | | | |
|----------------------------|---|-------------------------------|---------------|
| vlakom | by train (vlak) | voljeti (volim) | to like, love |
| voziti se (vozi se) | to drive, or travel by any means of transport | vrijeme (gen. vremena) | time |
| | | zrakoplovom | by plane |

Language points 1

Verbs 1: Main conjugations

There are several classes of regular verbs (see ‘Grammar summary’, 4 (pp. 298–300) for a complete list of these). For the time being it will be enough to learn the three main sets of endings, which are classified according to the first person singular ending in the present tense. These endings are: **-am**, **-im**, **-em**. Once you know the first person singular of any regular verb, the other persons of the present tense can be deduced.

-am:

This is the most straightforward set of endings. The infinitive of these verbs ends in **-ati**: **imati, imam** ‘to have’; **morati, moram** ‘to have to, must’.

-im:

This set of endings is usually derived from an infinitive ending in **-iti**: **govoriti, govorim** ‘to speak’; but they may also be derived from **-ati**: **držati, držim** ‘to hold’; or **-eti**: **voljeti, volim** ‘to like, love’, **željeti, želim** ‘to want’.

-em:

This is the most frequent set of endings and is derived from many different infinitives. The first person present should always be learned.

| | <i>morati</i> | <i>govoriti</i> | <i>razumjeti</i> |
|---------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| (ja) | moram | govorim | razumijem |
| (ti) | moraš | govoriš | razumiješ |
| (on/ona/ono) | mora | govori | razumije |
| (mi) | moramo | govorimo | razumijemo |
| (vi) | morate | govorite | razumijete |
| (oni/one/ona) | moraju | govore | razumiju |
| | <i>zvati (se)</i> | <i>ići</i> | <i>putovati</i> |
| (ja) | zovem (se) | idem | putujem |
| (ti) | zoveš (se) | ideš | putuješ |
| (on/ona/ono) | zove | (se) | ide putuje |

| | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-------|----------|
| (mi) | zovemo (se) | idemo | putujemo |
| (vi) | zovete (se) | idete | putujete |
| (oni/one/ona) | zovu (se) | idu | putuju |

Dialogue 2

Two passengers are talking at the airport as they wait for their plane to depart.

ANTE: Idem na kavu, a vi?

BRANKO: Idem najprije kupiti novine.

ANTE: Ja moram najprije popiti kavu. Umoran sam. Onda moram naći duty-free. Želim kupiti cigarete.

BRANKO: Ja želim kupiti viski i konjak.

ANTE: Vidimo se u kafiću.

BRANKO: Može.

ANTE: *I'm going for a coffee, how about you?*

BRANKO: *I'm going to buy a newspaper first.*

ANTE: *I have to have a coffee first. I'm tired. Then I have to find the duty-free: I want to buy cigarettes.*

BRANKO: *I want to buy whisky and cognac.*

ANTE: *See you in the café.*

BRANKO: *OK.*

Exercise 1

(a) Give the appropriate ending of the following verbs:

Example: Ti pušiti (pušim) = pušiš

mi voziti se (vozim se); čitati (čitam); putovati (putujem)

on spavati (spavam); voljeti (volim); izlaziti (izlazim)

oni imati (imam); popiti (popijem); željeti (želim)

ti govoriti (govorim); razumjeti (razumijem); gledati (gledam)

vi morati (moram); piti (pijem); sjediti (sjedim)

čitati (čitam) to read

piti (pijem), popiti (popijem) to drink (have a drink)

(b) Complete the following sentences:

_____ li vi putovati? Da, jako _____. Često _____. Volite li _____ zrakoplovom? Ne, više _____ putovati autom. I ja rado _____ vlakom. Volim _____ kroz prozor. Spavate li dok _____ vlakom? Da, spavam pomalo i _____.

Language points 2

Verbs 2: Aspect

This is a new idea for English language speakers, although English continuous and simple tenses reflect something of what is involved. We shall return to it in greater detail later. For the time being, you should know that most Croatian verbs have two forms, known as the **imperfective** and the **perfective** aspects.

It is possible to express a great range of different meanings by modifying the form of the verb, introducing ideas of repetition, partial action etc. The basic division is into:

- 1 action which is thought of as continuing, incomplete, 'ongoing': *imperfective*;
- 2 action which is thought of as complete or limited: *perfective*.

For example:

stvarati (imperfective) to be creating

the noun derived from this verb, **stvaranje**, means the *process* of creating, e.g. **stvaranje svijeta** 'the creation of the world' (the act of creating);

stvoriti (perfective) to create and complete the action

the noun derived from this verb, **stvorenje**, means 'a creature' (the thing created), e.g. **ljudsko stvorenje** 'a human being'.

In Dialogue 1 there is an example of the use of the perfective aspect: **da popušim cigaretu** (or **popušiti cigaretu**) 'in order to smoke a cigarette'. The speaker is thinking of completing the act of smoking before returning to the compartment. The imperfective **pušiti** means, more or less, 'to be smoking'. Another example would be **idem popiti kavu** 'I'm going to have a coffee': the speaker is thinking of drinking the whole cup. The imperfective is **piti**, meaning 'to drink' in a general way, e.g. **piješ li pivo?** 'do you drink beer?' or 'Are you (at the moment) drinking beer?'.



Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (2)

Mark is trying to read his Croatian textbook on the plane, but he is tired and finds it hard to keep awake. Does Mark enjoy travelling? What is he trying to do? What does he have to drink? What happens then?

Mark putuje zrakoplovom u Zagreb. Obično voli putovati, ali danas je umoran. Pokušava čitati udžbenik: on mora učiti hrvatski! Stjuardesa prolazi s pićem. Mark popije jedan viski. Njegove oči se zatvaraju. Udžbenik se zatvara.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| danas | today | jedan | one, a/an |
| njegove | his (with f. pl. noun) | obično | usually |
| pokušavati | to try | piće | drink ¹ |
| s (+ instr.) | with | prolazi | passes; |
| udžbenik | textbook | stjuardesa | stewardess |
| zatvarati se | to close | viski | whisky |

1 **s pićem**: the different word endings will be explained; get used to recognizing the root word.

Exercise 2[†]

Fill the gaps with the most appropriate words from the following list:

razgovaraju zrakoplovom putuju gledati vremena

Svi često _____ danas. Svi vole putovati vlakom kad imaju _____, ali kad putuju poslovno onda se voze _____. Dok se voze vlakom, svi vole _____ kroz prozor. Ponekad idu u hodnik popušiti cigaretu ili _____ o putovanju.

Language points 3*Word formation***The verb ići ‘to go’**

You will have noticed from the examples in the Verbs 2 section above that one means of making a perfective is by the addition of a prefix. The verb **ići** and its derivatives offer a useful example of the way in which the addition of a prefix modifies the meaning of a verb. **Ići** itself is bi-aspectual and the only neutral verb of motion. All its derivatives convey some further information about the nature of the movement:

od ‘away from’ + **ići** = **otići**
 ‘to go away, leave’

Moram sutra otići.

I must go away tomorrow.

Once the new meaning has been established, a new imperfective must be made to express it as well:

otići (pf.) **odlaziti** (imp.)

Odlazim u podne.

I am leaving at noon.

Verbal prefixes

Here are some prepositions which can be used as prefixes: **u** 'in, into', **do** 'up to'; **na** 'on, on to'; **od** 'away from'; **s** 'down from'. Other common prefixes (which are not prepositions): **po**, **pre** denotes 'over'; **pro** 'passing by'; **raz** 'dispersal'.

Examples of verbs of motion deriving from ići:

- do** **Dolazite li često ovamo?**
Do you come here often?
Moraš doći vidjeti auto!
You must come to see the car!
- u** **Ulazi polako u vodu.**
He goes slowly into the water.
Popravlja kravatu prije nego što uđe u ured.
He straightens (his) tie before he goes into the office.
- iz** **Izlazimo svaki dan u 8 sati.**
We go out every day at 8 o'clock.
Izaći će kad završi zadaću.
He will go out when he finishes (his) homework.
- od** **Gledaju kako brod odlazi.**
They watch the boat leave.
Zar moraš tako brzo otići?
Must you go away so soon?
- s** **Silazite li ovdje, gospodine?**
Are you getting off here, sir?
Sidi kod pošte.
Get off by the post office.
- na** **Ona uvijek nalazi dobre restorane.**
She always finds (comes on) good restaurants.
Ne mogu naći adresu.
I can't find the address.
- po** **Vlak polazi u 10 sati.**
The train leaves (sets off) at 10 o'clock.
Moramo odmah poći!
We must leave at once!
- pre** **Nikada ne prelaze sami ulicu.**
They never cross the road alone.
Pređite sada, svjetlo je zeleno!
Cross now, the light is green!
- pro** **Prolazi često pokraj njezinog prozora.**
He often passes by her window.

Ovaj dan će brzo proći.
This day will pass quickly.

Do not attempt to learn all of this straight away. Remember the effect of the addition of prefixes to form perfectives, and use these sentences for later reference.

Exercise 3[†]

Fill in the missing words. Try to do it without looking at the original passage.

Mark Dunlop putuje ____ Zagreb. Obično voli ____ , ali danas ____ umoran. On ____ učiti hrvatski! Njegove oči ____ zatvaraju. Udžbenik se ____ .

Language points 4

Sentence building

Dependence of one verb on another

One verb can depend on another in two basic ways:

(a) Main verb + infinitive

Moram **izaći**

I must go out

Žele **popušiti cigaretu**

They want to smoke a cigarette

Volite li **putovati?**

Do you like to travel?

Note: This is the standard construction.

(b) Main verb + **da** (conjunction) + present

Moram **da** **izađem**

Žele **da** **popuše cigaretu**

Volite li **da** **putujete?**

This model is used occasionally for variety: for example, if a sentence contains a large number of dependent verbs. You may come across it, but in your own speech and writing use the standard construction shown in (a).

Exercise 4[†]

Make sentences from the words given below:

Example: Voljeti, putovati, ja. Volim putovati.

- 1 učiti hrvatski, morati, Mark
- 2 željeti, govoriti jezik, ti
- 3 voljeti, spavati, mi
- 4 morati, pušiti, oni
- 5 voljeti, voziti se autom, ona

Language point 5

Reflexive verbs

There are many reflexive verbs in Croatian. They consist of a verb, which is conjugated in the normal way, and the indeclinable reflexive particle **se**. **Se** is an enclitic and therefore subject to the same rules of word order as the short forms of **biti**. Where it occurs with other enclitics, it comes after all the others except **je** (3rd pers. sing. of **biti**).

sjećati se (imperfective), **sjetiti se** (perfective) ‘to remember’

Rado se sjećam.

I like to remember. (lit. ‘I gladly remember’)

Želi se sjetiti.

He/she wants to remember.

Some verbs are always reflexive, while others may be used either reflexively or as ordinary transitive verbs with a direct object:

Zovem sina svaki dan.

I call (my) son every day.

Zovem se Crvenkapica.

I am called Little Red Riding Hood.

Zatvaram udžbenik i gledam kroz prozor.

I close the textbook and look out of the window.

Udžbenik se zatvara i pada na pod.

The textbook closes and falls on the floor.

Volim te.

I love you.

Mi se volimo.

We love each other.

Gleda more.

He is looking at the sea.

Oni se gledaju.

They are looking at each other.

Exercise 5

(a)[†] Complete these pairs of sentences by putting the reflexive particle in the appropriate place:

Example: Gledaju se. Oni se gledaju.

1 Vozim, autom. Oni, voze autom.

2 Zove, Alan. Putnik, zove Alan.

3 Žele, sjećati. Ona, želi, sjećati.

4 Dućan, zatvarati. Zatvara, u 8 sati.

dućan

shop

u 8 sati

at 8 o'clock

(b) Answer the following questions on the text at the beginning of this unit:

1 Voli li g. Cameron putovati?

2 Putuje li često?

3 Voli li g. Antić putovati vlakom?

4 A avionom?

5 Zašto se g. Cameron ne vozi autom?

6 Što radi g. Antić u vlaku?

zašto? why? **zato što** because **raditi** to do

(c)[†] Translate the following sentences into Croatian:

1 Do you like to travel?

2 I don't like travelling by plane.

3 Are you looking out of the window?

4 They often sleep on the train.

5 He likes to travel by train when he has time.



Željeznički kolodvor Zagreb

Language point 6

Adverbs

These are indeclinable, i.e. they have one form only. Some must be individually learned (**ponekad**, **ponalo**); others are like the neuter nominative form of adjectives (**dobro**, **rado**, **poslovno**).

Exercise 6

(a) Complete the following dialogue:

ANTIĆ: Dobar dan, gospodine Cameron. Kako ste?

CAMERON: Dobro, hvala, a _____ ?

ANTIĆ: I ja sam dobro. Volim putovati. A vi?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Putujete li često?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Ja ne volim putovati avionom.

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Da, volim putovati vlakom.

(b)[†] Choose the most appropriate word from the lists supplied:

1 Gospodin Antićčesto _____ .

(a) putovati (b) putuje (c) putovanje (d) putuju

2 On voli putovati _____ .

(a) vlak (b) zrakoplovom (c) kad (d) cigaretu

3 Ona _____ putuje.

(a) često (b) se (c) voli (d) putnik

4 Zovem _____ Petar.

(a) li (b) zar (c) se (d) da

5 On želi _____ hrvatski.

(a) govori (b) govoriš (c) govorim (d) govoriti

(c)† Supply the correct forms of the verbs: the pronouns will tell you which endings are needed.

1 _____ (putovati) li ti često?

2 On _____ (voljeti) putovati.

3 Ona _____ (ne pušiti).

4 Mi _____ (voziti se) autom.

5 Marko često _____ (spavati) kad _____ (putovati).

6 Vi _____ (morati) sada ići.

7 Ja _____ (željeti) učiti hrvatski.

8 Oni _____ (ne razumjeti) španjolski.

9 On _____ (zvati se) Ivan.

10 Oni _____ (ne piti) vino.

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (2)

Where are Ivo and Mara walking? What does Ivo suggest they do? What do they want to see?

Ivo i Mara šetaju pokraj mora.

– Što želiš raditi? – pita Ivo.

– Ne znam – odgovara Mara. – Što predlažeš?

– Ne znam ni ja. Hoćeš li u kino?

– Možda. Što se daje?

– Daje se neki novi talijanski film. Kažu da je izvrstan.

– Može. Baš mi se ide u kino!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|--|------------------------|------------------|
| baš mi se ide | idiomatic: 'I really feel like going' (mi is the indirect object case of ja) | | |
| davati se (dajem) | to give (<i>here</i> 'what's playing?') | | |
| hoćeš li | do you want? (the verb 'to go' is understood) | | |
| izvrstan | excellent | ja | I |
| kazati (kažem) | to say | kino | cinema |
| možda | perhaps | može | OK, fine with me |
| more | sea | neki | some |
| ni | neither | novi | new |
| odgovarati (odgovaram) | to reply | pitati | to ask |
| | | pokraj (+ gen.) | beside |
| predlagati (predlažem) | to suggest | šetati (se) | to walk |
| | | što | what |
| talijanski | Italian | znati | to know |

3

Dolazak u Zagreb

Arrival in Zagreb

In this unit we will look at:

- nouns
- the nominative case
- the vocative case
- simple letters
- adjectives from proper nouns
- double negatives

Dialogue 1

Dolazak u zračnu luku

Arrival at the airport

The Camerons arrive at Zagreb airport. They talk to Mr Antić as they enter the arrivals lounge. Have the Camerons been in Zagreb before? Do they have anything to declare? Is anyone waiting for Mr Antić? What does Nora go to find?

ALAN: Evo nas u Zagrebu!

ANTIĆ: Jeste li prvi put u Zagrebu?

NORA: Jesmo. Jako se veselimo.

ANTIĆ: Zračna luka je mala. Formalnosti se brzo završavaju. Morate pokazati putovnice.
Imate li što prijaviti?

NORA: Nemamo. Prtljaga se uzima s trake, a onda se prolazi carinska kontrola, je li?

ANTIĆ: Tako je.



NORA: Čeka li vas netko ovdje?

ANTIĆ: Da. Moj sin. Upravo ga vidim tamo kod vrata!

NORA: Pazi, Alane, stižu naše stvari! Idem naći koljca.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------------|--|---|---------------------------------|
| carinska kontrola | customs | čekati (čekam) | to wait |
| | | dolazak (gen. dolaska) | arrival |
| | | evo nas! | here we are! |
| formalnost (f.) | formality | ga | him (object case of on) |
| koljca (n. pl.) | trolley | | |
| kod (+ gen.) | at, by, at the home of | naći (nađem) | to find |
| | | naše | our (f. pl.) |
| nemati | not to have (neg. form of imati) | netko | someone |
| | | pazi! (imperative of paziti) | watch out! take care! |
| onda | then | pokazati (imp. pokažem) | to show |
| prolaziti (imp.) | to pass through | | |
| prijaviti (pf.) | to declare | prtljaga | luggage |
| prvi put | first time | putovnica | passport |
| sin | son | stizati (imp. stižem) | to arrive |
| stvar (f.) | thing | | |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------|
| što | anything (nešto ‘something’) | tamo | there |
| | | tako je | that’s right |
| traka | conveyor belt | u Zagrebu | in Zagreb |
| upravo | just, precisely | uzimati (imp.) | to take |
| veseliti se | to be pleased | vidjeti (vidim) | to see |
| vrata (n. pl.) | door | završavati (imp.) | to end, finish |
| zračna luka ¹ | airport | | |
| | (luka ‘port, harbour’) | | |

1 The official term in Croatia is **zračna luka**, but the international term **aerodrom** is also widely used in spoken Croatian. *Note:* **Dolazak u zračnu luku** (the port is thought of as a closed space, so **u** ‘in’ is used), but **Dolazak na aerodrom** (the aerodrome is thought of as open, so **na** ‘on’ is used).

Language points 1

Nouns

Every Croatian noun has a gender – masculine, feminine or neuter – which determines its declension. In the great majority of cases, the gender is immediately obvious from the nominative ending of the noun (the form in which it appears in the dictionary).

Masculine nouns

Most masculine nouns end in a consonant. Consonants may be ‘hard’ or, less frequently, ‘soft’. The soft consonants are **c, č, ć, dž, đ, j, lj, nj, š, ž**; all other consonants are hard.

| | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| čovjek | (hard) |
| vlak | (hard) |
| prijatelj | (soft) ‘friend’ |

Some masculine nouns end in **-o** (or **-e** after a soft consonant). This is the case with a large number of proper names, e.g. **Marko, Ivo**, and a number of nouns which used to end in **-i**. This **-i** occurs in other cases:

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-----------------|---------------|
| ugao | corner | u uglu | in the corner |
| posao | job, work | na poslu | at work |

Masculine nominative plural ending: -i. Most monosyllabic masculine nouns have an additional syllable in the plural:

| | |
|-------------|----------------|
| stol | stolovi |
|-------------|----------------|

vlak

vlakovi

If the final consonant is soft, then **-ovi** becomes **-evi**:

muž

muževi

husband

Certain combinations of consonants and vowels involve consonant changes, for example the combination **k + i** is replaced by **-ci**:

putnik

putnici

Neuter nouns

Neuter nouns end in **-o** or **-e**:

selo

village

more

sea

Neuter nominative plural ending: **-a**:

sela

mora

Feminine nouns

The great majority of feminine nouns end in **-a**: **putovnica**, **luka**, **torba** ‘bag’.

A few feminine nouns end in a consonant, although there are not many – and they must be learned. They include a large number of abstract nouns, including all abstract nouns ending in **-ost**. Examples are: **noć** ‘night’; **stvar** ‘thing’; **zvijer** ‘wild animal’; **ljubaznost** ‘kindness’; **obitelj** ‘family’.

Feminine plural: For nouns ending in **-a**, the nominative plural ending is **-e**: **gospode**, **torbe**. For nouns ending in a consonant, the nominative plural ending is **-i**: **noći**, **stvari**.

Dialogue 2

Two travellers are discussing their luggage. There seems to have been a mix-up.

ANTE: Oprostite, gospodine, je li to vaša torba?

BRANKO: Je. Zašto pitate?

ANTE: Mislim da je to moja torba.

BRANKO: Nije moguće.

ANTE: Ali pogledajte: ovdje je moje ime!

BRANKO: Oh, imate pravo! Oprostite! Onda je ovo moja torba!

ANTE: Tako je! Hvala vam.

BRANKO: Hvala vama!

ANTE: *Excuse me, sir, is this your bag?*

BRANKO: *Yes. Why do you ask?*

ANTE: *I think it's my bag.*

BRANKO: *It's not possible.*

ANTE: *But look: here is my name!*

BRANKO: *Oh, you're right! I'm sorry! Then this is my bag!*

ANTE: *That's right! Thank you.*

BRANKO: *Thank you!*

Exercise 1[†]

(a) Give the plural of each of the following nouns:

| | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|-----------|
| gospoda | Hrvat | Englez | žena |
| mladić | djevojka | Irkinja | jezik |
| cigareta | hodnik | prozor | putovnica |

(b) Match the nouns with the appropriate verb form and make sentences:

| | |
|------------|-------------|
| djevojke | stiže |
| prtljaga | se veselim |
| putovnice | šetaju |
| torbe | prilazi |
| Alan | putuješ |
| ja | dolazi |
| vlak | razgovaraju |
| ti | misli |
| stjuardesa | se uzimaju |
| Ivo i Mara | se pokazuju |

Language points 2

The nominative case ('name', subject case)

The main uses of the nominative case are:

1 For the subject of a sentence or clause:

Alan Cameron gleda kroz prozor.

Alan Cameron is looking through the window.

Vi pijete šljivovicu, a on pije pivo.

You are drinking plum brandy, *he* is drinking beer.

Mislim da Nora dolazi sutra.

I think that *Nora* is coming tomorrow.

Na žalost, vlak kasni.

Unfortunately, *the train* is late.

2 For the complement after **biti**:

Alan je Škot.

Alan is a *Scot*.

Kažu da nisi Englez. Je li istina?

They say you are not English. Is it *true*?

Moj sin je dobar student.

My son is a *good student*.

Nada je jako lijepa žena.

Nada is a *very beautiful woman*.

Exercise 2

(a) Fill the gaps in the following sentences with one of these nouns:

**putnik Škot kontrola Hrvat prtljaga
putovnica torba zrakoplov**

1 Gdje je carinska _____ ?

2 Alan je _____ .

3 Gdje je naša _____ ?

4 _____ stiže u Zagreb.

5 Je li ovo vaša _____ ?

6 Je li _____ kod tebe?

7 Ivo je _____ .

8 _____ uzima prtljagu.

(b)† Choose the most appropriate word to complete the sentences:

1 Zrakoplov _____ u zračnu luku.

(a) je (b) stiže (c) putuje (d) ide

2 Kad prolazite kroz carinsku kontrolu, morate _____ putovnice.

(a) pokazati (b) dati (c) gledati (d) prijaviti

3 Ja sam prvi _____ u Zagrebu.

(a) putovanje (b) putnik (c) putovnica (d) put

4 _____ se uzimaju s trake.

(a) putovnica (b) prtljaga (c) torbe (d) kolica

5 Prtljaga stiže, moram naći _____ .

(a) kolica (b) putovnicu (c) torbu (d) zrakoplov

Dialogue 3

Going through customs.

CARINIK: Molim vas vašu putovnicu.

ALAN: Izvolite.

CARINIK: Imate li nešto prijaviti?

ALAN: Ne, nemam. Ja sam turist.

CARINIK: Izvolite vašu putovnicu. Dobro došli u Hrvatsku.

ALAN: Hvala. Do viđenja.

Reading passage



Priča našeg vremena (3)

Mark has slept through the plane's arrival in Zagreb. Who wakes him up? What does he take out of the luggage holder?

Stjuardesa prilazi Marku.

– Oprostite, gospodine, evo nas u Zagrebu!

Marko se budi.

– Zbilja? Krasno! Hvala!

Uzima torbu i kišobran iz prtljažnika i ide prema izlazu iz zrako-plova.

– Dobro došli u Zagreb! Do viđenja!

– Hvala! Do viđenja!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|--|--|-------------------------|
| buditi se (imp. budim se) | to wake up | do viđenja | goodbye |
| evo (+ gen.) | here is, here are (cf. French <i>voici</i>) | dobro došli | welcome |
| ide (from ići) | he goes | evo nas! | Here we are! |
| kišobran | umbrella | hvala | thank you |
| Marku (indir. object case) | to Mark | izlaz | exit |
| prtljažnik | luggage rack, locker | krasno | lovely, great |
| | | prema (+ loc.) | towards |
| | | prilaziti (imp. prilazim) | to come up to, approach |
| | | zbilja! | truly! honestly! |

Exercise 3

- (a) Write a list of all the nouns which are used in the nominative case (singular and plural) in Dialogue 1 of this unit.
 (b)† Give the plural for the following nouns:

cigareta Englez torba hodnik luka sin (remember the additional syllable) **putovnica vlak Hrvat automobil**

- (c)† Rewrite these sentences in the plural:

- 1 Putnik putuje.
- 2 Kava se pije.
- 3 Putovnica se pokazuje.
- 4 Jezik se govori.
- 5 Vlak stiže.
- 6 Zrakoplov dolazi.
- 7 Selo se vidi.
- 8 Cigareta se puši.

- (d) Answer the following questions on 'Priča našeg vremena' (3):

- 1 Tko prilazi Marku?
- 2 Što on radi?
- 3 Gdje je zrakoplov?
- 4 Što uzima iz prtljažnika?
- 5 Kuda ide Mark?

tko who **kuda** where (with movement)

Language points 3*The vocative case*

This case is used for persons addressed in speech, or at the beginning of letters:

Dobar dan, gospodine Antiću

Good day, Mr Antić

Draga gospodo Nado, ...¹

Dear 'Mrs Nada', ...

1 This is a useful intermediary stage between the formal **Gda** + surname, and the more familiar use of the first name on its own. Of course there is no equivalent in English.

There are no vocative endings for neuter nouns or for the plurals of any gender. So, only two sets of endings have to be learned:

Masculine

Hard consonants: **-e** e.g. **gospodin, gospodine**
 Soft consonants: **-u** e.g. **prijatelj, prijatelju; Antić, Antiću**

Feminine

Nouns ending in **-a**: **-o** e.g. **gospoda, gospodo; Nada, Nado**
 Diminutives in **-ca**: **-** e.g. **gospodica, gospodice** 'Miss';
 ce **Ankica, Ankice** (these may be men's names with diminutive
 feminine forms: **Ivica, Ivice**)
 Nouns ending in a
 consonant: **-i** e.g. **Oh, noći!**

Language in action*Examples of simple letters or email messages*

1 To friends, informal (postcard):

Dragi Vjerane,
 Ovdje je prekrasno. Šteta
 što i ti nisi ovdje.
 Pusa, Ljiljana
 (Dear Vjeran, It's lovely here. It's a shame you aren't here too. Love,
 Ljiljana)

2 More formal, addressee slightly known (email):

Dragi gospodine Filipoviću,
 Stižemo u ponedjeljak. Veselimo se skorom viđenju.
 Srdačan pozdrav,
 Vaši Tim i Anne Smith
 (Dear Mr Filipović, We are arriving on Monday. We are looking
 forward to seeing you soon. Warm greetings/best wishes, Tim and Anne
 Smith)

3 Addressee unknown or known only officially (letter):

Poštovana gospodo Ivić,
 Slobodna sam Vam se javiti u vezi našeg boravka. Molim
 Vas da nam rezervirate sobu za kolovoz.
 S poštovanjem,
 Betty Jones
 (Dear (lit. 'respected') Mrs Ivić, I am taking the liberty of writing in
 connection with our stay. Please would you reserve a room for the month
 of August. Yours sincerely, Betty Jones)

Note: Notice that with women's surnames there is no vocative ending: it is impossible to mix fem. and masc. endings, so only the first part (**gospođa** or the first name) declines: the surname is unchanged. Notice also that in formal letters the pronoun 'you' is capitalized.

Exercise 4

- (a) Write a postcard from Mara, on holiday in Italy, to Ivo.
 (b) Complete the following postcards:

Poštovana _____ Anić,
 Javljam vam se u vezi našeg _____ u Hrvatskoj. Molim vas da nam rezervirate _____ za sljedeći mjesec.
 S _____ ,
 Marija Brekalo
 _____ Marko,
 Ovdje je _____ . Šetamo se svaki _____ .
 Vrijeme je _____ .
 _____ , Petra

Language points 4

Word formation

Adjectives formed from proper nouns

All adjectives are written with a small letter, even when formed from proper nouns:

Ovo je zagrebačka zračna luka.

This is Zagreb airport.

Ovo je hrvatska zastava.

This is the Croatian flag.

Volim londonske ulice.

I like London streets.

Exercise 5

- (a) Put these adjectives with the appropriate noun:

rimski (Rim 'Rome'), **bečki** (Beč 'Vienna'), **atlantski**, **švicarski** (Švicarska 'Switzerland'), **jadranski** (Jadran 'Adriatic'), **praški** (Prag 'Prague')
odrezak 'schnitzel', 'cutlet', **otok** 'island', **forum**, **sat** 'watch', **ocean**,
sir 'cheese', **proljeće** 'spring'

- (b)† Form adjectives from the proper nouns below and adjust them to agree with the nouns:

| | | |
|-----------|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Švicarska | sir | 'cheese' |
| Rim | fontane | 'fountains' |
| Prag | pivo | 'beer' |
| London | parkovi | 'parks' |
| Zagreb | ulice | 'streets' |
| Hrvatska | televizija | 'broadcasting company', 'television' |
| Beč | zračna luka | |

Language points 5

Sentence building

Examples of questions and answers

Look at the following constructions and try to translate them (**ovo** 'this'; **to** 'that').

– **Dobar dan, gospodine, je li ovo vaša putovnica?**

– **Je, to je moja putovnica.**

– **Je li ovo vaša torba?**

– **Ne, to nije moja torba.**

– **Jesu li to vaše stvari?**

– **Jesu, hvala!**

– **Mama, ovo je moja djevojka.**

– **Je li? Drago mi je, dušo.**

– **Je li ovo vaš sin?**

– **Je, zove se Janko.**

– **A jesu li to vaše kćeri?**

– **Ne, to su moje unuke!**

– **Nije moguće!**

– **Jesu, vjerujte!**

– **Je li ovo Zagreb?**

– **Još nije, ovo je Ljubljana.**

– **Je li ovo vaše sjedalo?**

– **Samo vi sjedite, ima mjesta.**

| | | | |
|----------|---------------|----------|--------------|
| djevojka | girl(friend) | kćer | daughter |
| sin | son | moguće | possible |
| sjedalo | seat | duša | soul, dear |
| unuka | granddaughter | vjerujte | believe (me) |
| mjesto | place, space | | |

Double negative

The existence of two or more negative words in a sentence does not have the effect of making the sense positive. On the contrary, a negative pronoun such as **nitko** ‘no one’ or **ništa** ‘nothing’ requires a negative verb.

Nemamo ništa prijaviti.

We have nothing to declare.

Ništa ne vidim kroz prozor.

I don’t see anything through the window.

Nikad ne putujem autostopom. (or Nikad ne autostopiram.)

I never hitch-hike.

Exercise 6

(a) Make sentences with the following nouns. Some are singular and some plural, so remember to adjust the possessive pronoun and verb accordingly. Notice that the nominative endings of the possessive pronoun **vaš** are the same as those of the nouns:

| | | | |
|----------|-------------|--------|-------------|
| m. sing. | vaš | m. pl. | vaši |
| f. sing. | vaša | f. pl. | vaše |

Example:

(torba) **Oprostite, gospođo, je li ovo vaša torba?**

(putovnice) **Oprostite, gospodine, jesu li ovo vaše putovnice?**

| | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| kišobran | prtljaga |
| stvari (f. pl.) | sinovi ‘sons’ |
| kišna kabanica ‘raincoat’ | šljivovica ‘plum brandy’ |
| šešir ‘hat’ | rukavice ‘gloves’ |
| sat ‘watch’ | lisnica ‘wallet’ |

(b) Answer the following questions on Dialogue 1 at the beginning of the unit:

- 1 Jesu li Alan i Nora prvi put u Zagrebu?
- 2 Je li zagrebačka zračna luka velika?
- 3 Što moraju pokazati?
- 4 Imaju li Alan i Nora što prijaviti?
- 5 Gdje čeka sin gospodina Antića?¹

1 These endings are the case denoting possession: ‘The son of Mr Antić’.



Zagrebačka zračna luka

(c)† Translate these questions into Croatian:

- 1 Is this Zagreb airport?
- 2 Is that customs control?
- 3 Have you anything to declare?
- 4 Where are the passports?
- 5 Have you got many things?
- 6 Is this your bag?
- 7 Where are the trolleys?
- 8 Must we show our passports?

(d) Supply the missing half of the dialogue:

ANTIĆ: _____ ?

CAMERON: Jesmo. Jako se veselimo.

ANTIĆ: _____ ?

CAMERON: Da. Evo moje putovnice.

ANTIĆ: _____ ?

CAMERON: Ne, to nije moja torba.

Dialogue 4

Ljubavna priča (3)

Does Ivo have his wallet with him? Why is Mara annoyed? What does she decide to do? Does Ivo go with her?

- Imaš li novca? – pita Mara.
- Čekaj da vidim. Ali, gdje mi je novčanik? Nema ga, zamisli. Sigurno je doma.
- Ivo – kaže Mara ozbiljno – što je ovo? Nikad nemaš para. Ja uvijek sve plaćam. Dosta mi je.
- Nemoj biti takva! Idem po novčanik. Možemo se naći kod kina.
- Neću više. Idem doma slušati glazbu. Možeš doći ako hoćeš.
- Hvala. Nije mi do glazbe. Idem u kino.
- Do viđenja, onda.
- Zbogom.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|----------------------------|---|
| ako | if | doma | at home |
| dosta mi je | I've had enough (lit. 'it is enough to me') | glazba | music |
| | | hoćeš | you want (irreg. verb htjeti, hoću) |
| moći (mogu, može, možemo) | to be able | neću više | I won't (take it) any more |
| nema ga | it's not here | | |
| nemoj | don't | nije mi do (+ gen.) | I don't feel like |
| nikad | never (note the double negative) | novčanik | wallet |
| ozbiljno | seriously | para | money (colloquial, gen. pl.) |
| plaćati (imp.) | to pay | | |
| po (+ acc.) | for | sigurno | certainly |

| | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| sigurno je | it must be | slušati | to listen |
| sve | everything, all | takva | like that (m. takav) |
| uvijek | always | zamisliti (zamislim) | to imagine |
| zbogom | goodbye (conveys a certain finality!) | novaca | money (gen. pl. case) |

4

Svatko ide na svoju stranu

Each goes his own way

In this unit we will look at:

- accusative case
- accusative after certain prepositions
- genitive case
- questions and answers
- sentence building with the genitive
- prepositions

Dialogue 1

Odakle ste?

Where are you from?

As they wait for their luggage, the Camerons ask Mr Antić about himself. Does he come from Zagreb? Where are the Camerons staying? Will they be staying in Zagreb long? What does Nora suggest to Mr Antić?

ALAN: Jeste li vi iz Zagreba, gospodine Antiću?

ANTIĆ: Nisam, nego iz Karlovca, to je gradić nedaleko od Zagreba. Ali ostajem malo kod sina. Kamo vi sad idete? Imate li rezerviranu sobu?

ALAN: Imamo. Idemo u Hotel Palace. Mislim da je blizu glavnog kolodvora.

ANTIĆ: Je. Ostajete li u Zagrebu?

NORA: Nekoliko dana. Ovdje imamo prijatelje. Zatim idemo na more.

ANTIĆ: Želim vam ugodan boravak. Jako mi je drago što smo se upoznali.

NORA: I nama. Ako dođete u Englesku evo naše adrese.

ANTIĆ: Hvala vam, nikad se ne zna! Svako dobro, do viđenja!

ALAN AND NORA: Do viđenja!



Prtljaga se uzima s trake

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| blizu | near (prep. + gen.; adv. nearby) | | |
| boravak | stay | glavni (željeznički) | main (railway) |
| gradić | small town | kolodvor | station |
| iz (+ gen.) | out of, from | kamo | where to |
| lako | easily | misлити (imp. mislim) | to think |
| naš | our | | |
| negdaleko | not far | nego | but (after negative statement) |
| nekoliko (+ gen.) | a few, some | nikad se ne zna | you never know (one never knows) |
| od (+ gen.) | from | | |
| odakle | from where | | |
| ostajati (imp. ostajem) | to remain, stay | prijatelj | friend |
| | | rezervirati | to reserve |
| soba | room | svako dobro | all the best (lit. 'every good') |
| svatko (m.) | everyone, each | | |

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------------------|---------------------|
| svoj | one's own | upoznali smo se | we met (past tense) |
| zatim | then | | |

Language points 1

The accusative case (the direct object case)

This case is used if the question 'what' (**što**) or 'whom' (**koga**) can be asked after the verb in a sentence.

Ima veliki crni kišobran. Što ima? Kišobran.

He has a big black umbrella. He has what? An umbrella.

Vidim more. Što vidiš? More.

I see the sea. What do you see? The sea.

Formation of the accusative

Singular

Masculine inanimate nouns and neuter nouns. The accusative is the same as the nominative:

Nominative

Accusative

Ovo je kišobran.

This is an umbrella.

Imam kišobran.

I have an umbrella.

Ovo je pero.

This is a pen.

Vidim pero.

I see the pen.

Masculine animate nouns. The accusative of masculine nouns referring to animate beings is like the genitive ending we shall come to later in the unit.

Nominative

Accusative

Ovo je moj sin.

This is my son.

Vidim sina.

I see (my) son.

Feminine nouns

(1) *Ending in a consonant.* The accusative is the same as the nominative:

Nominative

Accusative

Ovo je lijepa noć.

This is a lovely night.

Volim noć.

I like the night.

(2) *Ending in -a.* The accusative ending is made by removing the final **-a** and replacing it by **-u**:

Nominative

Ovo je Korčula.

This is Korčula.

Ovo je moja torba.

This is my bag.

Accusative

Jako volim Korčulu.

I like Korčula very much.

Imate li vi torbu?

Have you got a bag?

Exercise 1

Write sentences following the examples below, using the nouns given:

(a) **Ovo je moj šešir. Imaš li ti šešir? Imam.**

This is my hat. Do you have a hat? I do.

kišobran novčanik 'wallet' **bicikl auto**¹ **hotel**

1 **auto** is masculine because it is short for **automobil**, ending in a consonant.

(b) **Sin dolazi iz Londona. Vidim sina kod vrata.**

(My) son is coming from London. I can see (my) son by the door.

brat putnik gospodin prijatelj student

(c) **Ovo more je lijepo. Svi volimo ovo more.**

This sea is lovely. We all love this sea.

selo dijete pismo igralište kupalište²

2 The ending **-ište**, which makes a neuter noun from a verb stem, denotes a place where the action of the verb is carried out: **igrati se** 'to play', **igralište** 'playground'; **kupati se** 'to bathe', **kupalište** 'bathing place'.

(d) **Sutra dolazi moja sestra. Moraš upoznati moju sestru!**

Tomorrow my sister is coming. You must meet my sister!

djevojka majka baka 'grandmother'

žena prijateljica 'female friend'

Language points 2

Formation of the accusative

Plural

Masculine. The accusative plural is formed by removing the final **-i** of the nominative plural and replacing it by **-e**:

Nominative

Ovdje su hoteli dobri.

The hotels are good here.

Accusative

Ne volim ove hotele.

I don't like these hotels.

Take care with words in which the nominative plural **-i** has caused the final consonant of the stem to be altered, e.g.

putnik (nom. sing.)

putnici (nom. pl.)

but **vidim putnike** (acc. pl.)

I see the passengers

It is only **k + i** that causes the change to **-ci**, however other combinations with **-i** result in similar changes: e.g. **g + i** becomes **-zi**:

Ovo je moj kovčeg.

Ovo su moji kovčezi.

but **Nosim kovčege.**

I am carrying the suitcases.

Neuter. The accusative plural of neuter nouns is the same as the nominative plural:

Nominative

Ovo su ugodna mala sela.

These are pleasant little villages.

Accusative

Volim mala sela.

I like little villages.

Feminine. The accusative plural of feminine nouns is the same as the nominative plural, regardless of whether they end in a consonant or in **-a**:

Nominative

To su naše stvari.

Those are our things.

Accusative

Svi nosimo stvari.

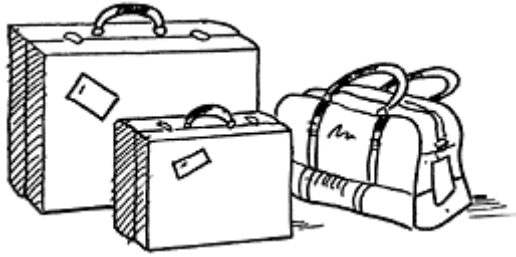
We are all carrying the things.

To su naše torbe.

Those are our bags.

Svi nosimo torbe.

We are all carrying bags.



Exercise 2

(a) Form sentences, according to the example, putting the nouns into the accusative singular case:

Example: **vaša torba:** **Imam vašu torbu.**
Your bag: I have your bag.

vaššešir; vaša prtljaga; vaša rukavica; vaša putovnica; vaš novčanik;
vaše nalivpero ‘fountain pen’

(b) As above, but this time put the nouns into the accusative plural:

Example: **naša stvar:** **Oni nose naše stvari.**
Our thing: They are carrying our things.

naša torba; naš novčanik; naše nalivpero; naša putovnica; naša cigareta; naš kišobran

(c) This time put the nouns into *either* accusative singular *or* plural as indicated by the nominative:

Example: **sin:** **Imam sina.**
son: I have a son.

prijatelj; momak; unuci (‘grandchildren’; sing. **unuk**); **psi** (**pas** ‘dog’, pl. **psi**); **studenti; sinovi**

Language points 3

Sentence building

The accusative case after certain prepositions

The accusative case is used after certain prepositions. These include:

kroz through **Pospani putnik gleda kroz prozor.**
The sleepy passenger looks *through the window*.

za for **Ovo je pismo za moju majku.**
This is a letter *for my mother*.

In particular, the accusative case is used after prepositions denoting motion:

u into **Idem u Split.**
I am going *to Split*.

Izlazim u hodnik.
I am going out *into the corridor*.

na to, onto **Idemo na Korčulu.**
We are going *to Korčula*.

Broadly speaking, **u** is used to refer to a closed space, **na** to an open space, and an island such as Korčula would be thought of as an open space.

Exercise 3

(a) Form sentences, according to the example:

Example: **Split:** **Putujem u Split.**
I am travelling to Split.

| | | |
|-----------|--------|---------|
| Francuska | Zagreb | Torino |
| Njemačka | London | Oxford |
| Engleska | Rijeka | Italija |

(b) Form questions, according to the example:

Example: **Slovenija:** **Idete li u Sloveniju?**
Are you going to Slovenia?

| | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| Split | Engleska | Francuska | Dubrovnik |
| Sarajevo | Makedonija | Rijeka | Italija |
| Rim | Zagreb | Makarska | |

Reading passage



Priča našeg vremena (4)

Mark leaves the plane and arrives in the terminal. Is the weather nice in Zagreb? Why does Mark feel silly? Does he take a luggage trolley? Is his bag heavy?

Mark polako izlazi iz zrakoplova. Prekrasan je dan u Zagrebu. Osjeća se glupo što nosi kišobran. 'Kao pravi Englez,' misli. Brzo nalazi svoju prtljagu. Zaboravlja tražiti koljica. Nosí torbu kroz carinsku kontrolu. Srećom nije teška. Nema što prijaviti. Izlazi kroz vrata.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| brzo | quickly | glup | stupid (glupo is the adverb) |
| kao pravi Englez | like a real Englishman | naćiaziti | to find |
| nositi | to carry | osjećati se (imp. osjećam se) | to feel |
| polako | slowly | | |
| prekrasan | beautiful | srećom | luckily |
| svoj | his (own) | što | that, because |
| težak (f. teška) | heavy | tražiti | to search, look for |
| zaboravljati | to forget | | |

Language points 4***The genitive case (the possessive case)***

Without a preposition, the genitive case is used primarily to denote possession:

Ovo je glavna ulica Zagreba.
This is the main street *of Zagreb*.

To je šešir moje žene.
That is *my wife's* hat.

It is also used after a large number of prepositions, generally denoting origin, distance or removal from somewhere or something.

iz + gen.: 'out of, from'

Jeste li iz Zagreba?

Are you *from Zagreb*?

Izvadi kabanicu iz ormara.

Take the coat *out of the wardrobe*.

blizu + gen.: 'near' (i.e. not distant from)

Hotel je blizu autobusne stanice.

The hotel is *near the bus stop*.

Formation of the genitive

Singular

Masculine: Genitive ends in **-a**:

To je torba gospodina Antića.

That's Mr Antić's bag.

Neuter: Genitive ends in **-a** as with masculine nouns:

more: Grad je nedaleko od mora.

The town is not far *from the sea*.

Feminine:

(i) Nouns ending in **-a** have genitive in **-e**:

Engleska: Mi smo iz Engleske.
We are *from England*.

(ii) Nouns ending in a consonant have genitive in **-i**:

noć: Poslije te lijepo noći ...
After that beautiful night ...

Plural

The genitive plural for all genders is **-a** except for feminine nouns ending in a consonant, which have the genitive plural ending **-i**.

Sentence building

Structures using the genitive case

1 **Nema**, third person singular of **nemati**, meaning 'he/she has not' or 'there is not':

Nema nikoga doma.

There is no one at home

Nema ni novca ni novčanika.

He has neither money nor wallet.

2 **Evo** + gen.: 'here is' or 'here are':

Evo stanice!

Here is the stop!

Evo naše adrese.
Here is our address.

Exercise 4

(a) Write sentences based on the following example, using the nouns given below:

Example: **sin:** **Ovo je moj sin. Dopusite da Vam predstavim svog sina!**
This is my son. Allow me to introduce my son to you!

brat prijatelj mladić muž otac¹

¹ This word has various unpredictable forms which must be learned: gen. sing. **oca**;
nom. pl. **očevi**; gen. pl. **očeva**.

(b) Form questions, according to the example:

Example: **Zagreb:** **Jeste li iz Zagreba?**
Are you from Zagreb?

London Pariz Rijeka Rim Venecija Sarajevo Dubrovnik

(c) Supply answers to these questions, according to the example:

Example: **Gdje je kišobran? Evo kišobrana!**
Where is the umbrella? Here is the umbrella!

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Gdje je stanica? | Gdje je hotel? |
| Gdje su putovnice? | Gdje je torba? |
| Gdje su stvari? | Gdje je prtljaga? |
| Gdje je šešir? | Gdje je carinska kontrola? |
| Gdje su kolica? | Gdje je novčanik? |
| | šešir hat |

Language points 5

Language in action

Questions and answers

Drivers are talking in a motel on the motorway near Stuttgart.

- | | |
|--|---|
| – <u>O</u> dakle dolazite? | – <u>D</u> olazimo iz Londona. |
| – <u>P</u> utujete li u Austriju? | – Ne, putujemo u Hrvatsku. |
| – <u>K</u> rasno! <u>P</u> oznajete li Hrvatsku? | – Još ne, ali imamo tamo prijatelje. |
| – <u>I</u> dete li na more? | – <u>S</u> vakako, idemo u Dubrovnik, pa onda na Korčulu. |

- Ah, Korčula je prekrasna! – Vjerujem! Odakle vi dolazite?
 – Dolazim iz Pariza. Tamo radim. – A idete li sada doma?
 – Da, idem u Zagorje, u malo selo. – Tamo je sigurno lijepo!
 – Da! Treba i taj kraj vidjeti. – Sljedeći put! Želite li nešto popiti?
 – Vrlo rado. Ima u blizini ugodan bar. – Hajdemo!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| dolaziti (dolazim) | to come | poznavati (poznajem) | to know, be acquainted with |
| još ne | not yet | svakako | certainly |
| vjerujem | I believe (you) | kraj | region, area |
| sljedeći put | next time | popiti (popijem) | to drink |
| rado | gladly | u blizini | nearby |

Exercise 5

(a) Answer these questions on Dialogue 1:

- 1 Je li Miroslav Antić iz Zagreba?
 - 2 Zašto ne ide sad u Karlovac?
 - 3 Kamo idu Alan i Nora?
 - 4 Gdje se nalazi¹ hotel Palace?
 - 5 Ostaju li u Zagrebu?
 - 6 Kamo idu poslije Zagreba?
- 1 **nalaziti se** 'to be situated'

(b)[†] Translate into Croatian:

VJEKOSLAV: Good afternoon,¹ I am Vjekoslav Kovačić.

JOHN: Pleased to meet you. I am John Green.

VJEKOSLAV: Are you from England? You speak Croatian well.

JOHN: Thank you. Do you speak English?

VJEKOSLAV: Only a little. Are you staying in Zagreb?

JOHN: For a few days. Do you know where the Palace hotel is?

VJEKOSLAV: I think it's near the station. These are the outskirts of Zagreb.

JOHN: Here we are! Is this your bag?

VJEKOSLAV: Yes. Thank you. I am glad that we met.

JOHN: So am I.² All the best. Goodbye!

VJEKOSLAV: Goodbye!

1 use **dobar dan**; 2 **I meni**

(c) Supply the missing half of the dialogue in the bus from the airport:

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Da, ovo je sad predgrađe Zagreba.

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Nisam, nego iz Rijeke. A vi, jeste li iz Londona?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Imate li rezerviran hotel?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: To je dobar hotel. Ostajete li u Zagrebu?

CAMERON: _____

ANTIĆ: Želim vam ugodan boravak. Drago mi je što smo se upoznali.

CAMERON: _____

(d)† Supply the appropriate endings for the nouns in the following text:

Vesna ide na _____ (kolodvor) jer mora čekati prijatelja iz _____ (Rijeka). Vlak stiže na vrijeme. Kad Ivan dođe, idu u _____ (hotel) da ostave stvari, a onda idu u _____ (restoran). Hotel je blizu _____ (kolodvor). Ivan je u vlaku. Gleda kroz _____ (prozor) i misli da vidi _____ (Vesna). Vesna čeka na platformi. Ivan izlazi iz _____ (vlak). Ivan i Vesna se pozdravljaju. Ivan nema puno stvari. Ima samo _____ (torba) i nešto za _____ (Vesna).

Dialogue 2



Ljubavna priča (4)

Ivo and Mara talk on the phone. What is Mara doing when Ivo phones? Does she want to go out? What is Ivo doing when Mara phones? Why does Mara think that Ivo is angry with her?

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 – Halo, ovdje Mara. Tko je? | – Ivo na telefonu. |
| – Bog, Ivo. | – Slušaj, Maro, moram te vidjeti. Što radiš? |
| – Ništa. Imam društvo. Razgovaramo. (<i>Stanka</i>) | |
| – Ne možeš izaći, je li? | – Ne mogu. |
| – Tko je kod tebe? | – Zašto pitaš? |
| – Pa tako. (<i>Stanka</i>) | |
| – Dakle, ne izlaziš? | – Ne. |
| – Dobro onda, ako je tako. | |
| Do viđenja. | – Do viđenja. |
| 2 Nekoliko dana kasnije. Kod Ive zvoni telefon. | |
| – Halo. | – Jesi li ti, Ivo? |

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| – Jesam. | – Ovdje Mara. |
| – Bog. | – Kako si? |
| – Dobro. A ti? | – Eto. Što radiš? |
| – Ništa naročito. Tako. Sjedim, nešto čitam. (<i>Stanka</i>) | – Je li? |
| – Zašto zoveš, Maro? Što želiš? | – Čuj, Ivo. Nemoj se tako ljutiti. |
| – Ne ljutim se. | – Ne javljaš se. |
| – Želiš li da se javljam? | – Pa, prijatelji smo, zar ne? |
| – Jasno, prijatelji smo. | – Opet se ljutiš? |
| – Ne ljutim se. Nego, netko me zove, moram ići. | – Onda, bog. |
| – Bog, Maro. | |

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|---|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| bog! | hi!; bye! | dakle | so, therefore |
| društvo | company | eto | well (inconclusive reply) |
| čuj! (imperative of čuti , čujem) | listen! | halo | hello (used only on the telephone) |
| izaći (imp. izlaziti) | to go out (pf.) | jasno | clearly, of course |
| kasnije (comp. of kasno) | later | kod tebe | at your place |
| nemoj se ljutiti | don't be angry | nekoliko | some, a few |
| pa tako | lit. 'well, like that', i.e. no reason | opet | again |
| slušaj (imperative of slušati) | listen! | raditi | to do, make |
| | | razgovarati (imp.) | to talk, converse |
| | | stanka | pause |
| | | zvoniti | to ring |

5

Dolazak u hotel

Arrival at the hotel

In this unit we will look at:

- the dative case
- the locative case
- the instrumental case
- a telephone conversation

Dialogue 1

U hotelu

The Camerons arrive at their hotel and go to their room. Where is their room? Why does Nora take the stairs? Does Alan carry the luggage? Does Nora like the room? Na recepciji

RECEPCIONER: Dobar dan, izv^olite.

ALAN: Dobar dan. Mi smo gospodin i gospođa Cameron.

RECEPCIONER: Imate li rezervacije?

ALAN: Imamo, za dvokrevetnu sobu.

RECEPCIONER: Samo tren^utak. Evo. Vi ste u sobi 25 na drugom katu. Molim vaše putovnice. Evo vam ključ. Dječak će vam ponijeti stvari. Idite dizalom. Soba je na lijevoj strani hodnika kad ižadete iz dizala.

NORA: Hvala. Ključ dajte mome sup^rugu: ja idem stubištem jer ne volim dizala.

ALAN: Torbu možeš dati dječaku.

U sobi

Alan otvara vrata; tada stiže i Nora.

NORA: Da vidim. Oh, kakva lijepa velika soba! Ima i lijep pogled na park!

DJEČ AK: Stvari su vam ovdje u ormaru. A u kupaonici ima tuš, umivaonik i WC.

Trebate li još nešto?

ALAN: Ne, hvala. Sve je u redu.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|---------------|--|--|
| će ponijeti (future) | will take | dati (imp. davati, dajem) | to give |
| da vidim | let me see! | dizalo | lift |
| dječak | boy | dolazak | arrival (from dolaziti) |
| drugi | second | | |
| dvadeset pet | twenty-five | dvokrevetna soba | double room |
| idite (imperative of ići) | go | izvolite | (<i>here</i>) May I help you? ¹ |
| jer | for, because | | |
| još | else, more | još ne | not yet |
| kat | floor, storey | kakav | what (kind of) |
| ključ | key | kupaonica | bathroom |
| liftom | by lift | lijevi | left |
| molim (vas, te) | please | mome (dat. of moj) | my |
| možeš (2nd pers. sing. of moći) | you can | ormar | wardrobe |
| otvarati (imp.) | to open | pogled | view |
| na recepciji | at reception | red | order |
| u redu | all right | rezervacija | reservation |
| stizati (imp. stižem) | to arrive | strana | side |
| | | stubište | stairs |
| suprug (f. supruga) | husband | tad, tada | then |
| | | trebati | to need |
| trenutak | moment | tuš | shower |
| umivaonik | washbasin | uskoro | soon |
| vam (dat. of vi) | to you | | |

¹ There is no exact equivalent in English; used when offering something, e.g. 'Please, help yourself'.

Language points 1

The dative case (the indirect object case)

The dative is generally used without a preposition, mainly to indicate the indirect object of a verb. In English this would generally be denoted by the preposition 'to'.

Govorim čovjeku.

I speak to the man.

Dajem dječaku prtljagu.

I give the luggage *to the boy*.

In English the preposition 'to' may be omitted, but the sense of 'indirectness' remains:

Daje ženi ključ.

He gives *his wife* the key.

(Here 'the key' answers the question 'what does he give?'; 'his wife' answers the question 'to whom?'.)

Govorim policajcu istinu.

I tell *the policeman* the truth.

Speaking to and giving to are the most common usages of the dative case, however in Croatian there are several instances of verbs which express related ideas, but where the need for the dative case may not be so immediately obvious:

pomagati (imp.), pomoći

to help (to give help to)

Djeca pomažu majci.

The children help (*their*) mother.

obećavati (imp.), obećati

to promise (to give a promise to ...)

Djevojčica obećaje majci da nikada neće pušiti.

The girl promises *her mother* that she will never smoke.

vjerovati (imp.), povjerovati

to believe (to give one's trust to ...)

Moraš vjerovati dječaku; on govori istinu.

You must believe *the boy*; he is telling the truth.

Masculine and neuter nouns. The ending for masculine and neuter nouns is **-u**, plural **-ima**.

Feminine nouns. For feminine nouns ending in **-a**, the final **-a** changes to **-i**; if they end in a consonant, **i** is added to the final consonant. The plural endings are **ama** for nouns ending in **-a** and **-ima** for nouns ending in a consonant.

Exercise 1

(a) Supply the dative of the each of the nouns below, following the example:

(i) *Example:*

RECEPCIONER: Dajem putovnicu recepcioneru.

gospodin Antić Nora sestra muž službenik

(ii) *Example:*

CARINIK: Govorimo cariniku na hrvatskom.

sin otac majka (*note: k+i becomes ci*) **gospoda**

Ana djeca (f. sing. collective plural of **dijete**) ‘children’

(b)† Rewrite the following sentences in the plural:

- 1 Dijete daje majci ruku.
- 2 Dajem cariniku putovnicu.
- 3 On govori prijatelju istinu.
- 4 Momak daje djevojci poklon.
- 5 Profesor govori studentu.

Language points 2*The locative case 1*

You will be relieved to learn that the endings of this case are identical to those of the dative. Unlike the dative, however, it is always used with a preposition. One of its most frequent uses is to express *location*. This is why it is called the locative case.

You remember that the accusative case must be used after verbs describing motion: **Alan i Nora idu u hotel** (accusative). But a different case, the locative, must be used to describe static location: **Alan i Nora su u hotelu** (locative). Compare the following two examples:

(acc.) **Putujemo u Zagreb.**

We are travelling *to Zagreb.*

(loc.)

Ostajemo 3 dana u Zagrebu.

We are staying three days *in Zagreb.*

Exercise 2

(a) Read the following text about the Palace Hotel in Zagreb and book a room for a few days.

HOTEL PALACE



Stossmayerov trg 1 Tel. +385 1 4814611 Fax. +385
1 4811358

SOBE:

Sve su sobe konforme i klimatizirane s TV, mini barom.

| | | |
|-----|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1/1 | jednokrevetna soba: noćenje i doručak | 770,00–850,00 kn. |
| 1/2 | dvokrevetna soba: noćenje i doručak | 980,00–1.100,00 kn. |
| | apartman | 1.800,00–2.100,00 kn. |
| | boravišna pristojba | 7 kn. |
| | polupansion nadoplata | 150 kn. |
| | puni pansion nadoplata | 250 kn. |

PONUDA:

| | |
|-------------|------------------|
| 123 sobe | kavana s terasom |
| 5 apartmana | TV dvorana |
| restoran | Casino |

| | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| dvorana za svečane prijeme, bankete, svadbe, kongrese | | | |
|---|--|--|--|

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|------------|
| klimatiziran | air-conditioned | boravišna pristojba | tax |
| polupansion | half board | puni pansion | full board |
| nadoplata | extra charge | | |

(b) Supply the locative case for the following nouns, making sentences using the verb **biti**, according to the example:

Example: hotel, ja: Ja sam u hotelu.

vlak, ti; more, oni; selo, mi; kofer ‘suitcase’, **to; Zagreb, vi**

(c) Supply the locative case for the following nouns:

- 1 Ja ostajem u _____ (grad).
- 2 Ja sam u _____ (zrakoplov).
- 3 Kofer je u _____ (autobus).
- 4 Stanujem u _____ (London).
- 5 Mi smo u _____ (park).

Language points 3

The locative case 2

The locative of feminine nouns:

Ovo je soba za Alana i Nora.

This is the room for Alan and Nora.

Alan i Nora su sada u sobi.

Alan and Nora are now *in the room*.

Sarajevo je u Bosni.

Sarajevo is *in Bosnia*.

Ljubljana je u Sloveniji.

Ljubljana is *in Slovenia*.

Rim je u Italiji.

Rome is *in Italy*.

Putovnica je u torbi.

The passport is *in the bag*.

Tuš je u kupaonici.The shower is *in the bathroom*.

Note: With the locative singular of feminine nouns ending in **-a**, there are two points to be wary of:

(i) Certain consonants are subject to changes when they are followed by **-i** (we have already met this with the masculine plural of **putnik, putnici**):

| | | | | |
|--------------|------------|---------------|------|-----------------|
| k + i | -ci | ruka | hand | u ruci |
| | | banka | bank | u banci |
| g + i | -zi | knjiga | book | u knjizi |

See also 'Grammar summary', 6, p. 302.

(ii) The names of certain countries etc. are not in fact nouns, but adjectives (**Engleska zemlja** 'the English land' etc.) and their declension is different. These words are easily identified, because they end in **-ska, -ška** or **-čka**. The locative singular ends in **-oj**:

| | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Engleska | u Engleskoj |
| Hrvatska | u Hrvatskoj |
| Njemačka | u Njemačkoj |
| Norveška | u Norveškoj |

Exercise 3

(a) Form sentences according to the example given. (*Note:* **ići u** + accusative because the verb expresses movement; **ostajati u** + locative because the sense is static.)

Example:

Zagreb Sutra idemo u Zagreb. Ostajemo tjedan dana u Zagrebu.
Tomorrow we're going to Zagreb. We're staying a week in Zagreb.

Dubrovnik Karlovac Rijeka Split Opatija

Example:

Engleska Sutra idemo u Englesku. Ostajemo tjedan dana u Engleskoj.

Grčka Bugarska Njemačka Irska Francuska

(b) Supply the appropriate form for the nouns:

- 1 Stvari su u _____ (torba).
- 2 Moje ime i prezime pišu u _____ (putovnica).
- 3 Stol i stolica su u _____ (soba).
- 4 Tuš, umivaonik i WC su u _____ (kupaonica).

5 Novac je u _____ (banka).



Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (5)

Mark meets the colleague, with whom he is to work on his visit to Croatia. What is her name? How do they get to Mark's hotel? Does he feel tired now?

U zračnoj luci, Mark se upoznaje s kolegicom s kojom treba raditi tijekom boravka u Zagrebu.

- Dobar dan! Vi ste Mark Dunlop?
- Jesam! Dobar dan! A vi ste?
- Ja sam Jasna Culek.
- Drago mi je!
- Dobro došli u Zagreb!
- Hvala! Baš se veselimo!
- Sigurno ste umorni. Izvolite ući u auto. Idemo u vaš hotel.
- Nisam umoran, ali želim vidjeti hotel. Hvala.
- Molim!

Vocabulary

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| kolega, kolegica | colleague |
| molim | please (also used as a response to hvala) |
| s kojom (koji, koja 'who') | with whom |
| tijekom (+ gen.) | in the course of |

Dialogue 2

Razgovor u vlaku

Conversation on a train

Two passengers travelling by train through Austria discuss their journeys.

- Jesmo li sada u Sloveniji? - Ne, još uvijek smo u Austriji.
- Želim vidjeti Sloveniju. - Lijepa je. Ostajete li u Sloveniji?
- Ne, idemo u Grčku. - Poznajete li već Grčku?
- Još ne. Poznajemo Tursku. - Je li? Moj sin je u Turskoj.
- Putujete li vi u Zagreb? - Da, stanujem u Zagrebu.

- Poznajete li London? – Još ne! Ima mnogo stvari u Londonu koje treba vidjeti ...
- Poznajete li cijeli Balkan? – Ne baš cijeli, ali prilično putujem po Balkanu.
- U koje zemlje najčešće – Pa, najviše idem u Hrvatsku, idete? u Dalmaciju. Onda idem u Sloveniju na skijanje. Idem ponekad u Bosnu i u Srbiju.
- A zamislite, ja ne poznajem Škotsku! – Ma nemojte! A Irsku?
- Vrlo dobro: imam prijatelje u Irskoj. I – Sigurno je jako lijepo u Walesu.
u Wales idem često.
- Da, ali ima tako mnogo lijepih krajeva – Imate pravo, a često putujemo više po dalekim
u svijetu, čovjek ne može stići sve zemljama nego po susjednim!
vidjeti.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| cijeli | whole | često | often |
| daleki | distant | koi | which |
| ma nemojte! | you don't say! | najčešće | most often |
| najviše | mostly | prilično | fairly |
| stanovati (stanujem) | to live, reside | stići (stignem) | to arrive, manage |
| susjedni | neighbouring | svijet | the world |
| zamisliti | to imagine | zemlja | country |

Language points 4

The instrumental case

There is one more case to be learned. Its use is quite straightforward and we have already seen it in action. This is the instrumental case, used to express the means by which an action is carried out:

Putujem vlakom.
I travel *by train*.

Idemo dizalom.
We go *by lift*.

Pismo ide zračnom poštom.
The letter goes *by airmail*.

The instrumental is also used after certain prepositions:

s, sa 'with' **Alan dolazi dizalom sa stvarima.**
Alan is coming in the lift *with the things*.

Singular. The instrumental ending is the same for all genders: **-om**:

Putujem s bratom, sa sestrom i s¹ djetetom.

I am travelling with (my) brother, (my) sister and the child.

1 **s** is the norm; **sa** may be used before words beginning with **s, š** or **z, ž**; or a consonant group: **sa mnom, sa psom**.

Plural. The endings are the same as for the dative and locative cases:

– *Masculine and neuter ending in -ima:*

Idem s prijateljima.

I am going with friends.

– *Feminine ending in a consonant:*

Putujem sa stvarima.

I am travelling with (the) things.

– *Feminine ending in -a, -ama:*

Putujem s djevojkama.

I am travelling with (the) girls.

Note: The masculine singular instrumental ending **-om** changes to **-em** after soft consonants:

Razgovaram s prijateljem.

I am talking with (my) friend.

For exceptions, and a complete list of noun declensions, see ‘Grammar summary’, 1, pp. 294–6.

Exercise 4

(a) Answer the questions using the appropriate means of transport:

Example: Idemo tramvajem

We go by tram (**tramvaj** ‘tram’)

- 1 Kako idete u Francusku?
- 2 Kako idete u Ameriku?
- 3 Kako idete preko Atlantika?
- 4 Kako idete na posao? (to work)
- 5 Kako idete u grad?
- 6 Kako idete u svemir? (space)

brod vlak bicikl zrakoplov raketa auto

(b)† Select from the right-hand column the most appropriate endings to these sentences:

- | | | |
|----|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | Nije daleko do hotela, | molim vaše putovnice |
| 2 | Nemamo rezervacije, | stvari su u ormaru |
| 3 | Ima samo jedna slobodna ¹ soba, | treba ići stubištem |
| 4 | Ako imate mnogo prtljage, | nalazi se na trećem katu |
| 5 | Kad izađete iz dizala, | i ima lijep pogled na park |
| 6 | Na žalost ² dizalo ne radi, | trebamo dvokrevetnu sobu |
| 7 | Evo vam ključ, | ima tuš, umivaonik i WC |
| 8 | Soba je velika, | dječak će vam ponijeti stvari |
| 9 | Ako trebaš kišobran, | idemo pješice ³ |
| 10 | Kupaonica je lijepa, | soba je na lijevoj strani hodnika |

1 **slobodan** ‘free’; 2 **na žalost** ‘unfortunately’; 3 **pješice** ‘on foot’

(c) Answer the following questions on Dialogue 1:

- 1 Imaju li Alan i Nora rezervacije u hotelu?
- 2 Kakvu¹ sobu trebaju?
- 3 Gdje se nalazi soba?
- 4 Što daju recepcioneru?
- 5 Kako idu do sobe?
- 6 Voli li Nora dizala?
- 7 Tko otvara vrata?
- 8 Je li soba mala?
- 9 Ima li pogled na kolodvor?
- 10 Trebaju li još nešto?

1 **kakav** ‘what kind of’

(d)† Translate into Croatian:

I am going to Zagreb. I am travelling by plane. I need a hotel near the bus station. I am not carrying much luggage so I can go to the hotel on foot. I need a single room.¹ I want a large room with a view of the park. I want to be on the first floor because I don’t like lifts. I need a bathroom with a shower, WC and washbasin.

1 **jednokrevetna soba**

(e)† Choose the most appropriate word:

- 1 Marko često putuje u _____ .
(a) Francuska (b) Francuskoj
(c) Francusku (d) Francuskom
- 2 Uvijek idem na more _____ .
(a) vlakom (b) u vlaku
(c) s vlakom (d) vlak
- 3 Svaki dan razgovaram _____ .

(a) prijateljem (b) prijatelji

(c) s prijateljem (d) prijatelj

4 Ostajemo tjedan dana u _____ .

(a) Engleska (b) Engleskom

(c) Englesku (d) Engleskoj

5 Receptonier daje ključ _____ .

(a) gospodinu (b) gospodin

(c) gospodinom (d) gospodine

(f)[†] Fill the gaps using the following words in the order in which they are listed, but in their correct forms:

vlak more prijatelji Split zrakoplov vlak konduktier Split kolodvor

Petar je u _____. Putuje na _____. Źeli provesti vikend s _____ u _____. Petar obično putuje _____, ali sada ima vremena pa putuje _____. U kupe ulazi konduktier. Petar daje _____ kartu. Kad dođe u _____, na _____ ga čeka prijatelj Ivan.

konduktier

ticket inspector

kupe

compartment

Dialogue 3 

Ljubavna priša (5)

Ivo and Mara meet on Stradun. Where is Mara going? Is she wearing a new dress? What has Ivo been doing with himself? Do they go straight to Nada's place? Are they still angry with each other?

- O, bog, Mara! Kako si? Što radiš?
- Dobro sam. Idem k Nadi.
- Lijepo izgledaš. Nova haljina?
- Ma ne! Nosim je godinama!
- Lijepo ti stoji. Mogu li te otpratiti do Nade?
- Ako hoćeš. Što radiš ovih dana?
- Ništa. Sjedim doma.
- Zašto ne izlaziš?
- Znaš da ne želim izaći bez tebe.
- O, Ivo ...

Ivo oprezno uzima Maru za ruku. Ona ništa ne govori. Hodaju tako neko vrijeme bez riječi.

- Je li, Maro, kamo idemo? Ovo nije put do Nade.
- Oh, imaš pravo!
- Čeka li te ona?

- Ne.
 – Onda u redu. Možemo li malo prošetati?
 – Možemo.

Stanka. Ivo se zaustavlja i gleda Maru u oči.

- Kako je odjednom sve jednostavno! Drago mi je što smo tu, skupa.
 – I meni.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| bez (+ gen.) | without | godina | year |
| godinama (instr. pl.) | years | haljina | dress |
| | | i meni | me too (dative of ja 'I') |
| izgledati | to look, appear | | |
| jednostavno | simple | neko vrijeme | for a time |
| ništa | nothing | nositi (imp.) | (<i>here</i>) to wear |
| oprezno | cautiously | otpratiti (pf.) | to accompany |
| ovih dana | recently (lit. 'these days') | riječ (f.) | word |
| | | skupa | together |
| stajati nekome dobro | to suit someone | uzimati za ruku | to take by the hand |
| zaustavljati se | to stop | zašto | why |

6

Razgovor o stanu

Conversation about a flat

In this unit we will look at

- adjectives
- the nominative case of adjectives
- vocabulary about flats and furniture

Dialogue 1

Poziv na večeru

Invitation to dinner

The Camerons' friends Slavko and Marija invite them home to dinner. Why has Slavko come? What is Slavko and Marija's flat like? What are their son and daughter called? How many bedrooms do they have? Where does Marija suggest that they all sit?

ALAN: Halo, Alan Cameron na telefonu.

SLAVKO: Bog, Alane, dobro došao! Ovdje Slavko.

ALAN: Slavko! Gdje si?

SLAVKO: U hotelu sam, na recepciji. Pozivamo vas na večeru. Jeste li spremni? Marija nas čeka kod kuće.

ALAN: Jesmo, evo, sad silazimo. Bog!

Kod Slavka i Marije

NORA: Kakav lijep stan, Marija! Prostran je, udoban i svijetao. Zadovoljni ste, je li?

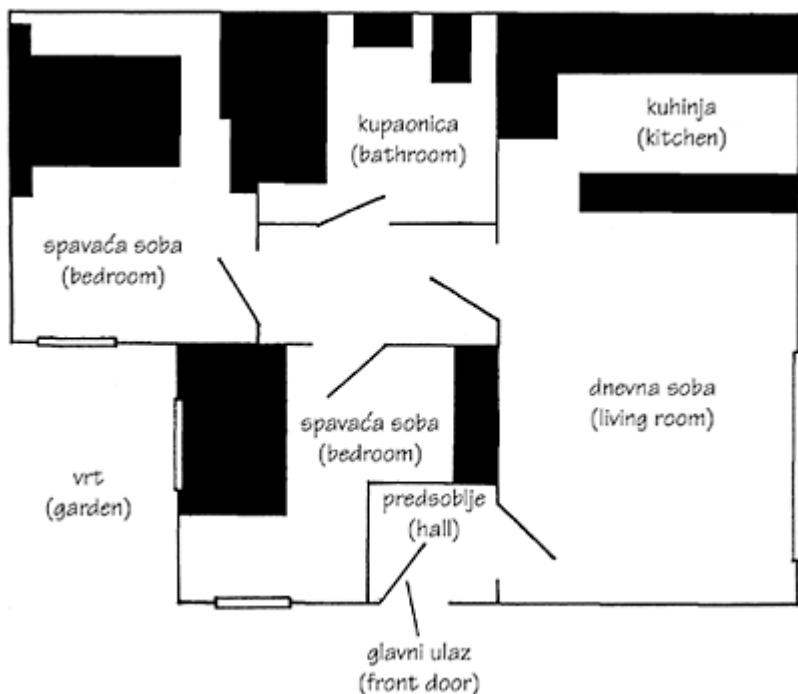
MARIJA: Jesmo, i mi mislimo da je lijep. I dovoljno je velik za nas, sad kad djeca više nisu kod kuće.

NORA: Tko je taj lijepi mladić na slici? Nemoj mi reći da je to Tomislav!

MARIJA: Pa je, zamisli! A ova elegantna mlada dama je Ivana. Dođite da vam pokažemo stan. Ovo je dnevna soba, tu su dvije male spavaće sobe, a ondje su kuhinja i kupaoonica.

ALAN: Imate i prekrasan balkon, pun cvijeća.

MARIJA: Da, možemo tamo malo i posjediti, dok nas Slavko služi nekim domaćim pićem. Izvolite!



Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|--------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| balkon | balcony | cvijeće (n. coll.) | flowers |
| dama | lady | djeca (pl. of <i>dijete</i> child; djeca has f. sing. form) | children |
| dnevna soba | living (lit. 'day') room | | |
| domaći | home-made, local | | |
| | | dovoljan, -ljna | sufficient |
| dvije (f.) | two (m. dva) | gdje | where |
| kuhinja | kitchen | mlad | young |
| ondje | over there | posjediti (pf. posjedim) | to sit for a while |
| pozivati (imp. pozivam) | to invite | prostran | spacious |
| pun | full | reći (pf. reknem) | to say |
| sići (imp. sići , pf. siđem) | to go/come down | slika | picture |
| smatrati (imp.) | to consider | služiti (imp.) | to serve ¹ |
| spreman, -mna | ready | spavaća soba | bedroom |
| | | stan | flat, apartment |

| | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|--|-------------|
| svijetao, -tla | bright | taj (m.) (f. ta ; n. to) | that |
| tamo | there | | |
| tu | here | udoban, -bna | comfortable |
| večera | dinner, evening meal | zadovoljan, -ljna | satisfied |
| | | zvöniti (imp.) | to ring |

1 Use with acc. of person served and instr. of article with which he/she is served.

Language points 1

Adjectives 1

Like nouns, adjectives have three genders, singular and plural forms and case endings which, unfortunately, differ somewhat from those of the nouns. Adjectives must agree in all respects with the nouns they qualify.

Masculine: nominative case

Most, but not all, masculine singular adjectives have an additional dimension: they may be definite or indefinite. The use of these forms corresponds roughly to the idea of definiteness or indefiniteness conveyed by the English articles.

Imate lijep stan (indef.).

You have *a nice* flat.

Taj lijepi (def.) **stan je udoban** (indef.).

That *nice* flat is *comfortable*.

Taj udobni (def.) **stan je prostran** (indef.).

That *comfortable* flat is *spacious*.

The definite form ends in **-i**. There are certain situations in which it must be used: (i) after demonstrative and possessive pronouns; and (ii), as in English, once the subject has been mentioned.

The indefinite form must be used when the adjective is the complement of **biti**:

Taj putnik je mlad.

That passenger is *young*.

but **Mladi putnik je umoran.**

The young passenger is *tired*.

Do not be too alarmed by this additional complication: the definite adjective differs from the indefinite only in the nominative, genitive and dative/locative cases. What is more, the rule is strictly applied only in situations such as those mentioned here. The indefinite

form ends either in a consonant or in **-o** which is derived from **-l**. This **-l** is present in the other genders and all cases other than masculine nominative.

Taj čovjek je debeo. That man is *fat*.

Moja mačka je debela. My cat is *fat*.

Vi niste debeli. You are not *fat*.

The masculine plural ends in **-i**. There is no difference between indefinite and definite forms.

Debeli ljudi su često veseli. Fat people are often cheerful.

Ti putnici su debeli. Those passengers are fat.

Final -o of masculine adjectives and 'mobile a'

The final **-o** of masculine adjectives is always preceded by a vowel. If the stem does not otherwise contain a vowel before the **-l** from which the **-o** is derived, something known as 'mobile **a**' is inserted. For a general note on mobile **a** see 'Grammar summary', 5, p. 301. Many indefinite masculine adjectives may have mobile **a** inserted between the final two consonants of the nominative singular. This is to ease pronunciation. The **a**, which is only added for convenience when necessary, disappears in the other cases and other genders and in the plural.

On je dobar čovjek. He is a good man (person).

Oni su dobri ljudi. They are good people.

To je dobra riba. That's (a) good fish.

Ovo je dobro vino. This is (a) good wine.

When you learn a new adjective with indefinite masculine nominative ending in **a + consonant**, check in a dictionary to see whether this is a mobile **a**. In the exercises in this book such adjectives will be marked with an asterisk until they become familiar.

Exercise 1

(a) Supply the definite form of the following masculine adjectives, as shown in the example.

Example: Taj student je mlad.

Mladi student je ovdje.

Moj kišobran je crn. _____ kišobran je ovdje.

Putnik je umoran*. _____ putnik je ovdje.

Vaš pas je lijep. _____ pas je ovdje.

Ovaj krevet je velik. _____ krevet je ovdje.

Moj telefon je nov. _____ telefon je na stolu.

(b) Supply the indefinite form, as shown in the example:

Example: Imate prostrani stan.

Vaš stan je prostran.

Volim taj lijepi balkon.

Taj balkon je _____

Gledam kroz veliki prozor.

Prozor je _____

On ima crni šešir.

Šešir je _____

Veseli putnik pjeva.

Putnik je _____

Ovo je moj pametni* brat.

Moj brat je _____

Language points 2

Adjectives 2

Neuter: nominative case

There is an indefinite form, but only of the genitive and dative/ locative cases.

– nominative singular ending: **-o**, e.g. **lijepo, veliko, dobro**; or, after soft consonants: **-e**, e.g. **domaće**

– nominative plural ending: **-a**, e.g. **lijepa, velika, dobra, domaća**

Jadransko more.

Mala dalmatinska sela.

The Adriatic sea

Small Dalmatian villages.

Domaće vino.

Plitvička jezera.

Local wine.

The Plitvice lakes.

Feminine: nominative case

– nominative singular ending: **-a**, e.g. **lijepa, velika, dobra**

– nominative plural ending: **-e**, e.g. **lijepo, velike, dobre**

Voda je topla.

The water is warm.

Djevojke su umorne.

The girls are tired.

Lijepa dalmatinska noć.

A beautiful Dalmatian night.

Prostrane sobe su udobne.

Spacious rooms are comfortable.

Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with an appropriate adjective from the list below. Remember to alter the ending to agree with the noun:

1 Domaće vino je jako _____ .

2 Šešir je _____ a rukavice su _____ . (**rukavice** ‘gloves’)

3 Taj ____ kufer je kod momka. (**kufer** 'suitcase')

4 Pogled iz naše sobe je vrlo ____ .

5 Sobe u stanu su ____ .

6 Ta ____ mlada dama je naša kći. (**kći** 'daughter')

7 ____ sobe su na prvom katu.

8 Šljivovica je ____ piće.

9 Kuhinja je ____ , ali dovoljno ____ za nas.

10 Sobe imaju mnogo prozora, jako su ____ .

malen svijetao* spavaći dobar elegantan* lijep prostran crn velik
bijel jak 'strong'

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (6)

Mark arrives at the hotel. As he is relaxing in his room, Jasna telephones. What does Mark like about his hotel room? Why does Jasna telephone? Why does he look sadly at his clothes?

Mark Dunlop ulazi u svoju sobu. Mala je, ali udobna. Soba mu se sviđa: zidovi su obojeni ugodnom svijetloplavom bojom, ima lijepih slika Zagreba na zidovima.

Mark se ne želi odmah raspakirati. Uzima pivo iz mini-bara, pali televizor i ispruži se na krevet.

Telefon zvoni. Javlja se Jasna. Poziva ga na večeru.

Mark stavlja čašu na stolić pokraj kreveta. Ustaje s uzdahom. otvara torbu i vadi stvari. Gleda tužno svoju odjeću: sve je izgužvano ...

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|-------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| boja | colour | čaša | glass |
| ga (gen./acc. of pronoun on) | | ispružiti se (pf.) | to stretch out |
| izgužvano | crumpled | javljati se (imp.) | to call (or get in touch in any way) |
| mu (dat. of pronoun on) | | | |
| o bojen | painted | odjeća | clothes |
| o dmah | immediately | paliti (imp.) | to turn on |
| pivo | beer | plav | blue |
| raspakirati (pf. raspakiram) | to unpack | stavljati (imp.) | to place |
| | | stolić | little table |

| | | | |
|--|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| svidati se (imp.) (+ dat.) | to appeal to | svijetao, svijetla (adj.) | light |
| televizor | the television set ¹ | tužno | sadly |
| | | ulaziti (imp.) | to enter |
| ustajati (imp. ustajem) | to get up | uzdah | sigh |
| | | vaditi (imp.) | to take out |
| zid | wall | | |

1 network, programmes etc. **televizija**

Exercise 3

(a)[†] Translate the following sentences into Croatian:

- 1 That Scotsman is handsome.
- 2 Irish women are beautiful.
- 3 Is your (**vaša**) room comfortable?
- 4 The plane is comfortable.
- 5 Is the bus stop near?
- 6 Have you got the big black umbrella?
- 7 Dalmatian women are beautiful and elegant.
- 8 Is your bag black?
- 9 Isn't the view from the balcony beautiful?
- 10 Zagreb is a pleasant town.
- 11 Old Zagreb is small but beautiful.
- 12 Is the Palace a good hotel?
- 13 It is not a big hotel, but it is comfortable.
- 14 Hvar is a beautiful island.
- 15 That is our big son, do you see through the window?
- 16 He can carry the big black suitcase.
- 17 This is our hotel; you see that it is pleasant.
- 18 The double room is not very big.
- 19 But the room is comfortable and has a nice view of the park.
- 20 The passengers are tired and want to sleep.

(b) Answer the following questions choosing appropriate adjectives from the list and supplying their correct form:

**dobar velik lijep svijetao elegantan udoban
ugodan prekrasan domaći**

- 1 Kakav je vaš stan?
- 2 Kakav je pogled iz dnevne sobe?
- 3 Kakav je grad Zagreb?

- 4 Kakva je spavaća soba?
 5 Kakva je djevojka Marija?
 6 Kakva su vaša djeca?
 7 Kakvi su hoteli na moru?
 8 Kakva su vina?
 9 Kakve su knjige?
 10 Kakva je zračna luka?

Language points 3

Adverbs

As we saw in Unit 2 many adverbs are the neuter nominative singular of adjectives:

| <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Adverbial use</i> |
|------------------|------------------|--|
| dobar | dobro | Dobro došli! Welcome! (lit. 'well come') |
| lijep | lijepo | Soba je lijepo namještena. The room is nicely furnished. |
| mali | malo | On je malo umoran. He is a little tired. |
| lak | lako | Lako možemo naći hotel. We can easily find the hotel. |
| prekrasan | prekrasno | Večera prekrasno miriše! Dinner smells wonderful! |

Vocabulary building

Kuća, stan, pokućstvo 'house, flat, furniture'

Building:

jednokatnica 'one-storey house'; **dvokatnica** 'two-storey house'; **zid** 'wall'; **krov** 'roof'; **vrata** 'door'; **ulazna vrata** 'front door'; **prozor** 'window'; **dimnjak** 'chimney' (**dim** 'smoke'); **stambena zgrada** 'block of flats'

Rooms:

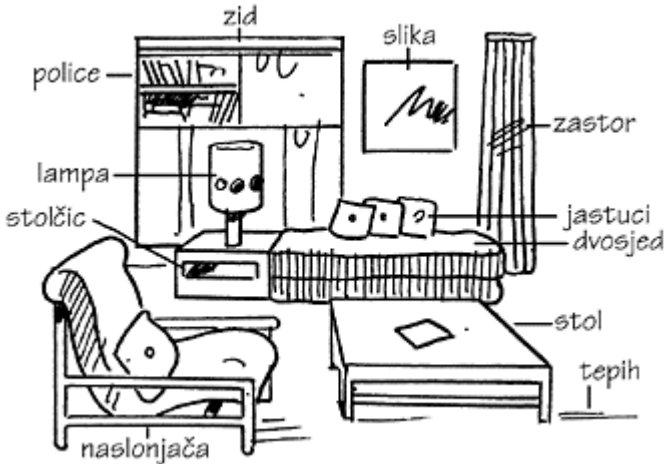
predsoblje 'vestibule'; **hodnik** 'hall, corridor'; **dnevna soba** (or **dnevni boravak**) 'living room'; **blagovaonica** 'dining room'; **kuhinja** 'kitchen'; **spavaća soba** 'bedroom'; **kupaonica** 'bathroom'

Living room furniture:

stol 'table'; **stolica** 'chair'; **naslonjač** 'armchair'; **tepih** 'carpet'; **slika** 'picture'; **telefon** 'telephone'; **televizor** 'television set'; **zastor** 'curtain'; **tapete** (f. pl.) 'wallpaper'; **polica za knjige** 'bookshelf'; **dvosjed** 'sofa'

Bedroom:

krevet 'bed'; **ormar** 'wardrobe'; **zrcalo** 'mirror'; **ladica** 'drawer'; **madrac** 'mattress'; **poplun** 'continental quilt'; **posteljina** 'bed linen'; **deka** 'blanket'; **jastuk** 'pillow'



Kitchen:

štednjak 'cooker'; **pećnica** 'oven'; **hladnjak (frižider)** 'fridge'; **perilica** 'washing machine'; **stroj za pranje suda** 'dishwasher'; **lonac** 'pot, pan'; **nož** 'knife'; **vilica** 'fork'; **žlica** 'spoon'; **tanjur** 'plate'; **šalica** 'cup'; **čaša** 'glass'

Dialogue 2

Bill has been lent a friend Ante's flat while he is in Zagreb. Ante is showing him round.

ANTE: Ovdje se pali svjetlo.

BILL: Gdje se pali televizor?

ANTE: Ovdje. Nema grijanja preko ljeta. Ako ti je hladno, imaš grijalicu.

BILL: Gdje se nalazi bojler? Trebam li ga uključiti?

ANTE: Ne, stalno je uključen. Na plin je. Voda je jako topla.

BILL: A štednjak je na struju, je li?

ANTE: Da. A pribor za jelo ti je u ovoj ladici.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| paliti (imp.) | to light, switch on | uključiti (pf.) | to plug in |
| | | grijanje | heating |
| grijalica | heater | stalno | constantly |
| plin | gas | struja | electricity (lit. 'current') |
| pribor za jelo | cutlery | | |
| svjetlo | light (noun) | | |

Dialogue 3

Rose is reading 'Plavi oglasnik' because she wants to rent a flat in Zagreb. She wants to spend three months there and attend a Croatian course.

UGLASI – IZNAMLJIVANJE STANOVA

Dubrava, garsonijera, namještena, lift, kablovska TV, 350 Eura, **01/ 4823-076**

Centar, dvosoban stan, namješten, centralno grijanje, 3. kat, lift, **091/ 2018-649**

Centar, trošoban stan, namješten, 400 Eura/mj + režije, **01/ 4618-508**

Trešnjevka, B. Kačića, 3. kat, stan 100 m², lift, lijepo namješten, **098/ 417-312**

ROSE: Dobar dan, zovem u vezi s oglasom. Vi iznajmljujete garsonijeru u Dubravi, je li?

GOSPODIN BALENOVIĆ: Da, izvolite.

ROSE: Možete li mi reći, molim vas, kolika je stanarina, jesu li režije uključene i je li dobro prometno povezan s centrom?

GOSPODIN BALENOVIĆ: Stanarina je 1000 kuna mjesečno. Polog se plaća u vrijednosti jedne stanarine. Od režija samo je plin uključen, a struju plaćate po potrošnji. Stan se nalazi 5 minuta od tramvajske stanice i imate 3 tramvaja koja voze do centra, broj 12, 11 i 7.

ROSE: Kada mogu doći pogledati stan?

GOSPODIN BALENOVIĆ: Možete sutra ujutro oko 10.

ROSE: Dogovoreno, vidimo se sutra. Hvala vam i doviđenja.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| oglas | advertisement | iznajmljivanje | letting, renting |
| garsonijera | studio flat | namješten | furnished |
| režije | utility bills | kat | floor |
| stanarina | rent | uključen | included |
| povezan | connected | polog | deposit |
| u vrijednosti | to the value of | po potrošnji | according to consumption |

Exercise 4

(a)† Choose the most appropriate word:

- 1 Stan u centru Zagreba je _____ namješten.
 (a) lijep (b) lijepo (c) ima (d) mali
- 2 Kupaonica je lijepa i _____ .
 (a) svijetla (b) svijetao (c) svijetlo (d) svijetli
- 3 _____ košta 1,000 kuna mjesečno.
 (a) lako (b) stanarina (c) mora (d) plaća
- 4 Stan je _____ velik za obitelj.
 (a) lijepo (b) dobro (c) dovoljno (d) lako
- 5 Mjesečna stanarina je 1,000 kuna bez _____ .
 (a) kupaonice (b) auta (c) prozora (d) režija

(b) Complete the following conversation:

MARIJA: Ako ste slobodni, pozivamo vas na večeru.

NORA: _____

MARIJA: U hotelu smo, na recepciji.

NORA: _____

MARIJA: Izvoli, ovo je naš stan.

NORA: _____

MARIJA: Da, jako smo zadovoljni. Nije velik.

NORA: _____

MARIJA: Ne, djeca nisu više kod kuće.

NORA: _____

MARIJA: Jesu, zamisli! Velika su, zar ne! Izvoli sjesti.

NORA: _____

Dialogue 4

Ljubavna priča (6)

Who is coming to visit Ivo? Where is Ivo going to meet him? Where does Ivo suggest that he meet Mara and the others? How do they part?

- Što radiš večeras, Maro? – pita odjednom Ivo.
- Ništa naročito. Nada želi da se nađemo s nekim njezinim prijateljima u gradu. Zašto pitaš?
- Dolazi mi bratić. Stariji je od mene, živi u Hercegovini, u selu nedaleko od Mostara. Ne poznaje Dubrovnik pa mu želim pokazati grad.
- Imamo zgodno društvo i uvijek se veselimo novim znancima.
- Može. Ja ga moram poslije podne dočekati na autobusnom kolodvoru i odvesti kući. Dođite u 6 navečer pred Gradsku kavanu.
- U redu. Ja sad zaista moram k Nadi. Vidimo se.

– Bog!

Mladi ljudi se ljube, kao da je sve po starom.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| bratić | cousin | dočekati (pf.) | to wait for, meet |
| dogovoriti se (pf.) | to arrange | kući (dat.) | home |
| naći se | to meet | navečer | in the evening |
| njezin | her | odjednom | all at once |
| odvesti (pf.) | to take (away, of people) | pa | so |
| poslije podne | in the afternoon | pokazati (pf. pokažem) | to show |
| poznaničnik | acquaintance | poznavati (imp. poznajem) | to know, be acquainted with |
| pridružiti se (+ dat.) | to join (a person or group) | selo | village |
| stanica | station | stariji | older |
| sve je po starom | everything's just | ugodan, -dna | pleasant the same, just as it was |
| veseliti se (imp.) (+ dat.) | to enjoy, look forward to | uvijek | always |
| | | večeras | this evening |
| | | zaista | really |
| | | živjeti (živim) | to live |

7

Na pošti

At the post office

In this unit we will look at:

- cardinal numbers 1, 2, 3 etc.
- the use of verbs with numbers
- more telephone conversations

Dialogue 1



Cameronovi idu na poštu

The Camerons go to the post office

Where is the main post office? How long are most post offices open in Croatia? What stamps does Nora need? How many does she buy altogether? Why do they want to send one letter by registered post?

NORA: Molim vas, nešto želim pitati: ima li neka pošta blizu hotela?

RECEPCIONER: Svakako. Glavna pošta je odmah kod kolodvora. Otvorena je od 8 do 22. Manje pošte su obično otvorene do 20 sati.

NORA: Hvala lijepo.

U pošti¹

SLUŽBENICA: Izvolite, što želite?

NORA: Ove dvije razglednice i dvije marke za Hrvatsku, molim.

SLUŽBENICA: Izvolite. Još nešto?

NORA: Trebam deset maraka za Englesku.

SLUŽBENICA: Deset puta dvije kune i četrdeset lipa. Dakle: dvadeset četiri kune, plus tri za domaće marke, i četiri za razglednice – trideset i jednu kunu, molim.

NORA: Onda, ovo je pismo jako važno. Želim ga poslati preporučeno.

SLUŽBENICA: Izvolite. Sve ukupno trideset šest kuna.

ALAN: Hvala, gdje treba predati poštu?

SLUŽBENICA: Imate poštanski sandučić pokraj glavnog ulaza.

ALAN: Puno hvala na pomoći.

SLUŽBENICA: Nema na čemu! Do viđenja.

1 Note that it is possible to use both **na** and **u** here. When **u** is used, the speaker is thinking specifically of being *inside* the building.

Note: The currency in Croatia is the **kuna**, a hundredth of which is a **lipa**.



Glavna pošta u Zagrebu

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| dakle | therefore, so | deset | ten |
| dvadeset | twenty | dvije | two |
| četiri | four | četrdeset | forty |
| glavni | main | koštati (imp.) | to cost |
| manji (comp. of mali) | smaller | marka | stamp |
| | | nema na čemu | you're welcome |
| otvoren | open | pismo | letter |
| pomoć (f.) | help | poslati (pošaljem) | to send |
| pošta | post office; mail | | |
| predati (pf.) | to hand in | preporučen | recommended, registered |
| puno hvala | thank you very much | put | (<i>here</i>) time |
| razglednica | postcard | sandučić | (letter) box |
| sat | hour | šest | six |
| trebati (imp.) | to need | tri | three |

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------|--------------------|------------|
| trideset | thirty | ukupno | altogether |
| ulaz | entrance | važan, -žna | important |

Language points 1

Cardinal numbers

| | | | | | |
|----|---|-----------|---------------------------------|----|------------|
| 0 | nula, ništica | 7 | sedam | 14 | četрнаest |
| 1 | jedan, jedna, jedno | 8 | osam | 15 | petnaest |
| 2 | dva, dvije | 9 | devet | 16 | šesnaest |
| 3 | tri | 10 | deset | 17 | sedamnaest |
| 4 | četiri | 11 | jedanaest | 18 | osamnaest |
| 5 | pet | 12 | dvanaest | 19 | devetnaest |
| 6 | šest | 13 | trinaest | 20 | dvadeset |
| 21 | dvadeset jedan <i>or</i> dvadeset i jedan | | | | |
| 22 | dvadeset dva, dvadeset i dva (dvije) etc. | | | | |
| 30 | trideset | 70 | sedamdeset | | |
| 40 | četrideset | 80 | osamdeset | | |
| 50 | pedeset | 90 | devedeset | | |
| 60 | šezdeset | | | | |
| | | 100 | sto <i>or</i> stotina | | |
| | | 200 | dvjesto <i>or</i> dvije stotine | | |
| | | 300 | tristo <i>or</i> tri stotine | | |
| | | 400 | četiristo | | |
| | | 500 | petsto etc. | | |
| | | 1,000 | tisuća | | |
| | | 1,000,000 | milijun | | |
| | | 3,000 | tri tisuće | | |
| | | 5,000,000 | pet milijuna | | |

Numbers in Croatian are something of a hurdle, but you will soon become accustomed to them, although they will probably seem quite complicated to start with!

The number 1, **jedan**. This at least is straightforward, it is an ordinary adjective, declined like **umoran**:

jedan čovjek

Vidim jednog čovjeka.

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| jedna žena | Daje pismo jednoj ženi. |
| jedno selo | Stanuju u jednom selu. |

There are also plural forms:

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| jedni ljudi | some people |
| jedne cipele | one pair of shoes |
| jedna vrata | one door (vrata : n. pl.) |

Note: **jedan** is sometimes used in place of an indefinite article. **Jedna vrata** might be translated 'a door', depending on the context.

Jedna vrata su otvorena.

One door is open.

or A door is open.

Exercise 1[†]

Supply the correct form of **jedan**:

- 1 Ovo je _____ moja prijateljica.
- 2 Ovo je _____ moj prijatelj.
- 3 _____ žena ima prekrasan stan u Dubrovniku.
- 4 _____ putnik putuje sam u Zagreb.
- 5 _____ dijete je u vlaku bez roditelja.

Language points 2

More cardinal numbers

The numbers 2, 3 and 4 and all compound numbers ending in 2, 3 and 4 (22, 23, 24, 92, 104, 553, 2084 etc.) are followed by the genitive singular:

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| dva mladića | two young men |
| dvadeset tri putnika | twenty-three travellers |
| četiri sestre | four sisters |

The number 2 has both a masculine and a feminine form: **dva stola** but **dvije stolice**. There is also a neuter form for mixed gender pairs: **dvoje djece**, **dvoje zaljubljenih**. There are declensions for 2, 3 and 4 but they are hardly used in the modern language. You will find them in a grammar if you are interested.

When adjectives are used with the nouns following these numerals, the same endings are used:

| | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| dva umorna putnika | two tired travellers |
|---------------------------|----------------------|

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| tri lijepe djevojke | three pretty girls |
| četiri mala sela | four small villages |

The remaining numerals, i.e. those higher than 5, are followed by the genitive plural:

| | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| 5 pet mladića | 6 šest djevojaka | 7 sedam sestara |
| 8 osam sinova | 9 devet pisama | 10 deset maraka |
| 12 dvanaest konja | 35 trideset pet knjiga | |

Exercise 2

(a) † Write out the following numbers in words. Check with the list at the beginning of the unit and then translate into English.

- 1 Moramo rezervirati 2 sobe u hotelu.
- 2 U pošti kupujemo 3 marke.
- 3 Trebam 1 kovertu i 5 avionskih pisama.
- 4 Moraš poslati 1 preporučeno pismo.
- 5 Gdje mogu predati ova 4 paketa?
- 6 Moraš promijeniti tih 20 putničkih čekova u mjenjačnici.
- 7 Imamo 1 kreditno pismo za vašu banku.
- 8 Možete promijeniti 100 dolara u banci.
- 9 Žele podići 12 funti sa štedne knjižice.
- 10 Hoće uložiti ove 53 funte u poštansku štedionicu.

| | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| koverta | envelope | mjenjačnica | exchange |
| promijeniti (pf.) | to change | putnički ček | traveller's cheque |
| štedna knjižica | savings' book | štedionica | savings account |
| uložiti (pf.) | to invest, pay in | | |

(b) Supply the correct case of the nouns in brackets and write out the numerals in word form.

- 1 U ovom hotelu ima 25 ____ (soba).
- 2 Marko ima 3 ____ (brat).
- 3 Molim vas, dajte mi 3 ____ (boca bijelog vina).
- 4 Na putu posjećuju 2 ____ (selo).
- 5 On ima preko tisuću ____ . (knjiga).
- 6 Ostajemo 7 ____ (dan).
- 7 Kupuje 4 ____ (haljina).
- 8 Kupite 22 ____ (karta) za kazalište.
- 9 Večera u restoranu stoji 742 ____ (kuna).
- 10 Na putu sam 15 ____ (dan).

(c) † Supply the correct form for the adjectives in brackets:

- 1 Vidim na ulici 3 ____ (lijepa) djevojke.

- 2 2 _____ (visok) čovjeka hodaju po parku.
 3 Molim vas, 2 _____ (svijetlo) pivo.
 4 5 _____ (debeo) studenata ide u moju školu.
 5 3 _____ (velika) kuće se grade.

Dialogue 2

Telefonski razgovor

A tourist in Zagreb is looking for a telephone box to make an urgent call. Why does he ask the passer-by whether he can borrow his mobile? How can he find the number he needs in Dubrovnik? Does he get through?

A: Molim vas, gdje se nalazi najbliža telefonska govornica?

B: Iza prvog ugla desno.

A: Ta je govornica u kvaru. Mogu li se poslužiti vašim mobitelom?

B: Ako je hitno, izvolite.

A: Hvala lijepo. Kažite mi poslije cijenu razgovora. Gdje mogu naći telefonski imenik za Dubrovnik?

B: Ako znate ime i adresu pretplatnika, možete nazvati informacije.

A: Dobar dan, trebam Dubrovnik. Mogu li nazvati direktno?

C: Možete. Birajte najprije pozivni broj.

A: Želim govoriti na račun druge stranke.

C: Dajte mi onda svoje ime. Broj je zauzet. Želite li pokušati kasnije?

A: Možda je krivi broj?

C: Mogu nazvati ponovno. Nitko se ne javlja.

A: Hvala, nema veze.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|------------------|
| najbliži | nearest | telefonska govornica | phone box |
| iza (+ gen.) | behind | | |
| ugao (gen. ugla) | corner | desno | on the right |
| u kvaru | out of order | poslužiti se | to use |
| mobitel | mobile phone | hitno | urgent |
| poslije | afterwards | cijena | price |
| razgovor | conversation | telefonski imenik | telephone book |
| pretplatnik | subscriber | | |
| nazvati | to call | birati | to choose |
| pozivni broj | area code | na račun druge stranke | reversed charges |
| dajte | give (me) | | |

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------|
| ime | name | zauzet | busy, engaged |
| pokušati | to try | kasnije | later |
| krivi | wrong | ponovno | again |
| javljati se | to call/respond | nema veze | never mind |



Telefonska kartica

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (7)

Jasna takes Mark to her parents' flat for dinner. Where do they live? Where does Mark sit? What does Jasna's father bring him to drink? Why does Mark feel he has to be careful?

Jasna vodi Marka u stari dio grada u stan u prizemlju jedne velike, stare kuće. U stan se ulazi kroz lijep vrt, pun cvijeća. Jasna upozna je Marka sa svojim roditeljima i nudi mu sjesti pokraj prozora. Jasnin otac pita što Mark želi piti i donosi domaću lozu. Mark se sjeća piva u hotelu i viskija u avionu i pije polako. Zna da treba cijelu čašu popiti odmah, ali osjeća da mora paziti, ne smije se napiti, i zato moli i čašu vode.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------------|----------|---------------|---------|
| cijeli | whole | dio | part |
| donositi (imp.) | to bring | Jasnin | Jasna's |

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------|
| loza | grape brandy | moliti (imp.) service) | to ask for (favour, |
| mu (dat. of on) | to him | | |
| napiti se (pf.) | to get drunk | nuditi | to offer |
| paziti (imp.) | to take care | prizemlje | ground floor |
| roditelj | parent | sjećati se (imp.) (+ gen.) | to remember |
| sjesti (pf. sjednem) | to sit down | | |
| | | smjeti (imp. smijem) | to dare |
| ulazi se | one enters | | |
| voda | water | voditi (imp.) | to lead, take |
| vrt | garden | zato | therefore |

Exercise 3

(a) Pitanja. Answer these questions on Dialogue 1:

- 1 Gdje se nalazi glavna pošta?
- 2 Koliko razglednica želi Nora poslati?
- 3 Koliko maraka treba za Englesku?
- 4 Zašto Nora šalje jedno pismo preporučeno?
- 5 Gdje se nalazi poštanski sandučić?

(b)+ Translate into Croatian:

Two travellers come out of a hotel. They want to send some letters and make a telephone call¹ to friends in Dubrovnik. ‘Excuse me,’ they say to a young woman in the street, ‘do you know where there is a post office?’

‘The main post office is next to the station. It is not far from here. Turn right and go straight on.’

‘Thank you very much for your help.’

‘You’re welcome. Goodbye!’

1 **javiti se telefonom** + dat.

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (7)

What does Mate look like? What do they all order? What does Mate say about life in Hercegovina? What is he planning to do? Why do the girls look a bit disappointed?

Navečer se mladi ljudi n^aglaze u Gradskoj kavani. Sjede na terasi pokraj luke i gledaju bro^dove. Ivin bratić Mate je visok mladić s crnom kosom i pl^avim o^čima, lijep, ve^seo i du^hovit. O^stavlja izvanredan dojam na sve dje^vojke. Svi n^aru^čuju kavu i kolače.

- Hajde, pričaj kakav ti je život u Hercegovini – predlaže Ivo.
- Ne mogu zamisliti da vas može zaista zanimati: život je tamo prilično dosadan. Ima jako mnogo polja, i ništa se ne dogđa.
- Kakvi su ti sada planovi? – pita Mara.
- Pa, ja sam diplomirani inženjer, znaš. Moram sada poći nekamo u inozemstvo na specijalizaciju.

Sve djevojke nekako tužno i razočarano gledaju u njega kad to čuju.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|--|---------------------------|
| brod | ship | diplomirani | graduate |
| dogđati se | to happen | dojam | impression |
| dosadan* | boring | duhovit | witty |
| čuti (imp. čujem) | to hear | inozemstvo | abroad |
| | | izvanredan | exceptional |
| kolač | cake | kosa | hair |
| luka | harbour | naručivati (imp. naručujem) | to order |
| navečer | in the evening | | |
| nekako | in a way, somehow | nekamo | somewhere (with movement) |
| ostavljati (imp.) | to leave | polje | field |
| pričati (imp.) | tell | prilično | fairly |
| razočarano | disappointed | veseo | cheerful |
| visok | tall | zanimati (imp.) | to interest |
| život | life | | |

8

U restoranu

In the restaurant

In this unit we will look at:

- ordering meals
- adjectives: genitive case
- adjectives: accusative case
- food and drink

Dialogue 1

Cameronovi idu na večeru

The Camerons are going out to dinner

Slavko and Marija take Alan and Nora out for a meal in the Old Town. Are the Camerons hungry? What does Slavko recommend? Does Nora want to drink white wine? What does Marija suggest they have for desert? How will they end the meal?

MARIJA: Nama se vrlo sviđa ovaj mali restoran.

SLAVKO: Evo vam jelovnika. Jeste li gladni?

ALAN: Ja jesam!

NORA: I ja! Što nam preporučujete?

MARIJA: Kao predjelo predlažem ili riblju juhu, koja je izvrsna, ili pršut.

ALAN: Ja želim juhu. Imaju li neke nacionalne specijalitete?

SLAVKO: Kako da ne, ako ste gladni možemo uzeti miješano meso na žaru i razne salate.

NORA: Može. Ja volim zelenu salatu.

SLAVKO: Što više volite, crno ili bijelo vino?

NORA: Uz meso možda crno, ali kako vi želite, meni je svejedno: ja volim i jedno i drugo.

MARIJA: Koliko se sjećam ovdje ima izvrsnih dalmatinskih vina. Zamoli da donesu vinsku kartu, Slavko. Želite li nešto slatko na kraju? Toplo vam preporučujem palačinke s orasima.

SLAVKO: Slažem se, a zatim kavu uz neki ukusan liker.

Vocabulary

| | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| bijeli | white |
| boca | bottle |
| donijeti (pf. donesem) | to bring |
| i jedno i drugo | both |
| izvrstan (f. izvrсна) | excellent |
| jelovnik | menu |
| kako da ne | of course |
| kava | coffee |
| koji (f. koja) | which |
| koliko | how much, how many; as far as |
| kraj | end |
| liker | liqueur |
| meni (dat. of ja) | to me |
| meso | meat |
| miješan | mixed |
| možda | perhaps |
| nama | to us |
| naručiti (pf.) | to order |
| na žaru | grilled |
| orah (pl. orasi) | walnut |
| palačinka | pancake |
| predjelo | hors d'oeuvre |
| preporučivati (imp. preporučujem) | to recommend |
| pršut | smoked ham, prosciutto |
| salata | salad |
| sladak, slatka | sweet |
| sviđa nam se | we like |
| ukusan, -sna | tasty |
| uzeti (pf. uzmem) | to take |

| RUBELJ GRILL | |
|------------------------------|---|
| MALI SPREDNJI VELIKI | ČEVAPI 14.00 19.50 25.00 |
| MALI SPREDNJI VELIKI | ŠIŠ-ČEVAPI 13.00 23.00 33.00 |
| MALA SPREDNJA VELIKA | DOMAĆE KOBASICE 15.00 27.50 39.00 |
| MALI SPREDNJI VELIKI | RAŽ. SVINJSKI 14.00 19.50 25.00 |
| HAMBURGER 14.00 | |
| PLJESKAVICA 33.00 | |
| PLJESKAVICA S KAJMAKOM 38.00 | |
| PLJESKAVICA SA SIROM 38.00 | |
| MJEŠANO MESO 39.00 | |
| BIFSTEK 51.00 | |
| RAMSTEK 49.00 | |
| LUNGIĆ 51.00 | |
| SALATA - SEZONSKA 8.00 | |
| AJVAR 3.00 | |
| KAJMAK 5.00 | |
| POMMES FRITES 8.00 | |
| ŠAMPINJONI 16.00 | |
| PEČENA PAPRIKA 4.00 | |
| LEPINJA 3.00 | |
| COLA/FANTA Imerika 12.00 | |
| PIVO - Imerika 12.00 | |
| VINO - butelja 80.00 | |
| VINO - 1L 50.00 | |
| VINO - 0.20 L 12.00 | |
| MINERALNA VODA 0.50 L 10.00 | |
| 2911-411 | |

razni various

riblji fish (adj.; **riba** a fish)

svejedno all the same

topao, topla warm

uz (+ acc.) together with, beside

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------|-----------------------|------------|
| | | vino | wine |
| vinska karta | wine list | zamoliti (pf.) | to request |
| zelen | green | | |

Language points 1

Adjectives: genitive case

Masculine and neuter

There are two forms, definite and indefinite, but the definite form is far more common and therefore the one you should use most. The ending for this is **-og(a)**, or, if the final consonant of the stem is soft, **-eg(a)**:

To je sin starog profesora.

That is the old professor's son.

Ovo je slika ljepšeg krajolika.

This is the picture of a more beautiful landscape.

Ne volim kraj toga novog filma.

I don't like the end of that new film.

The optional **-a** is added for stylistic purposes in certain circumstances, for example when the adjective occurs at the end of a sentence:

Ne poznajem starijeg brata, samo mladega.

I don't know the older brother, only the younger one.

For a note on the use of the longer forms in the genitive, dative and locative cases see 'Grammar summary', 2, p. 297.

The indefinite ending, for your information, is **-a**:

Vidim visoka mladića.

I see a tall young man.

Feminine

You will be glad to know that the ending is the same as the genitive of nouns ending in **-a**, namely **-e**:

Restoran je blizu velike pošte.

The restaurant is near the big post office.

To je muž mlade glumice.

That is the husband of the young actress.

Prozori ove lijepe prostrane sobe gledaju na park.

The windows of this nice spacious room look onto the park.

Plural. The genitive plural of all genders is **-ih**:

Terase ovakvih starih restorana su ugodne.

The terraces of these old restaurants are pleasant.

Svidaju mi se frizure ovih mladih djevojaka.

I like these young girls' hairdos.

Miris vaših narodnih jela je jako privlačan.

The smell of your national dishes is most enticing.

Exercise 1[†]

Put the adjective and noun into the genitive case:

- 1 Tko je direktor (novi hotel)?
- 2 Gdje je ključ (naša soba)?
- 3 Je li to kuća (tvoji roditelji)?
- 4 Preporučujem vam bocu (domaće vino).
- 5 Imaš li ključeve (crveni auto)? (**crven** red)
- 6 Evo adrese (naši prijatelji).
- 7 Je li ovo mjesto (stara gospođa)?
- 8 Kako je ime (ukusan* liker)?
- 9 Gdje su vrata (spavaća soba)?
- 10 Je li ovo prtljaga (ti novi putnici)?

Language points 2

The partitive genitive

This use of the genitive case of nouns shows that you are referring to a part or portion of a whole; it is often the equivalent of 'some' or 'any' in English.

Imate li kruha? Have you any bread?

Adjectives agree with the nouns, as always:

Imate li svježeg kruha?

Have you any fresh bread?

Imaju li dobrog crnog vina?

Have they any good red wine?

Imaju li narodnih specijaliteta?

Have they any national specialities?

Vocabulary building: meals

obrok 'meal'; **doručak** 'breakfast'; **ručak** 'lunch'; **večera** 'dinner'; **užina** 'snack', usually mid-morning.

Exercise 2

(a) Make questions, as in the example, using **ima** and the partitive genitive:

*Example: kruh: **Ima li kruha?** Is there any bread?*

kava šećer 'sugar' **čaj** 'tea'

mlijeko 'milk' **riba** 'fish' **sir** 'cheese'

(b)† Supply the correct forms of the adjectives:

1 Ima li _____ (svjež) kruha?

2 Ima li _____ (bijeli) šećera?

3 Ima li _____ (domaći) vina?

4 Ima li _____ (svjež) ribe?

5 Ima li _____ (crn) kava?

Dialogue 2A

You may find it useful to memorize some of these sentences.

A tourist is eating alone in a Dubrovnik restaurant

GOST: Molim jelovnik.

KONOBAR: Izvolite.

GOST: Imate li nekih narodnih specijaliteta?

KONOBAR: Svakako, ima raznih ukusnih narodnih jela.

GOST: Možete li preporučiti neko domaće jelo?

KONOBAR: Kao predjelo vam preporučujem pohane gljive ili punjene paprike.

GOST: Imate li juhe?

KONOBAR: Imamo pileću juhu, govedu juhu, juhu od povrća i jako dobru riblju juhu.

Language points 3

Adjectives: accusative case

Masculine

The accusative ending of masculine adjectives varies, as it does with nouns, according to whether the noun referred to is inanimate or animate.

Inanimate. The accusative ending is the same as the nominative.

Animate. The accusative ending is the same as the genitive:

Vidim stari automobil. I see the old car.

Vidim starog putnika. I see the old passenger.

Neuter

As with nouns, the accusative ending of all neuter adjectives is the same as the nominative.

Vidim malo selo. I see the small village.

Feminine

The accusative ending of feminine adjectives is **-u**, the same as for feminine nouns.

Vidim mladu djevojku. I see the young girl.

Plural. In all genders, the accusative plural ending is the same as that of the nouns; there is no distinction between animate and inanimate nouns.

Vidim nove automobile.

I see the new cars.

Vidim visoke mladiće.

I see the tall young men.

Vidiš li ta mala sela?

Do you see those small villages?

Volite li nove male kuće?

Do you like the new small houses?

Exercise 3[†]

(a) Translate the following sentences into Croatian:

- 1 You have a very beautiful house.
- 2 The balcony is beside the living room.¹
- 3 The corridor leads into the bedroom.
- 4 We have a very small entrance hall.
- 5 I love these beautiful curtains.²
- 6 What do you see through the big windows?
- 7 Where is the door of the new³ flat?
- 8 Be careful,⁴ they have a dangerous⁵ dog!
- 9 These houses have beautiful gardens.⁶
- 10 Do you see the big balconies of the new flats?

1 use **pokraj** + gen.; 2 **zastor** 'curtain'; 3 **nov** 'new'; 4 **pazite** 'be careful'; 5 **opasan*** 'dangerous'; 6 **vrt** 'garden'

(b) Supply the correct forms of the adjectives:

- 1 Molim vas, _____ (goveda) juhu i _____ (zelena) salatu.
- 2 Vidim _____ (lijepa) djevojku.
- 3 Ovaj restoran ima _____ (dobar) hranu.
- 4 Ove vile imaju _____ (prekrasan*) vrtove.
- 5 Molim vas, _____ (bijelo) vino.

Dialogue 2B

GOST: Želim neko meso. Što imate na jelovniku?

KONOBAR: Ima teletine – teleće pečenje ili teleći odrezak; svinjetine – svinjsko pečenje ili odrezak; govedine – goveđi odrezak ili biftek; ima i piletine – pohane piletine; pa patke i purice s mlincima.

GOST: Dajte mi kajganu ili možda omlet.

KONOBAR: Imamo omlet sa šunkom, sirom ili gljivama.

GOST: A što imate od ribe?

KONOBAR: Imamo ciple (*acc. pl.*) skuše (*acc. pl.*) bakalar (*acc. sing.*), zubaca (*gen. sing.*) i srdele (*acc. pl.*). Imamo i mušule (*acc. pl.*), jastoga (*gen. sing.*), lignje (*acc. pl.*) i škampe (*acc. pl.*).

GOST: Ima li svježeg povrća?

KONOBAR: Dakako. Imamo krumpira, kupusa, graška, mahuna i graha. Ima i kiselog zelja (*all gen. sing.*).

GOST: Kakve salate imate?

KONOBAR: Imamo zelenu salatu, salatu od rajčica, od krastavaca, od cikle ili miješanu salatu.

GOST: Gdje su ulje i ocat, sol i papar?

KONOBAR: Tamo, na susjednom stolu. Izvolite.

Language point 4

Vocabulary building: food

meso:

teletina 'veal'; **teleće pečenje** 'roast veal'; **bečki šnicl** 'Wiener schnitzel'; **svinjetinja** 'pork'; **svinjsko pečenje** 'roast pork'; **odrezak** 'cutlet'; **govedina** 'beef'; **govedi odrezak** 'beef cutlet'; **biftek** 'steak'; **patka** 'duck'; **purica** 'turkey' (**rezanci** 'noodles'); **ćevap** 'kebab' (**ćevapčići** 'meat balls'); **pljeskavica** 'hamburger'

jaje 'egg':

kajgana 'scrambled egg'; **omlet** (**šunka** 'ham'; **gljiva** 'mushroom').

riba:

(**rječna**) **šaran** 'carp'; **pastrva** 'trout'; **smud** 'perch'; (**morska**) **skuša** 'mackerel'; **zubatac** 'dentex'; **murina** 'Moray eel'; **lignje** 'squid'; **škampi** 'scampi'

povrće 'vegetables':

krumpir 'potatoes'; **mrkva** 'carrot'; **kupus** 'cabbage'; **grašak** 'peas'; **mahune** 'beans'

salata:

zelena 'green'; **paradajz** or **rajčica** 'tomato'; **krastavac** 'cucumber'; **cikla** 'beetroot'

začin:

ulje 'oil'; **ocat** 'vinegar'; **sol** (fem., gen. **sol**) 'salt'; **papar** 'pepper'



Večera je na stolu

Exercise 4

Complete the dialogue:

KONOBAR: Dobar dan. Izvolite?

GOST: _____

KONOBAR: Evo vam jelovnika. Želite li neki aperitiv?

GOST: _____

KONOBAR: Imamo riblju juhu i goveđu juhu.

GOST: _____

KONOBAR: Dobro. A kao glavno jelo?

GOST: _____

KONOBAR: Imamo svinjsko pečenje i punjene paprike.

GOST: _____

KONOBAR: Želite li neku salatu?

GOST: _____

KONOBAR: Želite li nešto piti?

GOST: _____

KONOBAR: A na kraju nešto slatko?

GOST: _____

KONOBAR: Imamo razne kolače i voćnu salatu.

GOST: _____

KONOBAR: Želite li tursku ili espresso kavu?

GOST: _____

Dialogue 2C

GOST: Imate li nešto slatko?

KONOBAR: Imamo savijaču od jabuka ili trešanja. Imamo i palačinke s džemom, čokoladom ili orasima.

GOST: Ima li sira?

KONOBAR: Ima ličkog i paškog sira.

GOST: Što imate od voća?

KONOBAR: Imamo jabuke, kruške, šljive, marelice, breskve, smokve i grožđe.

GOST: Donesite nam kavu, molim. Jednu bijelu i jednu tursku.

KONOBAR: Želite li slađu kavu?

GOST: Ne, gorču. Platiti, molim.

KONOBAR: Izvolite račun.

Exercise 5

A friend has just arrived in Korčula, where you have already been for a week. You take your friend to dinner in a restaurant. Compose a dialogue discussing the menu.

Reading passage



Priča našeg vremena (8)

Mark is going with Jasna to her office. After breakfast, she calls for him at the hotel. Does Mark wake up late? What does he have to do before going to Jasna's office? What is Jasna's car like? What are the streets like? Where is Jasna's office?

Sljedećeg dana, Mark se rano budi. Treba se spremiti za posjet Jasninom uredu. Mora izglāčati čistu bijelu košulju i izabrati zgodnu kravatu. Silazi u restoran i naručuje bijelu kavu. Uskoro dolazi Jasna po njega. Vozi stari mali auto, jako praktičan za grad. Ceste su prometne: ponedjeljak je i svi se žure na posao. Ured se nalazi u novom dijelu grada, s druge strane rijeke Save preko velikog mosta.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| cesta | street | čist | clean |
| izabrati (pf. izaberem) | to choose | izglāčati (pf.) | to iron (imp. glāčati) |
| košulja | shirt | kravata | tie |
| ponedjeljak | Monday | posjet | visit |
| prometan* | congested (promet traffic) | rano | early |
| s druge strane | on the other side | rijeka | river (most bridge) |
| | | sljedeći | next, following ¹ |

spremiti se (pf.)

to get ready

ured

office

žuriti se (imp.) to hurry

1 The expression **sljedećeg dana** is in the genitive case, denoting a time when an action takes place.

Exercise 6

Look at the menu and write a dialogue in **pivnica Medvedgrad** in Zagreb. You may need some of the following words:

| | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| ajvar | pepper chutney | buncek | pork leg |
| čvarkuš | crackling | grah | bean stew |
| hren | horseradish | kiflice | rolls |
| kiseljo zelje | sauerkraut | kobasica | sausage |
| kulen | Croatian chirizo | maslac | butter |
| masline | olives | perec | pretzels |
| pivnica | Croatian pub | restani krumpir | potato with herbs |
| senf | mustard | zapečeni grah | baked beans |

JELOVNIKJELOVNIK

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| Salata-bar Salata-mala 10,00 Kn Salata-velika 16,00 Kn | Kruh i peciva Kruh 1,00 Kn Perec 2,50 Kn Čvarkuš 4,00 Kn Slana kiflica sa sirom 3,00 Kn | Slastice Kuhani zagorski štrukli 16,00 Kn Zapečeni zagorski štrukli 16,00 Kn |
| Hladna jela Hladna zakuska (domaća šunka, kulen, špek, sir) 36,00 Kn | Juhe Zagorska krumpir juha 12,00 Kn | Topla jela (gableci) Grah sa suhim rebrima 27,00 Kn Grah s kobasicom 24,00 Kn |
| Gotova jela Teleće pečenje 36,00 Kn Svježi buncek s ražnja 80,00 Kn/kg Kuhani sušeni buncek 85,00 Kn/kg | Jela po narudžbi Kobasica 'Kaptol' 22,00 Kn Plata miješanog mesa za dvije osobe (kotlet, kobasica mini Kaptol, čevapčići, pileći file, ražnjići) 85,00 Kn Svinjski medaljoni u umaku od šampinjona 45,00 Kn Punjeni odrezak 'Dora' 44,00 Kn Lignje na žaru s prilogom 29,00 Kn | Prilozi Pivničke krumpir-police 12,00 Kn Restani krumpir 10,00 Kn Zapečeni grah 12,00 Kn Kiselo zelje 12,00 Kn Maslac 5,00 Kn Senf 5,00 Kn Ajvar 5,00 Kn Hren 7,00 Kn Masline 10,00 Kn |

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| Žestoka pića Loza 7,00 Kn Šljivovica 7,00 Kn Travarica 7,00 Kn | Buteljirana vina Bijela vina ‘Graševina’ Kutjevo 0,75 l...110,00 Kn ‘Zeleni Silvanac’ Orahovica 0,75 l...110,00 Kn Bijelo stolno vino 0,20 l...15,00 Kn | Crna vina ‘Zlatan Plavac’ Plenković / Hvar 0,75 l...110,00 Kn Crno stolno vino 0,20 l...15,00 kn Točeno pivo |
|--|---|--|

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (8)

The young people are out for an evening stroll. What is the weather like? What is Mara thinking? Where did Mate grow up? Where did he go to university? Does he like Dubrovnik?

Mladi ljudi se polako šetaju Stradunom. Ljetna večer je izvanredno lijepa, mirna i topla. Mjesec je gotovo pun.

- Kako je lijepo ovdje na mjesecini – kaže Maja, jedna od djevojaka u društvu. Ona hoda sasvim blizu Mate, i misli kako su mu ramena jaka.
- Da, lijepo je, naročito za mjesecare! – Mate ide dalje i ne gleda je.
- Gdje ti je kuća, Mate? – pita Mara.
- U malom selu, blizu Međugorja.
- O, kako je tamo lijepo, među brdima! – uzdahne Maja.
- Kako ti se sviđa Mostar?
- Jako. Mali grad, ali nije loše mjesto za studij.
- Da, svi kažu da je Mostar izvanredno zanimljiv i lijep grad, kaže Mara.
- A kako ti se, pak, sviđa najljepši grad Hrvatske? – pita Ivo.
- Do sada mi se sve jako sviđa, ali moram reći da ga gledam preko ovih lijepih ženskih glava, a to čini krajolik još ljepšim.

Svaka se djevojka za sebe potajno nasmije, jer svaka misli da se te riječi odnose na nju.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------|
| brdo | hill | činiti | to make |
| glava | head | gotovo | almost |
| jak | strong | krajolik | landscape |
| ljetni (adj.) | summer | loš | bad |
| među (+ instr.) | among | miran | calm |
| mjesec | moon | mjesecar | sleepwalker |
| mjesecina | moonlight | mjesto | place |

| | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|--|--------------|
| nasmijati se (pf.) | to smile | odnositi se (na + acc.) | to refer to |
| pak | however | | |
| potajno | secretly | preko (+ gen.) | over, across |
| puno | a lot | rame (gen. ramena , n. pl. ramena) | shoulder |
| sasvim | quite, right | | |
| Stradun | the main street in Dubrovnik | | |
| studij | studies | uzdahnuti (uzdahnem , pf.) | to sigh |
| večer (f.) | evening | | |
| ženski | female, women's | | |

9

Na ulici

In the street

In this unit we will look at:

- street directions
- adjectives: dative and instrumental
- prepositions
- the use of reflexive verbs

Dialogue 1

Cameronovi idu u grad

Alan and Nora are walking in Zagreb with their friends. What does Marija suggest they do? How does one get to the Upper Town? What part of Zagreb is the station in? How does one get to the Camerons' hotel? Does Zagreb seem large to Nora?

MARIJA: Što sad želite vidjeti? Odavde se možemo lako popeti na Gornji grad, da pogledamo Meštrovićev¹ atelje.

ALAN: Kako se ide gore?

SLAVKO: Ide se ili uspinjačom ili stepenicama. Nadam se da nisu prestreme za Noru.

ALAN: Na kojoj se strani nalazi kolodvor? Više ne znam gdje je jug, a gdje je sjever.

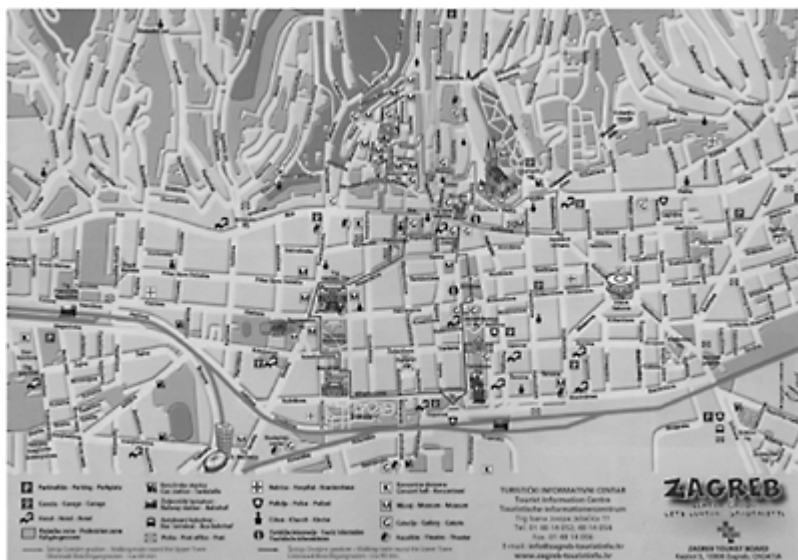
SLAVKO: Sada idemo prema zapadu. Ako skrenemo prema centru grada, kolodvor je na jugoistoku.

NORA: Katedrala je sad na lijevoj strani, a kazalište je negdje desno, zar ne?

MARIJA: Tako je. Vidite li Trg bana Jelačića?

ALAN: Vidim. Gdje se nalazi naš hotel?

SLAVKO: Ako stojiš na Jelačićevom trgu i gledaš prema Gradskoj kavani, ideš prvom ulicom s trga desno.



Centar Zagreba

NORA: A da stigneš u kazalište iz našeg hotela ideš prvom ulicom lijevo, je li?

SLAVKO: Točno, ali je prilično daleko.

NORA: Meni se čini da je baš blizu. Prema Londonu Zagreb je malen i ugodan za pješake.

I Ivan Meštrović was a famous Croatian sculptor (1883–1962)

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------|---|
| atelj e (m.) | studio | činiti se (imp.) | to seem (used impersonally: čini mi se 'it seems to me') |
| dalek | far, distant | gore | up |
| desno | right | jugoistok | south-east |
| ga (acc./gen. of on) | it | kazalište | theatre |
| jug | south | nađati se (imp.) | to hope |
| kavana | café | negdje | somewhere |
| malen | small | | |
| nalaziti se (imp.) | to be found | | |

| | | | |
|--|---|---|------------------------|
| odavde | from here | pješak | pedestrian |
| po (+ loc.) | through, along | popeti se (pf. popnem se) | to climb |
| prema (+ loc.) | towards (prema Londonu 'compared to London') | prestrm (strm 'steep') | too steep |
| | | prilično | fairly |
| | | s, sa (+ gen.) | from (+ instr. 'with') |
| sjever | north | | |
| skrenuti (pf. skrenem) | to turn | stajati (imp. stojim) | to stand |
| trg | square | ulica | street |
| uspinjača | cable car | za (+ acc.) | for |
| zanimljiv | interesting | zapad | west |

Language points 1

The dative/locative case of adjectives

Masculine

There is an indefinite form of the adjective, which is the same as that of the noun:

On sjedi u staru autu.

He's sitting in an old car.

As with the genitive, however, you will need only to be able to recognize this.

The definite form ends in **-om**:

Govorim ljubaznom konobaru.

I am speaking to *the kind* waiter.

Sobe u ovom starom hotelu su udobne.

The rooms in *this old* hotel are comfortable.

Neuter

The ending is the same as that of the masculine:

U ovom malom selu ima lijepa crkva.

There is a nice church in *this little* village.

Dajem bombone dobrom djetetu.

I am giving sweets to *the good* child.

Feminine

The ending is **-oj**:

Mladić daje cvijeće *ljutitoj* djevojci.

The young man is giving flowers to *the angry* girl.

U *ovoj maloj* crkvi ima *divnih* ikona.

There are *some wonderful* icons in this little church.

Note: This ending will be familiar to you from those names of countries which are in fact adjectives: **Engleska – u Engleskoj**; **Grčka – u Grčkoj**. Remember that all names of countries ending in **-ska, -ška** or **-čka** are *adjectives*.

Exercise 1

Make sentences according to the example, using the dative of the adjectives and nouns:

Example: stari profesor : Želim pokazati grad starom profesoru.

ova lijepa djevojka (*note: k+i: ci*)

mladi putnik iz vlaka

vaša djeca stari prijatelj iz Italije

ova grupa turista

Language points 2*The dative/locative plural of adjectives*

This is very simple, since the ending is the same for all genders: **-im(a)**. See 'Grammar summary', 2, p. 297 for a note on usage of the longer form.

Dajemo knjige dobrim studentima.

We give books to good students.

Nema mjesta u dubrovačkim hotelima.

There's no room in the Dubrovnik hotels.

U primorskim selima možeš kupiti dobrog vina.

You can buy good wine in the coastal villages.

Ona tiho čita umornim djevojkama.

She is reading quietly to the tired girls.

Volim sjediti po malim zagrebačkim kavanama.

I like sitting in small Zagreb cafés.

You will probably be relieved to know that this ending is also that of the instrumental plural of adjectives, again of all genders.

Exercise 2

Make sentences according to the example, using the dative of the adjectives and nouns:

Example: oni tvoji prijatelji: Moramo napisati pisma onim tvojim prijateljima

to those friends of yours

vaši stari roditelji

svi znanci u Hrvatskoj

mlade sestre vaše majke

dobri zagrebački prijatelji

Reading passage 1**Šetamo i upoznajemo Zagreb**

Read the following text. Identify all the nouns and adjectives and their cases. Be sure that you understand the use of each case before proceeding. Answer the questions that follow the text. (There is a translation of this passage in the 'Key to exercises' at the end of this book, p. 315.)

Naša šetnja počinje na Trgu bana Jelačića u Donjem gradu. Ovaj glavni zagrebački trg postoji od XVII. stoljeća. Najstarija je kuća na današnjem Trgu bana Jelačića broj 15,¹ a najmlađa – neboder na početku Ilice. Ilica je jedna od najdužih, možda i najstarijih, a svakako najpopularnijih zagrebačkih ulica. Na trgu je spomenik bana Josipa Jelačića na konju, a desno od spomenika je zdenac 'Manduševac'. Ime Zagreba je vezano uz taj zdenac. Jednom jedan konjanik naredi djevojci Manduši pokraj zdenca, 'Mandušo, zagrabi!', i tako se zdenac od tada zove Manduševac, a grad Zagreb. Ravno od Manduševca Bakačevom ulicom idemo prema katedrali. Prolazimo pokraj Turističkog informativnog centra. Sada smo na Kaptolu nasuprot velikoj neogotičkoj katedrali. Kaptol je dio Gornjeg grada. Na ovom mjestu počinje povijest Zagreba. Zagreb je smješten na dva brežuljka koji se zovu Kaptol i Gradec. Od Kaptola idemo prema najpoznatijoj zagrebačkoj tržnici 'Dolac'. Na ovom mjestu Zagrepčani kupuju svježe voće i povrće, a poslije kupovanja odlaze u Tkalčićevu ulicu na kavu, jer tamo ima mnogo kavana i restorana. Ponovno smo na Trgu bana Jelačića odakle idemo prema Zrinskom trgu, poznatijem kao Zrinjevac. To je trg velikih platana, penzionerskih klupa, turističkih agencija, spomenika, umjetničkih galerija. Na kraju trga, preko puta glavnog kolodvora, nalazi se još jedan spomenik – kralj Tomislav na konju. Spomenik na Tomislavovom trgu je čest motiv razglednica Zagreba.

1 Note the position of the enclitic. Translate: 'The first house...is no. 15'.

Vocabulary

počinjati (imp. počinjem)

to start

donji

lower

postojati (imp. postojim)

to exist

najstarija

the oldest

današnji

present day

broj

number

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|--|-----------------------------|
| najmlada | the youngest | neboder | skyscraper |
| početak | beginning | najduži | longest |
| zdenac | well | konjanik | horseman |
| narediti (pf. naredim) | to order | biti vezan | to be connected |
| | | zagrabit (pf. zagrabim) | to take a handful, ladleful |
| ravno | straight ahead | | |
| povijest | history | brežuljak | hill |
| poznatiji | better-known | kao | as |
| platana | plane tree | klupa | bench |
| spomenik | statue | umjetnički | art (adj.) |
| preko puta (+ gen.) | opposite | najveći | the biggest |
| | | kralj | king |
| konj | horse | Tomislavov | Tomislav's |
| čest | frequent | motiv | theme |
| znak | sign, mark | | |

Questions on Reading passage 1

- 1 Gdje počinje naša šetnja?
- 2 Koja je najstarija kuća na Trgu bana Jelačića?
- 3 Kakva je ulica Ilica?
- 4 Zašto se Zagreb zove tako?
- 5 Kakva je katedrala?
- 6 Što je Dolac?
- 7 Zašto ljudi idu u Tkalčićevu ulicu?
- 8 Što se nalazi na Zrinjevcu?
- 9 Gdje se nalazi spomenik kralja Tomislava?
- 10 Gdje se može vidjeti ovaj spomenik?

Language points 3

The instrumental case of adjectives

Masculine and neuter singular, -im

Idem na more s dobrim prijateljem.

I'm going to the sea with *a good* friend. (male)

Avion leti nad *mirnim* morem.

The plane is flying over a *calm* sea.

Feminine singular, -om

Idem na more s *dobrom* prijateljicom.

I'm going to the sea with a *good* friend. (female)

Idem s *cijelom* obitelji.

I'm going with *the whole* family.

Plural, all genders, -im

Idem na more sa *starim* prijateljima.

I'm going to the sea with (some) *old* friends.

Note: See 'Grammar summary', 2, pp. 296–7 for a complete table of the adjective declensions.

Prepositions followed by the locative case

prema 'towards, according to'

Vlak ide prema granici.

The train is going towards the border.

Prema profesorovom objašnjenju, tako je.

That's right, according to the teacher's explanation.

nasuprot 'opposite'

Sada smo nasuprot katedrali.

We're opposite the cathedral now.

pri 'by, near'

Nemam knjigu pri ruci.

I haven't got the book to hand.

o 'about'

Znaš li nešto o novom susjedu?

Do you know anything about the new neighbour?

u¹ 'in'

Ima mnogo lijepih zgrada u Zagrebu.

There are many fine buildings in Zagreb.

na¹ 'on'

Soba je na drugom katu.

The room is on the second floor.

1 With these prepositions, as with many others, a clear distinction must be made between their use to express static *location*, when the locative is used, and the expression of *motion*, when the accusative is used:

Stanujem u Zagrebu.

but

Putujem u Zagreb.

Kava je na stolu.

Stavljam kavu na stol.

Prepositions followed by the instrumental case

među 'among'

Crkva se vidi među kućama.

The church can be seen among the houses.

nad 'above'

Zrakoplov leti nad gradom.

The plane is flying above the town.

pod 'below'

Grad se vidi pod zrakoplovom.

The town can be seen below the plane.

za 'behind'

Kuća se nalazi za crkvom.

The house is behind the church.

pred 'in front of'

Čekam prijatelja pred kućom.

I'm waiting for a friend in front of the house.

Note: All of these prepositions can also take accusative if they are used to convey motion towards a position:

Stavljam kofer pod krevet.

I'm placing the suitcase under the bed.

za + acc. 'for'

Ovo je poklon za Dubravku.

This is a gift for Dubravka.

Also, in practice, speakers are far more likely to use alternative prepositions, followed by the genitive case: **između**, **iznad**, **ispod**, **iza**, **ispred**. These are the forms you should learn and use yourself.

Exercise 3[†]

(a) Complete the sentences with the appropriate preposition from this list:

| | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|
| u | na | iz | od | prema |
| o | kroz | među | s | ispod |

- 1 Hotel nije daleko ____ glavne pošte.
- 2 U tramvaju sjedim svaki dan ____ istim starim gospodinom.
- 3 Ima izvrstan restoran ____ tom lijepom hotelu.
- 4 Vidimo svoje stare prijatelje ____ staklena vrata.
- 5 Mislim da se vaša prtljaga nalazi ____ svim tim torbama.
- 6 Prijatelji pričaju ____ prekrasnom boravku na moru.
- 7 Kad izlazite ____ kavane, dućan je na lijevoj strani.
- 8 Tvoja putovnica se nalazi ____ stolu kod prozora.
- 9 Sada hodamo ____ katedrali, preko Trga bana Jelačića.
- 10 Ima nekoliko dućana ____ trga pred hotelom Esplanade.

(b) Translate the complete sentences into English.

(c) Supply the correct forms of the adjectives in brackets:

- 1 Kad smo na _____ (Gornji) gradu, imamo pogled na _____ (Donji) grad.
- 2 Idemo prema _____ (poznata) ulici Ilici.
- 3 Pijem kavu s _____ (dobri) prijateljima.
- 4 Nalazimo se na _____ (glavni) kolodvoru.
- 5 Pokazujem grad _____ (stari) prijateljima.
- 6 Sada smo nasuprot _____ (neogotička) katedrali.
- 7 U _____ (velik) parku ima mnogo klupa.
- 8 On govori o _____ (zagrebačka) povijesti.
- 9 Volim jesti u _____ (mali) restoranima.
- 10 Idemo prema _____ (umjetničke) galerijama.

Dialogue 2

Two acquaintances meet in a Zagreb street.

A: Idete li prema Trgu bana Jelačića?

B: Idem. Idem k prijatelju.

A: Onda idem i ja. Gdje je mala?

B: Još je u školi, a sutra ide na more.

A: Blago njoj! Zar ne možete i vi ići?

B: Za sada ne mogu. Imam posla u novoj bolnici.

A: Pa da, vi ste arhitekt, zar ne?

B: Jesam. Zna li vi nešto o toj bolnici?

A: Ništa. Samo da se nalazi iza stare katedrale.

B: Tako je. A pred bolnicom ima ugodan parkić.

A: Krasno. Evo, tu smo na Trgu.

B: Dođite uskoro k meni!

A: Hvala vam, hoću, jako rado. Do viđenja!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| mala | the little one (i.e. your daughter) | škola | school |
| | | sutra | tomorrow |
| blago njoj! | lucky girl! | posao (gen. posla) | work |
| novi | new | | |
| bolnica | hospital | stari | old |
| k (+ dat.) ¹ | to | | |

1 This could equally well be the locative, but because it means 'to', one is inclined to think of it as the dative.

Language points 4

Use of reflexive verbs to express general statements

Note these sentences:

Kako se ide na Gornji grad?

How does one get to the Upper Town?

Ide se ovim stubama.

One goes up these steps.

Many verbs can be made reflexive in this way in order to express a general statement:

Ovdje se ulazi u kazalište.

One enters the theatre here.

Exercise 4[†]

Transform the following sentences using the reflexive verbs to express a general statement:


Example: **Ljudi često idu u kazališe u Hrvatskoj.**

Često se ide u kazališe u Hrvatskoj.

- 1 Ljudi gledaju nogomet vikendom.
- 2 Mnogo ljudi ide na izlet nedjeljom.
- 3 Ljudi ne kupuju knjige jer su skupe.
- 4 Svi čitaju novine svaki dan.
- 5 Ljudi piju puno kava svaki dan.



Gornji grad sa katedralom

Reading passage 2 

Priča našeg vremena (9)

Why does Mark watch carefully where they are going? Where is the bus stop? Where does the bus go? Why is it easy to recognize the building where Jasna's office is?

Mark pažljivo prati kako se ide u Jasnin ured, jer mora znati sam naći put. Jasna objašnjava da kad izađe iz hotela mora skrenuti desno i preći glavnu cestu kod semafora. Preko puta benzinske crpke na istoj strani ceste nalazi se autobusna postaja. Tu može uhvatiti autobus koji vozi preko Save, gotovo do zgrade u kojoj se nalazi njezin ured. Zgrada se lako prepoznaje, jer ispred nje ima lijepo uređen mali vrt pun mladog drveća gdje je ugodno sjediti, jer je zrak blizu Save uvijek svježiji nego u centru grada. Onda, treba se prijaviti kod portira i poći dizalom do četvrtog kata. Ured je na kraju hodnika na lijevoj strani kad se izađe iz dizala.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| autobusna postaja | bus stop | benzinska crpka | filling station |
| | | drveće | trees (coll. pl.) |
| isti | same | objašnjavati (imp.) | explain |
| pažljivo | carefully | | |
| pratiti | to follow | preko puta (+ gen.) | opposite |
| prepoznavati (imp.) | to recognize | | |
| | | prijaviti se | to report to |
| sam | alone, by oneself | semafor | traffic lights |
| svježiji | fresher | uređen | ordered |
| zgrada | building | zrak | air |

Exercise 5

(a)† Translate the following sentences into Croatian, using the prepositions from the list on the right:

- Are you going *to* (your) brother's? (k)
- The shop is *behind* the post office. (za)
- There's a nice little park *in front of* the hotel. (pred)
- I'm taking a friend *to* the Upper Town. (na)
- There's a beautiful church *in* that village. (u)
- They are going *towards* the station by this road. (prema)
- Does he know anything *about* the Upper Town? (o)
- You can see the Cathedral *above* those roofs. (nad)
- Among* the houses there are some very old (ones). (među)
- We are looking at the red roofs of the town *beneath* the hill. (pod)

voditi to lead **crkva** church
krov (pl. **krovovi**) roof **brijeg** hill

(b) Answer the following questions on Dialogue 1:

- 1 Šetaju li se Alan i Nora sami?
- 2 Što žele vidjeti?
- 3 Sviđa li se Nori Zagreb?
- 4 Gdje se nalazi Meštrovićev atelje?
- 5 Kako se ide na Gornji grad?
- 6 Što Alan želi znati?
- 7 Gdje se nalazi kolodvor?
- 8 Vidi li se hotel Palace?
- 9 Kako se ide do hotela s Trga bana Jelačića?
- 10 Čini li se Nori da je Zagreb veliki grad?

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (9)

A few days later, Ivo and Mara are discussing Mate. What does Mara think of him? How long is he going to stay in Dubrovnik? What does Ivo do on Tuesdays? What does he think Mate will do?

- Je li, Maro – kaže Ivo nekoliko dana kasnije – Mate se fino uklapa u naše društvo od prvog dana, zar ne?
- Izvanredno, zbilja. On je izuzetan mladić u svakom pogledu.

Ivo je ozbiljno pogleda.

- Pa sad, ne treba pretjerivati. Ali, veselo je s njim.
- Koliko dugo još ostaje u Dubrovniku?
- Ne znam točno. Mislim da ostaje petnaestak dana, a tu je već skoro cijeli tjedan.
- Što radite večeras?
- Znaš da utorkom uvijek igram košarku. Imamo utakmicu večeras, Mate vjerojatno želi doći sa mnom.
- Ako nema nekih svojih planova ... Imam dojam da mu se Vesna sviđa.
- Ozbiljno misliš? Ne znam. Pa, zgodna je cura.
- Hajde, vrijeme je da pođem. Čekaju me s ručkom. Lijepo se provedi večeras. Vidimo se sutra.
- Bog, Maro!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| cura (coll.) | girl, bird | igrati (imp.) | to play |
| izuzetan | exceptional | kasnije | later (comp. of kasno) |
| košarka | basketball | | |

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|---|---------------|
| lakše (comp. of lako) | easier | očito | evidently |
| | | petnaestak | about 15 |
| pogled | look, point of view | pogledati (pf.) | glance |
| pretjerivati (imp.) | to exaggerate | provesti se (pf. provedem) | to spend time |
| ručak | lunch | sutra | tomorrow |
| točno | exactly | uklapati se (imp.) | to fit in |
| utakmica | match | | |
| utorkom | on Tuesdays | vjerojatno | probably |

10

Posjet prijateljima

Visiting friends

In this unit we will look at:

- the past tense
- word order
- past tense questions
- negative past tense
- the emphatic use of pronouns
- use of verbs with numbers

Dialogue 1

Cameronovi idu u posjet

Alan and Nora go to visit acquaintances of Alan's. How do they get there? Do they find the house easily? When did they arrive in Zagreb? What does Tomo offer them to drink? What does Nora ask for?

Alan i Nora su pošli tramvajem u posjet Alanovim znancima: upoznao je Tomu u Londonu. Stigli su na vrijeme i našli kuću bez teškoća.

ANA: Stigli ste! Dobro došli!

ALAN: Da vam predstavim svoju suprugu, Noru.

ANA: Drago mi je. Nora, ovo je moj muž Tomo.

TOMO: Dobro došli! Kad ste stigli u Zagreb?

ALAN: Stigli smo prekjucher. Jako nam se sviđa Zagreb.

TOMO: Jeste li uspjeli već nešto vidjeti?

NORA: Jesmo. Već smo puno toga vidjeli. Jučer i danas smo cijeli dan hodali.

ANA: Zar niste bili umorni poslije puta?

ALAN: Malo, ali lijepo smo se odmorili u udobnom hotelu.

ANA: Izvolite sjesti.

TOMO: Želite li nešto popiti prije večere? Imamo izvrsnu domaću lozovaču. Dobili smo je sa sela.

ALAN: Jako rado što se mene tiče.

NORA: Ja ne pijem žestoka pića, hvala. Imate li možda čašu vina?

TOMO: Naravno, imamo jako dobro bijelo vino. Stavio sam ga još jutros u hladnjak.

ANA: Meni daj lozovaču, molim te.



Ilica

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| dobiti (pf. dobijem) | to acquire | hladnjak | fridge |
| | | jučer | yesterday |
| jutros | this morning | lozovača | grape brandy |
| meni (dat. of ja) | to me | naravno | of course |
| | | na vrijeme | on time |
| odmoriti se (pf.) | to rest | poći (pf. podem) | to set off |
| poslije (+ gen.) | after | predstaviti (pf.) | to present, introduce |
| pravi | proper, right | | |
| prekjučer | the day before yesterday | prije (+ gen.) | before |
| | | puno, puno | a lot, a great |
| put | journey | toga | deal |
| staviti (pf.) | to place, put | što se mene tiče | as far as I'm concerned |
| teškoća | difficulty | | |
| tramvaj | tram | ući (pf. uđem) | to enter |
| uspjeti (pf. uspijem) | to succeed | već | already |
| | | znanac | acquaintance |

žestok

strong, fierce

žestoka pića

spirits

Language points 1

Formation of the past (perfect) tense

You will be glad to know that you need to be able to use only three tenses yourself: simple present, perfect and future. There are one or two others you need to be able to recognize, but for all practical purposes these three are sufficient. The perfect tense is very easily formed. It is a compound tense, consisting of the present tense of the auxiliary **biti** and the active past participle.

The active past participle

(1) Verbs with the infinitive ending in **-ti**: The majority of Croatian verbs is in this category. Take the infinitive (e.g. **spavati**), remove final **-ti** and add the following endings:

-o (m. sing.)

-la (f. sing.)

-lo (n. sing.)

-li (m. pl.)

-le (f. pl.)

-la (n. pl.)

spavao, spavala, spavalo; spavali, spavale, spavala

Past tense

ja sam spavao / ja sam spavala

mi smo spavali

ti si spavao / ti si spavala

vi ste spavali

on je spavao

dječaci su spavali

ona je spavala

djevojke su spavale

dijete je spavalo

sela su spavala

Regular verbs with the infinitive in -ti

| <i>Infinitive</i> | <i>Infinitive stem</i> | <i>Active past participle</i> | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|------------|
| imati | ima | imao (m.) | imala (f.) | imalo (n.) |
| piti | pi | pio | pila | pilo |
| putovati | putova | putovao | putovala | putovalo |
| raditi | radi | radio | radila | radilo |
| odmoriti | odmori | odmorio | odmorila | odmorilo |
| hodati | hoda | hodao | hodala | hodalo |

(2) Verbs with the infinitive in **-jeti** have **-io** as the *masculine singular* participle. This is because if the final **-ti** is removed **-je + o** sounds virtually the same as **-io** and this is consequently how it is written:

| <i>Infinitive</i> | <i>Infinitive stem</i> | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|-------------------|------------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| vidjeti | vidje | vidio | vidjela | vidjelo |
| uspjeti | uspje | uspio | uspjela | uspjelo |
| htjeti | htje | htio | htjela | htjelo |
| željeti | želje | želio | željela | željelo |
| voljeti | volje | volio | voljela | voljelo |

(3) Verbs with the infinitive ending in **-ći** or **-sti** form the active past participle slightly differently. For the time being, it is simplest to learn the participle of each new verb of this kind as you come to it. You will soon find that you are able to predict most of them.

Infinitive ending in -sti

The s is dropped:

| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Feminine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> |
|---------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| jesti | jeo | jela | jelo |
| pasti | pao | pala | palo |
| sjesti | sjeo | sjela | sjelo |

Infinitive ending in -ći

| <i>Infinitive</i> | <i>Infinitive stem</i> | <i>Active past participle</i> | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| stići | stig | stigao | stigla | stiglo |
| moći | mog | mogao | mogla | moglo |
| reći | rek | rekao | rekla | reklo |

All the compounds of **ići** form the participle in the same way:

| | |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| ići | išao, išla, išlo, išli |
| doći | došao, došla, došlo, došli |
| ući | ušao, ušla, ušlo, ušli |

(4) The active past participle of **biti** is quite regular:

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Ja sam bio | Dijete je bilo |
| Ona je bila | Mi smo bili |

Word order 1

Note: Because the short forms of **biti** are, as you know, enclitics, they must be placed immediately after the *first* stressed word in the sentence; for example, if the pronoun or other subject is used: **Ja sam došla, Mladić je stigao**. However, if the pronoun is not used, the enclitic is placed *after* the participle: **Došli smo, Vidjela si**.

Exercise 1

(a) Supply the perfect tense of the verbs in the following sentences:

- 1 (imati) Mladić _____ lijep šešir.
- 2 (vidjeti) Djevojka _____ prekrasnu haljinu u dućanu.
- 3 (umoriti) Putovanje nas _____
- 4 (jesti) Putnici _____ u ugodnom novom restoranu.
- 5 (piti) Naš domaćin¹ _____ domaću šljivovicu.
- 6 (stići) Gosti _____ na vrijeme.
- 7 (ući) Marija i Jasna _____ u kuću.
- 8 (željeti) Alan _____ mnogo vidjeti tijekom² boravka.
- 9 (spavati) Svi _____ jako dobro u udobnom hotelu.
- 10 (moći) Drago mi je što _____ Luka _____ doći.³

1 **domaćin** 'host'; 2 **tijekom** + gen. 'during'; 3 think about word order here

(b)[†] Fill the gaps with the most appropriate verbs from the list and their past tense form (the speaker is a single male):

biti, šetati, ustati, ne imati, kasniti, krenuti, otići, naći se, posjetiti, popiti, čekati, ići, razgledavati, pojesti, doći

Jučer _____ od jutra do mraka. _____ s rano ujutro i _____ samo jednu kavu i _____ jedan kolač. _____ vremena za veliki doručak jer _____ naš vodič već _____ na trgu. Malo _____ . Najprije _____ na razgledavanje starog grada i katedrale. Jedan dio grupe _____ u Gradski muzej dok _____ drugi dio grupe _____ na razgledavanje sportskih objekata u parku. Svi _____ na ručku u pivnici 'Medvedgrad'. Poslije ručka _____ novi dio grada gdje _____ i moderni trgovački centar i tržnicu. Kad _____ kući, _____ umoran i gladan.

Language points 2

Word order 2

The consequence of the rule on p. 135 above (that enclitics must be placed immediately after the first stressed word or phrase in a sentence or clause) is that in a complex sentence, the auxiliary can sometimes be quite far removed from the participle:

Putnik je često tijekom putovanja *izlazio* da popuši cigaretu.

The passenger often *went out* in the course of his journey to smoke a cigarette.

Kažem da *sam se* poslije prvih lijepih dana u Zagrebu *osjećala* kao da oduvijek živim ovdje.

After the first few lovely days in Zagreb *I felt* as though I had always lived here.

Jako mi je drago što *je* tvoj sin, kojega nisam još upoznala, konačno *uspio* doći ovamo.

I'm very glad that your son, whom I have not yet met, *has* at last *succeeded* in coming here.

Past tense questions

The standard way of introducing a question is with the verb and interrogative particle **li**. The verb is the first word in the sentence:

Imate li kartu? Have you got a ticket?

Remember that when the verb is **biti**, the long form must be used:

Jesi li umorna? Are you tired?

In exactly the same way, in questions formed on this model the long form of the auxiliary must be used with the past tense:

Jesi li bila umorna? **Jeste li spavali?**
Were you tired? Did you sleep?

Jesam li (ja) zvao? **Je li (ona) zvala?** **Jeste li (vi) zvali?**
Did I call? Did she call? Did you call?

**Exercise 2[†]**

Translate these sentences and then make questions, as in the example:

Example: She has reserved a seat on the train.

Rezervirala je mjesto u vlaku.

Je li rezervirala mjesto u vlaku?

- 1 You arrived at the border yesterday.
- 2 He reserved a double room in the hotel.
- 3 They saw the cathedral and the theatre.
- 4 She has gone to visit friends.
- 5 They have seen many interesting things in the town.
- 6 We met your friends in Dubrovnik.
- 7 You drank local brandy at (your) friends' house.
- 8 He put the white wine in the fridge this morning.
- 9 They had a good rest in the comfortable hotel.
- 10 You have been walking the whole day.

Language points 3

Negative of past tense

This is very straightforward: use the negative form of the auxiliary (**nisam** etc.) + active past participle. As the negative forms of **biti** are not enclitics, the rules about word order do not apply. The negative auxiliary normally precedes the participle:

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Nisam zvao. | I did not call. |
| Zar niste išli? | Didn't you go? |
| Rekao je da nije uspio. | He said he didn't succeed. |

Emphatic use of personal pronouns

Note the use of the long form of the personal pronoun where it is emphasized (personal pronouns are treated in Unit 11).

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Meni daj tu lozovaču. | Give the brandy <i>to me</i> . |
| I meni, molim te. | And <i>to me</i> , please. |

Dialogue 2

Two friends are talking over a drink

A: Nisam gledao novi američki film, a ti?

B: Nisam ni ja. Jeste li ti i Vesna bile u novoj kavani pokraj Save?

A: Ne, nismo. Nismo nigdje bili. Jesu li djeca došla k vama?

B: Nisu. Nisu željela biti u gradu.

A: Mislio sam da baš vole grad. Ali, nikad se ne zna!

pokraj (+ gen.) beside

Exercise 3[†]

(a) Translate Dialogue 2 into English.

(b) Put the following jumbled up sentences in order:

1 rekao on da nije vremena je pa napisao nije pisma imao.

2 jučer izletu li bili na jeste?

3 u Zagrebu, a idem Hrvatsku nikad ja nisam u bio svake godine.

4 prekjučer je već umoran dana pa je cijelu radio noć dva.

5 mi je da kupiti karte uspjeli ste drago Split i da dobili za ste let dobar.

(c) Match the two parts to make complete sentences:

- | | | |
|---|--|-----------------------------|
| 1 | Jučer sam cijeli dan spavala | pa je sada dovoljno hladno. |
| 2 | Putovali su cijelo jutro | kad sam živio u Dubrovniku. |
| 3 | Jutros sam stavio bocu bijelog vina u hladnjak | dok je Marko bio na poslu. |
| 4 | Upoznao sam Ivana | naučio sam mnogo. |
| 5 | Dok sam studirao u Londonu, | pa su sada umorni. |

Language point 4

Present tense to express English present perfect

Note the use of the present tense:

U Zagrebu sam već tri tjedna.

I have been in Zagreb for three weeks already.

Koliko dugo uči jezik?

How long has he been studying the language?

Reading passage

Priča našeg vremena (10)

Mark has begun to keep a diary to record his trip to Croatia. Why has he decided to keep a diary? Why does he say he was excited? Did everything go well? What happened when the discussion became more complicated?

Mark je počeo voditi dnevnik: počinje radni dio njegovog boravka u Hrvatskoj. Odlučio je voditi dnevnik na hrvatskom da u isto vrijeme vježba jezik:

Danas sam bio prvi put u glavnom uredu. Bio sam uzbuđen jer nisam znao što me čeka, na primjer: znaju li svi engleski ili moram odmah sve govoriti na hrvatskom. Srećom je sve dobro prošlo: govorio sam dovoljno dobro i sve sam razumio što su oni govorili. Kad je bio govor o nečem složenom, Jasna je prevodila. Bilo je ugodno. Svi su bili ljubazni.

Vocabulary

dnevnik

diary

na primjer

for
example

o nečem (loc. of **nešto**)

about
something

odlučiti (pf.)

to decide

prevoditi (imp.), **prevesti** (pf.) to translate

| | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| početi (pf. počnem ; imp. počinjati , počinjem) | to begin | proći (pf. prođem) | to pass |
| radni | working | složen | complex |
| uzbuđen | excited | vježbati (imp.) | to practise |
| voditi (imp.) | to lead (<i>here</i> 'to keep') | | |

Exercise 4

(a) Answer these questions with a negative sentence and add a positive statement, as in the example:

Example: Jeste li pili domaću lozovaču? Nisam pio domaću lozovaču, pio sam vino.

- 1 Jesu li vidjeli mnogo zanimljivoga?
- 2 Jeste li jeli meso u restoranu?
- 3 Je li putovala vlakom?
- 4 Jesmo li već bili u ovoj crkvi?
- 5 Jeste li uspjeli naći poštu?
- 6 Je li rezervirao stol u restoranu?
- 7 Je li pila bijelo vino?
- 8 Jesu li bili na Gornjem gradu?
- 9 Jeste li posjetili muzeje na Zrinjevcu?
- 10 Jesi li se javila prijateljima?

(b) **Odgovorite na pitanja** 'Answer the questions':

- 1 Tko je došao iz Engleske?
- 2 Kako su stigli do poznanika?
- 3 Kad su Alan i Nora stigli u Zagreb?
- 4 Sviđa li im¹ se Zagreb?
- 5 Jesu li uspjeli nešto vidjeti?
- 6 Što su radili jučer i danas?
- 7 Što ste vi jučer radili?
- 8 Jeste li hodali ili ste se vozili autom?
- 9 Jeste li uvijek umorni poslije puta?
- 10 Gdje su se Alan i Nora odmorili?
- 11 Što vi pijete prije večere?
- 12 Volite li čitati prije nego zaspate?²
- 13 Pijete li žestoka pića?
- 14 Kakvo vino imaju Jasna i Tomo?
- 15 Volite li više crno ili bijelo vino?
- 16 Što volite raditi na odmoru?³
- 17 Volite li stare crkve i katedrale?
- 18 Volite li više grad ili plažu za odmor?
- 19 Volite li jesti strana jela na odmoru?

20 Kako se ide od vaše kuće do prodavaonice? – do pošte? – do kazališta?

1 **im** dat. of **oni** ‘to them’; 2 **zaspati** (pf. **zaspim**) ‘to fall asleep’; 3 **odmor** ‘holiday, rest’

Language point 5

Use of verbs with numbers

The numbers 2 to 4

Present. The verb is plural:

Dva zgodna mladića se voze biciklom.

Two handsome lads are riding bicycles.

Tri visoke žene čekaju autobus.

Three tall women are waiting for the bus.

Past. Past participle has the same ending as the adjective:

Došla su tri visoka mladića.

Three tall young men came.

Za stolom su sjedile dvije zgodne djevojke.

Two good-looking girls were sitting at the table.

The numbers 5 to 20 etc.

The verb is usually singular:

Dvadeset šest umornih putnika čeka autobus.

Twenty-six tired travellers are waiting for the bus.

Deset izvrsnih plivačica je skočilo u more.

Ten excellent female swimmers dived into the sea.

Exercise 5[†]

Complete these sentences with the correct form of the adjective and noun:

1 (**umoran putnik**) Na kolodvoru je čekalo pet ____ .

2 (**crvena boca**) Na zidu su stajale tri ____ .

3 (**sumnjiv tip**) U kupeu su sjedila dva ____ .

4 (**crni kofer**) U hodniku je stajalo sedam ____ .

5 (**prostrana soba**) Na park su gledale četiri ____ .

6 (**udoban stan**) U gradu se prodavalo šest ____ .

7 (**ukusno jelo**) Na stolu je čekalo pet ____ .

8 (**preporučeno pismo**) Dva ____ su stigla za oca.

9 (**telefonski razgovor**) Četiri ____ su dugo trajala.

10 (**ukusno jelo**) Pet ____ je čekalo na stolu.

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (10)

Mara persuades Vesna to invite Mate over for the evening. Does Vesna want to do it? Why is Mara confused? What does Mara suggest that she and Vesna do? What does Vesna agree in the end?

Mara je kod Vesne poslije podne.

- Molim te, Vesna, ako si mi prijatelj, pozovi Matu večeras na kolače.
- Kako mu mogu ja tako nešto predložiti?
- Lako. Valjda vidiš da ja ne mogu. Zbog Ive, mislim.

Vesna je pažljivo pogleda.

- Jako ti se sviđa Mate, je li?
- Ne znam, Vesna. Zbunjena sam i zabrinuta. Ne znam što se sa mnom događa. Čas mislim da Ivu iskreno volim, a čim pogledam Matu počne mi se vrtjeti u glavi.
- Nisi ti jedina, izgleda!
- Možda. Nije važno. Možeš li ga nazvati? Molim te! Nemam broj njegovog mobitela, pa ga moraš tražiti od Ive.
- U redu, Maro, smiri se. Idem ga nazvati. Samo nisam ti ja kriva ako sebi kompliciraš život!
- Nisi, naravno, hvala ti, Vesna, ti si pravi prijatelj!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|--|------------------|
| čas | one moment | čim | as soon as |
| dogadati se (imp.) | to happen | iskren | sincere |
| | | jedini | the only one |
| komplicirati (imp.) | to complicate | kriv | to blame, guilty |
| | | naravno | of course |
| nije važno | it doesn't matter | početi (pf. počnem) | to begin |
| smiriti se (pf.) | to calm oneself | vertjeti se (nekome) u glavi (imp.) | to feel dizzy |
| tako nešto | something like that | zbog (+ gen.) | because of |
| zabrinut | worried | | |
| zbunjen | confused | | |

11

Obiteljski odnosi

Family relationships

In this unit we will look at:

- personal pronoun declensions
- family relationships
- word order with pronouns
- use of pronouns

Dialogue 1

Razgovor o rodbini

Conversation about relatives

The Camerons are discussing their families with Tomo and Ana. Who did Tomo's brother marry? Is he Tomo's full brother? Where does he live now? Does Alan have a sister?

ANA: Nora, znaš li da su Marija i Tomo rođaci?

NORA: Nisam znala, kako to?

TOMO: Ana se šali, nismo rod nego mi se brat oženio Marijinom sestrom.

NORA: Zbilja? Baš je svijet malen!

ANA: Nisi to dobro objasnio, jer mu on nije rođeni brat.

ALAN: Znači da mu je bratić?

ANA: Nije, nego polubrat. Iz očevog prvog braka; rastao se od prve žene još kao mladić.

NORA: Kako se slažeš s njim?

TOMO: Jako dobro, kao da mi je pravi brat. Samo što sada živi i radi u Africi pa ga rijetko viđam.

ANA: Imate li vas dvoje braće ili sestara?

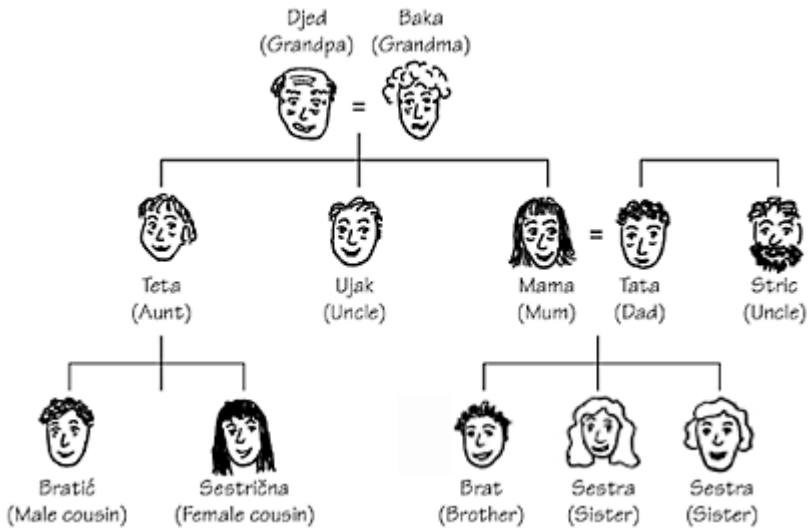
ALAN: Pa ja sam u sličnom polusestru, ali kad sam ja bio dijete, ona je već bila odrasla, tada je nisam dobro poznavao.

NORA: Ali dok je Alan studirao, stanovnao je kod nje pa ju je često viđao. U to vrijeme bila je već udana i imala svoju djecu.

ALAN: Zamislite, imam nećaka koji je rođen prije mene. Mlađi sam od njega iako sam mu stric!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|--------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| braća (f. coll., plural of brat) | brothers | brak | marriage |
| | | brat | brother |
| bratić (m.) (f. sestrična) | cousin | dvoje | two (mixed genders) |
| iako | although | kao | as |
| majka | mother | Marijin | Marija's |
| nećak | nephew | nećakinja | niece |
| obitelj (f.) | family | objasniti (pf.) | to explain |
| očev (possessive adj. from otac) | father's | odrastao (f. odrasla) | grown up |
| otac (gen. oca) | father | oženiti se (pf. + instr.) | to marry (referring to a man) |
| položaj | position | | |
| polubrat | half-brother | | |



| | | | |
|---|---------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| raštati se (pf. raštanem se) | to divorce, part | rijetko | rarely |
| | | rod | kin |
| rodak | relation | rođen | born; 'by blood' |
| sestra | sister | | |
| slagati se | to get on; to agree | stric | uncle (father's brother) |
| šaliti se (imp.) | to joke | udana | married (of a woman) |

vidati (imp.) to see (repeatedly)

značiti (imp.) to mean

živjeti (imp. **živim**) to live

Language points 1

Declension of personal pronouns

The first thing to remember is that personal pronouns are not used in the nominative except for emphasis. Compare:

Zašto si došao?

Why have you come?

Došao sam vidjeti majku.

I've come to see my mother.

and

Tko je? Jesi li ti, dušo? (vocative of **duša** soul)

Who is it? Is it *you*, dear?

Ja sam, majko.

It is *me*, mother.

The other cases of the pronouns are used as required by the sentence structure: they behave like any other kind of noun.

The second main point is that there are *two* forms of some of the cases (genitive/accusative and dative) – a neutral short form and an emphatic long form. Like the short forms of **biti**, the short forms of pronouns are enclitic, i.e. they cannot carry stress and cannot therefore be placed in a position where they would be stressed. Compare:

Zašto si došao?

Why have you come?

Došao sam da te vidim. (short form)

I've come to see you.

Jesi li došao da vidiš Anu?

Have you come to see Ana?

Nisam, nego da vidim tebe. (long form)

No, I've come to see *you*.

Remember that the long forms must be used when pronouns follow a preposition:

Sjedi pokraj mene i pričaj mi o njemu.
 Sit *beside me* and tell me *about him*.

Declension of ja 'I'

Genitive/accusative

The genitive and accusative of all personal pronouns are the same and can therefore be taken together.

| | | |
|------|--|--|
| | <i>Short form: me</i> | <i>Long form: mene</i> |
| gen. | On me se ne sjeća. He doesn't remember me. | Daleko je on od mene. He is far away from me. |
| acc. | Vidjela me je. She saw me. | Je li to poklon za mene? Is that a present for me? |

Dative

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Short form: mi</i> | <i>Long form: meni</i> |
| Rekao mi je istinu. He told <i>me</i> the truth. | Meni nije ništa rekao. He didn't tell <i>me</i> anything. |

Locative

The *locative* case has the same form, but since it is used only with prepositions, it is always long.

Došli su k meni jučer.
 They came to my place yesterday.

Što su govorili o meni?
 What did they say about me?

Instrumental

mnom (or **mnome** if the sentence requires an additional syllable; see 'Grammar summary', 2, p. 297):

Dodi sa mnom, ako želiš.
 Come with me, if you want.

Exercise 1[†]

Complete the sentences with the correct form of **ja**:

- 1 Je li to poklon za ___ ?
- 2 Dolaziš li u kino sa ___ ?
- 3 Dajte ___ bijelu kavu, molim vas.
- 4 Nemojte pričati o ___ !
- 5 Sjedi blizu ___ , molim te.
- 6 On _____ stalno zove u kino.
- 7 Sanja _____ želi nešto reći.
- 8 Sa _____ nešto nije u redu.
- 9 Reci _____ što radiš sada.
- 10 Vidio _____ je jučer na trgu.

Language point 2

ti 'you'

| | | |
|--------|--|--|
| gen. | On te se dobro sjeća. He remembers you well. | To sam dobila od tebe. I got that from you. |
| dat. | Što sam ti rekao? What did I tell you? | Tebi dajem ovu knjigu. I'm giving you this book. |
| loc. | O tebi su govorili samo dobro. They said only good things about you. | |
| instr. | Želim biti s tobom. I want to be with you. | |

Exercise 2[†]

Complete the sentences with the correct form of **ti**:

- 1 Rekao sam _____ da je ovo vino dobro.
- 2 Zvao sam _____ , a ne Mariju.
- 3 Vidio sam _____ jučer na trgu.
- 4 Svi žele ići na put s _____ .
- 5 Čuo sam priču od _____ .
- 6 Što _____ je Tom rekao?
- 7 On stalno govori o _____ .
- 8 Kupio sam _____ knjigu.
- 9 Možemo li _____ nazvati sutra ujutro?
- 10 Ovo pismo je za _____ .

Language point 3

Reflexive pronoun se

This follows the same pattern as **ti**, but has no nominative form. In reflexive verbs it is used to denote the 'object' of the action. It can only *refer* to the subject of a verb, and

cannot itself be the subject. In all reflexive verbs it is the genitive/accusative form which is used:

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| Ja sam se počesljala. | I combed my hair. |
| Ti si se lijepo obukla. | You've dressed nicely. |
| On se kupava. | He is bathing. |
| Ona se sprema. | She is getting ready. |
| Mi smo se upoznali. | We have met. |

Vi se niste odavno vidjeli.

You haven't seen each other for a long time.

Oni se jako dobro poznaju.

They know each other very well.

The long form of the genitive/accusative is used for all persons – for emphasis or after a preposition:

Čuvaj sebe, ne brini se o nama.

Look after *yourself*, don't worry about us.

Otkad znam za sebe, volim more.

As long as I can remember I've loved the sea.
(lit. 'Since I have known *of myself* ...')

Nisu kupili poklone za sebe.

They didn't buy gifts for themselves.

| | | |
|--------|--------------|--|
| dat. | sebi | Govorio je sam sebi ... He was saying to himself ... |
| loc. | sebi | Ona govori stalno o sebi. She's always talking about herself. |
| instr. | sobom | Donijeli su prtljagu sa sobom. They brought their luggage with them. |

Exercise 3[†]

Complete the sentences with the correct form of **se**:

- 1 Samo misli na _____ .
- 2 Vidjeli smo _____ prije dva dana.
- 3 Jeste li donijeli sve knjige sa _____ .
- 4 Nalazimo _____ svaki dan u parku.
- 5 _____ nešto kupi, a ne bratu.
- 6 Vidjela sam odjednom auto blizu _____ .
- 7 Razgovarali smo o _____ cijelu noć.

8 Mislim da _____ kupujem ovu knjigu.

9 Uvijek sve stvari nosimo sa _____ .

10 Htjela sam _____ nagraditi.

Dialogue 2

Two friends meet. One is driving a new car.

A: Je li ti to novi auto?

B: Je. Kako ti se sviđa?

A: Jako! Hoćeš li me voziti nekamo?

B: Rado! Odmah dolazim po tebe. Idem samo po benzin!

A: *Is that a new car?*

B: *Yes. How do you like it?*

A: *A lot! Will you drive me somewhere?*

B: *Gladly! I'll come for you right away. I'm just going for petrol.*

Language point 4

Declension on, ona, ono 'he, she, it'

On/ono

The accusative and genitive are the same.

Short form: ga

Long form: njega

Odavno ga nisam vidjela.

I haven't seen him for a long time.

Što će biti od njega?

What will become of him?

Evo ti pisma, ja sam ga već pročitala.

Here's the letter, I've already read it.

dat. *Short form: mu*

Long form: njemu

Dala sam mu knjigu.

I gave him the book.

Nisi to valjda rekao njemu?

You presumably didn't tell *him*?

loc. **Čuli smo mnogo o njemu.**

We've heard a lot about him.

instr. **njim (njime)**

Ona ide s njim u kazalište.

She's going to the theatre with him.

Poklanjam ti ovo nalivepero, njime sam napisao ove pjesme.

I give you this fountain pen, I wrote these poems with it.

Ona

gen.: *Short form: je*

Long form: nje

Rado smo je se sjećali.

We remembered her with pleasure.

Otišao je daleko od nje.

He went far away from her.

The accusative short form is the same as genitive, but the *long form* is: **nju**:

Vidjeli smo je tamo.

We saw her there.

Vidjeli smo tebe, a nju nismo vidjeli.

We saw you, but we didn't see her.

However, if the accusative of **ona (je)** occurs in the same sentence as the short form of the third person singular of **biti**, an alternative form of accusative of **ona** may be used: **ju**.

alt.

Je li vidio Anu?

Did he see Anne?

Vidio ju je.

He saw her.

dat.

joj, njoj

Dajem joj knjigu.

I'm giving her the book.

instr.

njom (njome)

Vidamo se često s njom.

We often see her.

Exercise 4[†]

Complete the sentences with the correct form of **on** or **ona**:

- 1 Govori _____ (**on**) da kupi kompjutor u Americi.
- 2 Rekao sam _____ (**ona**) da se nalazimo na trgu.
- 3 Ove stvari su za _____ (**ona**), a ne za _____ (**on**).
- 4 Posjetili smo _____ (**on**) u novom stanu.
- 5 Razgovarali smo s _____ (**ona**) nedavno.
- 6 Gledala sam _____ (**ona**) na televiziji sinoć.
- 7 Upoznao sam _____ (**ona**) jučer na koncertu.
- 8 Pozvala _____ (**on**) je u kazalište.
- 9 Pitao _____ (**ona**) je želi li ići na večeru.
- 10 Znao sam da _____ (**ona**) se ne sviđam.

Language point 5

Plurals

The declensions of **mi** 'we' and **vi** 'you' are similar:

acc./gen.

nas

vas

dat.

nam (nama)

vam (vama)

loc.

nama

vama

instr.

nama

vama

Oni, one, ona 'they'

| | | |
|-----------|-----------------|-------------|
| acc./gen. | ih njih | (long form) |
| dat. | im njima | (long form) |
| loc. | njima | |
| instr. | njima | |

Exercise 5[†]

(a) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the pronouns:

- 1 Dogovorili smo se s _____ (oni) da idemo zajedno na more.
- 2 Vidio _____ (oni) je jučer u gradu.
- 3 Recite _____ (mi) što mislite o filmu.
- 4 Molim _____ (vi) gdje je pošta?
- 5 Ne može _____ (mi) vidjeti jer smo predaleko.
- 6 Ne žele _____ (vi) reći istinu.
- 7 Želim sjesti blizu _____ (vi).
- 8 Imam jedno pismo za _____ (oni).
- 9 Razgovarao sam s _____ (vi) o tom problemu.
- 10 Ne mogu vjerovati da je ovaj poklon za _____ (mi).

(b) Translate the following sentences into Croatian:

- 1 Did he see me?¹
- 2 She showed me the book.²
- 3 They are going with me.
- 4 You are coming to me this evening.³
- 5 He was at my place yesterday.⁴
- 6 Did they visit you?⁵
- 7 I gave you the book.
- 8 They were sitting behind you.
- 9 He was walking towards you.
- 10 That is very nice of you.
- 11 He bought that book for himself.
- 12 We are carrying a lot of things with us.
- 13 She should buy something for herself.⁶
- 14 You must think about yourself more.⁷
- 15 I can only speak for myself.

1 order: aux., pronoun, participle; 2 participle, pronoun, aux., obj.; 3 **večeras**; 4 **jučer**; 5 aux., pronoun, participle; 6 use dative; 7 **više**

Language point 6

Word order with pronouns

Pronouns must be placed in a strict order:

Dative precedes accusative/genitive:

Ovo je poklon, dajem *ti* ga.

This is a gift; I'm giving *it to you*.

Where short forms of pronouns occur in the same sentence as short forms of verbs (**biti** and two other auxiliaries we have yet to meet), the verbal forms precede the pronouns:

Dao sam *ti* ga.

I gave *it to you*.

Reflexive pronoun **se** follows these:

Rado smo je se sjećali.

There is one exception: the third person singular of **biti – je** – is placed after all the other enclitics:

Je *li ih se* sjetio?

Did *he* remember *them*?

Da, sjetio *ih se* je.

Note: With a reflexive verb, as here, in third person singular only, the verbal **je** may be omitted: **sjetio *ih se***.

This is the formula you should learn:

li (interrog. part.); **ve** (verbal); dat., acc./gen. (of pronouns); **se**; **je**

It seems a great deal to remember all at once, but it will gradually become instinctive. For the time being, try to observe all clusters of enclitics as you come to them, write some typical ones down for reference and remember the formula when you need to compose a sentence yourself.

Exercise 6

(a)[†] Substitute pronouns for the nouns in italics. You may need to alter the word order.

1 Jesi li bio kod *Dragana*?

2 Sinoć¹ smo vidjeli *Mariju*.

3 Jeste li gledali *film*?

4 *Andrea* se igrala² s *Jasnom*.³

5 Dao je knjigu *gospodinu Petriću*.

6 Bili su kod *tete*⁴ na ručku.

- 7 Putovali smo s *roditeljima*.
 8 On je lijepo govorio o *majci*.
 9 Jeste li otpratili *djecu* na kolodvor?
 10 Pokazala je *kuću* prijateljima.

1 **sinoć** 'last night'; 2 **igrati se** 'to play'; 3 notice that with the third person singular *only* of a reflexive verb in the past tense it is possible to omit the auxiliary: **On se vratio s mora** (**On se je vratio s mora**); 4 **teta** 'aunt'

(b) Supply questions for the following answers, using pronouns:


- 1 Da, upoznala sam ga jučer.
 2 Ne, još je nisam vidio.
 3 Volim je, ali joj ne vjerujem.
 4 Da, često idem s njima u kino.
 5 Ne, odavno se nismo vidjeli.
 6 Ne, nisam se još upoznao s njima.
 7 Da, rekao sam mu to.
 8 Da, bili smo kod vas prošlog ljeta.
 9 Ne, dobila sam knjigu od tebe.
 10 Da, dala sam joj adresu.

(c)† Translate into Croatian:

John is my relation. My brother is married to Anne's sister. Is he your cousin? My sister is divorced. Do they get on well? Have you any brothers or sisters? She married very young. We have a nephew. My mother has a half-brother.

(d)† Fill the gaps with the most appropriate forms of personal pronouns:

- (i) Jučer _____ (ja) je moj prijatelj pozvao na utakmicu. Rekao je da voli ići sa _____ (ja) jer se pokraj _____ (ja) osjeća sigurno. _____ (ja) je bilo drago da moj prijatelj tako misli o _____ (ja). Pričao _____ (ja) je zanimljive priče o drugim utakmicama.
- (ii) Moj prijatelj Marijan pozvao _____ (ja) je na izlet. Predložio sam _____ (on) da idemo na planinarenje. Putem smo sreli Ladu. Pitali smo _____ (ona) želi li ići s _____ (mi). Bilo _____ (ona) je vrlo drago. I _____ (mi) je bilo drago što ona ide s _____ (mi).

Reading passage 

Priča našeg vremena (11)

The director of the firm describes the working plan for each year. Where did the meeting take place? What did the director show Mark? What kind of work is done in spring? When do they prepare for agricultural and trade fairs?

Ravnatelj tvrtke je danas zakazao sastanak u glavnom uredu. Pokazao mi je poslovne projekte za cijelu godinu: što se radi u proljeće, u jesen, ljeti i zimi. U proljeće se uglavnom potpisuju ugovori s proizvođačima sirovine – u ovom slučaju voća. Obilaze se poljoprivredne udruge i farme. Ljeti i na jesen ima najviše posla oko prerade sirovine i na raznim sajmovima. Zimi se radi na održavanju pogona i na postizanju novih maloprodajnih mogućnosti.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|---|--------------------|
| jesen (f.) | autumn | ljeti | in summer |
| maloprodaja | retail | mogućnost | possibility |
| najviše | most | obilaziti (imp.) | to go round, visit |
| održavanje | maintenance | pogon | plant |
| poljoprivreda | agriculture | poslovni | business (adj.) |
| postizanje | acquisition | potpisivati (imp.) (potpisati pf.) | to sign |
| prerada | processing | | |
| proizvođač | producer | proljeće | spring |
| ravnatelj | director | sajam | fair |
| sirovina | raw material | tvrtka | firm |
| u ovom slučaju | in this case | udruge | enterprise |
| uglavnom | mainly, on the whole | ugovor | contract |
| | | voće | fruit |
| zakazati sastanak (pf.) | to convene a meeting | zimi | in winter |

Language points 7

Language in action

Examples of pronouns and other short forms in context.

Izgubila sam knjigu. Jesi li je vidjela?
Ne, nisam je vidjela. Možda ju je Ante vidio.
Imaš pravo, dala sam mu je jučer.
Potraži je dakle kod njega.

Poznaješ li Mirinog brata?
Da, upoznali smo se ljetos.
Sjećam se, vratili ste se skupa s godišnjeg odmora.
Jesi li ga pitala je li me se sjeća?

Tko im je to rekao?
Ne znam, ja to nisam rekao njima, samo tebi.
A njoj je to rekao on, je li?
Možda, nisam ga čuo, sjedio sam iza vas.

Use the translation as an exercise: cover up the original and try to translate back into Croatian.

I've lost the book. Have you seen it?
No, I haven't seen it. Perhaps Ante has seen it.
You're right, I gave it to him yesterday.
Then see if he's got it. (lit. 'look for it at his place')

Do you know Mira's brother?
Yes, we met in the summer.
I remember, you came back from holiday together.
Did you ask him whether he remembers me?

Who told them that?
I don't know, I didn't tell *them*, only *you*.
And it was he who told her, was it?
Perhaps, I didn't hear him, I was sitting behind you.

Note: See 'Grammar summary', 3, p. 298 for complete table of pronoun declensions.

Dative of pronouns to express possession

In the text of this unit note the use of the dative of pronouns to convey possession:

On mi je brat.

He is my brother.

Look at the text and see how many examples you can find. You should find five.

Exercise 7

(a)† Translate the following sentences into Croatian:

- 1 I saw him.
- 2 Did you know her?¹
- 3 They invited² us.
- 4 We heard³ them.
- 5 Please.⁴
- 6 I'm telling you the truth.⁵
- 7 Did you give the book to him?
- 8 We are going with them.
- 9 I often⁶ talk about her.
- 10 My⁷ parents are at our house now.

1 order: aux., pronoun, participle; 2 **pozvati**, pf.; 3 **čuti**, imp. and pf.; 4 lit. 'I pray you', use **moliti** + pron.; 5 **istina**; 6 **često**; 7 **moji**

(b) **Pitanja** 'Questions'. Answer the following questions on the text:

- 1 Jesu li Marija i Tomo rođaci?
- 2 Tko se oženio Marijinom sestrom?
- 3 Je li mu on rođeni brat?
- 4 Zašto Tomo ima polubrata?
- 5 Viđa li ga Tomo često?
- 6 Zašto Alan kaže da je u sličnom položaju?
- 7 Je li Alan često viđao svoju polusestru?
- 8 Gdje je stanovao Alan dok je studirao?
- 9 Tko je mlađi – Alan ili nećak?
- 10 Imate li vi braće¹ i sestara?

1 pl. of **brat** collective: **braća** declined like a f. sing. noun

Dialogue 3 

Ljubavna priča (11)

The telephone rings at Ivo's flat.

- Halo, molim vas, je li tamo Mate?
- Nije. Tko ga treba?

- Vesna na telefonu.
- Vesna! Ovdje Ivo.
- Oh, bog, Ivo!
- Matu tražiš, dakle?
- ... Da ... – Vesna se zbunila. – Vraća li se uskoro?
- Čekam ga svaki čas. Evo, i mobitel je zaboravio kod mene. Imaš li kakvu poruku?
- ... Ne ..., odnosno, da. Znaš li što Mate radi večeras?
- Ne znam, možda ide sa mnom na utakmicu. Ako mi kažeš o čemu se radi, mogu mu reći pa neka ti se on javi.
- Dobro, hvala ... Htjela sam ga samo pozvati k sebi, znam da ti izlaziš, pa da mu ne bude došadno ... Ali, ako i on ide na utakmicu ... ništa. Reci mu da ima neko malo društvo kod mene, pa ako je raspoložen, želimo ga vidjeti ...
- Dobro. Hvala, Vesna. Bog.
- Hvala tebi, Ivo.

Vesna spušta slušalicu i briše čelo. Jako joj je neugodno.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|---------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| brisati (imp. brišem) | to wipe | | |
| bude perfective form of biti | | | |
| čekam ga svaki čas | I'm expecting him at any minute | | |
| čelo | forehead | mobitel | mobile phone |
| ništa | (<i>here</i>) never mind | o čemu se radi? | what's it about? |
| odnosno | or rather, I mean | poruka | message |
| raspoložen | in the mood | slušalica | receiver |
| spuštati (imp.) | to put down | vraćati se (imp.) | to return |
| zbuniti se (pf. zbunjen) | to be embarrassed | | |

12

Putni planovi

Travel plans

In this unit we will look at:

- the future tense
- using the long form of the future auxiliary
- structures with the future tense

Dialogue 1

Idemo na put

We're going on a journey

Alan and Nora are sitting with Slavko and Marija, making plans. When will they leave Zagreb? Where are they going first? What have they arranged with their friends in Dubrovnik? Does Nora like the heat? Where else are they hoping to go?

ALAN: Moramo razmisliti o daljnjem boravku.

SLAVKO: Jeste li odlučili kamo ćete ići?

NORA: Uglavnom, ali svaki savjet će dobro doći.

MARIJA: Vi ćete ostati kod nas još dva dana, je li?

ALAN: Ako vam ne smetamo. Otputovat ćemo rano prekosutra.

SLAVKO: Hoćete li poći ravno na otoke ili ćete se zadržati u nekom gradu?

NORA: Želimo svakako vidjeti Split, ostat ćemo par dana tamo. A imamo prijatelje u Dubrovniku, dogovorili smo se da se nađemo s njima.

MARIJA: Bit će jako vruće u gradovima, ali vrijedi ih vidjeti.

ALAN: Meni neće biti teško, volim vrućinu, ali je Nora ne podnosi lako.

NORA: Imam jako nježnu i osjetljivu kožu. Ali čuvat ću se, sjedit ću u hladu.

SLAVKO: Morat ćeš stalno nositi veliki slamnat šešir i sunčane naočale.

NORA: Valjda ću preživjeti!

MARIJA: Hoćete li poći iz Dubrovnika na Korčulu?

ALAN: Tako smo planirali. Hoćemo li moći naći privatni smještaj na Korčuli?

SLAVKO: Vjerujem da hoćete. Već je kasno. Krajem kolovoza se obitelji s djecom vraćaju s mora. Moraju se spremati za novu školsku godinu.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|---------------------------|---|------------------|
| čuvati (se) (imp.) | to take care of (oneself) | daljnji (comp. of dalek) | further |
| dogovoriti se (pf.) | to arrange, agree | hlad | shade |
| kolovoz | August | izravno | directly |
| krajem (instr. of kraj) | at the end | koža | skin |
| otputovati (pf.) | to leave, set off | nježan, -žna | tender |
| prekosutra | the day after tomorrow | osjetljiv | sensitive |
| | | par | pair, couple |
| | | podnositi (imp.) | to support, bear |
| | | preživjeti (pf.) | to survive |



Pogled na Dubrovnik i otok Lokrum

| | | | |
|--|------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| razmisliti (pf.) | to consider, reflect | savjet | advice |
| smetati (imp.) | to hinder, get in the way (+ dat.) | slamnat | straw (adj.) |
| šešir | hat | smještaj | accommodation |
| školski (adj. from škola) | school | stalno | constantly |
| | | sunčane naočale | sunglasses |
| | | teško | difficult |

| | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|---|------------------|
| valjda | presumably | usput | on the way |
| vrijedi (impers.) | it is worth | vjgrovati (imp. vjerujem) | to believe |
| vrijediti (imp.) | to be worth | vruć | hot |
| vrućina | heat | zadržati (se) | to stop, hold up |

Language points 1

The future tense

This is another compound tense and very simply formed. It consists of the infinitive and a new auxiliary: **htjeti** 'to want'. Like **biti**, **htjeti** has two forms: a short form which is the norm, and a long form which must be used in certain circumstances, i.e. when placed in a position which carries stress.

| | <i>Short form</i> | <i>Long form</i> | <i>Interrogative</i> | <i>Negative</i> |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| (ja) | ću | hoću | hoću li? | neću |
| (ti) | ćeš | hoćeš | hoćeš li? | nećeš |
| (on/ona/ono) | će | hoće | hoće li? | neće |
| (mi) | ćemo | hoćemo | hoćemo li? | nećemo |
| (vi) | ćete | hoćete | hoćete li? | nećete |
| (oni/one/ona) | će | hoće | hoće li? | neće |

Examples:

| | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| Ja ću spavati. | I shall sleep. |
| Hoćeš li doći? | Will you come? |
| Nećete uspjeti. | You won't succeed. |

Use of the long form of the auxiliary

We have already observed that in Croatian it is more common to answer questions with a verb than to use **da** or **ne**.

Jesi li umoran? **Jesam/Nisam.**

Htjeti is used in just the same way:

Hoćeš li doći? **Hoću/Neću.**

To ask and answer such questions, then, the long form of **htjeti** must be used. In all other circumstances, unless particular emphasis is required, the short form is used.

Examples of emphatic sentences:

Nisi valjda umoran? Ja jesam umoran, ali ću ipak pomoći.

You surely can't be tired? *I am*, but I'll still help.

Nećete valjda doći sada? Ja hoću, a Mira neće.

You're presumably not coming now? *I shall come*, but Mira won't.

Exercise 1

(a) Put the following sentences into the future tense (using the personal pronoun):

- 1 Ja sam rezervirao sobe.
- 2 On je putovao vlakom.
- 3 Mi smo večerali u ovom restoranu.
- 4 Ti si spavao u našoj sobi.
- 5 Oni su kupili kruh u gradu.
- 6 Vi ste bili naši gosti.
- 7 Ona je pila bijelo vino.
- 8 Jeste li posjetili Split?
- 9 Ja sam pozvala prijatelje k sebi.
- 10 Mi smo spremili večeru za sve.

(b) Put the following sentences into the future tense (without using the personal pronoun):

- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1 Putovao sam avionom. | 2 Došli smo te vidjeti. |
| 3 Sjedila je u hladu. | 4 Pošao je na Korčulu. |
| 5 Vidjeli su mnogo zanimljivih mjesta. | |

Language point 2

Word order

As was the case with the past tense, the future auxiliary may precede or follow the main verb, depending on whether the pronoun is used or not.

Ja ću doći.

but

Doći ću.

With verbs ending in **-ti**, the final **-i** is removed and the future is then written:

Ja ću biti.

but

Bit ću.

Ti ćeš spavati.

Spavat ćeš.

Mi ćemo vidjeti.

Vidjet ćemo.

Note: The enclitic follows the infinitive only if the infinitive is the *first* word in the sentence or clause. This is because the enclitic continues to obey the rule which places it as near the beginning of the sentence as possible.

Dialogue 2

Mary is visiting her friend Jadranka in Pula. She needs to have her hair cut. Jadranka takes her to the hairdresser.

MARY: Kosa mi je očajna! Sva je suha i ispucana jer sam bila dugo na suncu bez šešira.

Moram se ošišati!

JADRANKA: Odvest ću te jednom dobrom frizeru.

MARY: Molim vas, želim malo skratiti kosu.

FRIZER: Dobro, gospođice. Hoćete li da vam napravimo trajnu?

MARY: Hvala, ne, samo malo skratite.

FRIZER: A da vam malo ofarbamo kosu? Bit će to lijepo za ljetu!

MARY: Hvala lijepo, ne. Zadowoljna sam bojom, samo što mi je kosa preduga!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| kosa | hair | očajan | desperate, terrible |
| suh | dry | ispucan | cracked (<i>here</i> 'split') |
| ošišati se | to have one's hair cut | odvesti | to take (someone somewhere) |
| frizer | hairdresser | skratiti | to shorten |
| napraviti | to make | trajna | permanent wave, perm |
| ofarbati | to colour, dye | | |
| predug | too long | | |

Language points 3

Examples of structures using the future tense

Affirmative

| <i>With pronoun or other preceding word</i> | | | <i>Without preceding word</i> |
|---|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Aux.</i> | <i>Infinitive</i> | | |
| (ja) | ću | doći s vama u kino | doći ću ... |
| (ti) | ćeš | spavati do podne | spavat ćeš ... |
| (ona) | će | baciti pismo na poštu | bacit će ... |

| | | | |
|-------|------|---------------------|----------------|
| (mi) | ćemo | popiti po čašicu | popit ćemo ... |
| (vi) | ćete | mirno čitati novine | čitat ćete ... |
| (oni) | će | gledati televiziju | gledat će ... |

Interrogative

| <i>Aux.</i> | <i>Interr. part.</i> | <i>Emph. pron.</i> | <i>Quest. marker</i> | <i>Aux.</i> | <i>Emph. pron.</i> |
|-------------|----------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| hoće | li | (one) biti cijeli dan tu? | Da li | će | (one) biti ...? |
| hoćete | " | (vi) pomoći oko ručka? | " | ćete | (vi) pomoći? |
| hoće | " | (on) nositi taj šešir? | " | će | (on) nositi ...? |
| hoćemo | " | (mi) kupiti karte? | " | ćemo | (mi) kupiti ...? |
| hoćeš | " | (ti) pričekati kod ulaza? | " | ćeš | (ti) pričekati? |

Note: The alternative structure: **da li** + verb may be used to introduce a question in spoken Croatian.

Negative

| <i>Aux.</i> | <i>Refl. part.</i> | <i>Emph. pron.</i> | |
|-------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| neće | se | (oni) | dugo zadržati |
| nećemo | | (mi) | stići na vrijeme |
| nećeš | | (ti) | sjediti na suncu |
| neće | se | (on) | uskoro vratiti |
| neću | | (ja) | više pušiti |

Negative interrogative

| <i>Aux.</i> | <i>Int. part.</i> | <i>Emph. pron.</i> | <i>Neg. quest. marker</i> | <i>Aux.</i> | <i>Emph. pron.</i> |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| nećete | li | (vi) sjesti do nas? | Zar | nećete | (vi) sjesti ...? |
| neću | " | (ja) poći s njima? | " | neću | (ja) poći ...? |
| neće | " | (ona) pročitati pismo? | " | neće | (ona) pročitati ...? |
| nećeš | " | (ti) platiti taksi? | " | nećeš | (ti) platiti ...? |
| nećemo | " | (mi) probati gljive? | " | nećemo | (mi) probati ...? |
| neće | " | (one) namjestiti krevet? | " | neće | (one) namjestiti ...? |

Exercise 2

- (a) Take the first three texts of **Priča našeg vremena** and write them out, putting all the verbs in the future.
- (b) Answer the following questions in the affirmative:

1 Hoće li Alan i Nora putovati u Split?

2 ALAN: Hoćemo li naći smještaj?

MARIJA: _____

3 MARIJA: Hoćete li poći na Brač?

ALAN: _____

4 NORA: Hoću li morati nositi šešir?

MARIJA: _____

5 Hoće li Alan lako podnositi vrućinu?

- (c) Answer these questions in the negative:

1 Hoće li Slavko i Marija poći s njima?

2 ALAN: Nećeš valjda sjediti na suncu?

NORA: _____

3 SLAVKO: Hoćete li dugo biti u Splitu?

ALAN: _____

4 NORA: Hoću li moći hodati po suncu?

MARIJA: _____

5 NORA: Hoćemo li imati problema sa smještajem?

SLAVKO: _____

- (d) Make these statements into questions:

1 Ja ću ići u kino.

2 On će biti kod kuće cijeli dan.

3 Oni će kupiti karte za vlak.

4 Gledat ću televiziju navečer.

5 Ići ćemo na tržnicu.

6 Otputovat ćete rano ujutro.

7 Sjedit ćemo u hladu.

8 Nosit će šešir i sunčane naočale.

9 Ostat ćemo u Splitu tjedan dana.

10 Pit ću sok.

- (e)[†] Write the verbs in brackets in the future tense:

Petar se sprema za ljetovanje. Odlučio je najprije otići na planinarenje, a onda na more. Najprije _____ (morati) spakirati stvari za kampiranje; šator, vreću za spavanje, kuhalo ..., a onda _____ (pakirati) laganu ljetnu odjeću. Petar _____ (ne putovati) sam. S njim _____ (ići) i njegov prijatelj Ivan.

_____ (krenuti) najprije vlakom u Rijeku, odakle _____ (se voziti) autobusom do Donje Klade. Od tamo _____ (početi) hodati do planinarskog doma 'Zavižan' na Velebitu. _____ (provesti) 5 dana na planinarenju, a onda _____ (sići) na obalu gdje ___ ih _____ (čekati) grupa prijatelja i s njima _____ (ići) na otok Rab. Na Rabu _____ (kampirati) tjedan dana.

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| kuhalo | stove |
| lagan | light (weight) |
| najprije | first of all |
| planinarenje | climbing, mountaineering |
| planinarski dom | mountain hut |
| šator | tent |
| vreća za spavanje | sleeping bag |

Reading passage



Priča našeg vremena (12)

The director of the firm explains the management structure. What does Mark hope to be able to see? Which factory has he already seen? How many local offices are there? What did Mark and the director arrange?

Danas je ravnatelj objasnio da i u drugim gradovima Hrvatske tvrtka ima svoje ogranke. Sjedište tvrtke je naravno u Zagrebu, a ima još dvije velike tvornice (s Jasnom sam već bio u jednoj, blizu Karlovca), i nadam se da ću imati prilike da vidim još neke ogranke tvrtke. Poslije toga dolazi pet mjesnih ureda, koji se uglavnom bave kupnjom sirovine na terenu. Svaka tvornica ima svog upravitelja, a svaki mjesni ured svog šefa neposredno odgovornog glavnom ravnatelju u Zagrebu. Trebam se dogovoriti s Jasnom što će mi moći pokazati dok sam ovdje.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| baviti se | to be concerned with | kupnja | purchase |
| na terenu | locally, in the field | mjesni | municipal, local |
| odgovoran | answerable, responsible to | neposredno | directly |
| sjedište | head office | ogranak | branch, division |
| upravitelj | manager | prilika | opportunity |
| | | tvornica | factory |

Exercise 3

(a) Complete the following dialogue:

At the Putnik travel agent's

SLUŽ BENIK: Dobar dan, izvolite.

VI: _____

SLUŽ BENIK: Kako ćete putovati u Dubrovnik?

VI: _____

SLUŽ BENIK: Možete putovati autobusom ili avionom.

VI: _____

SLUŽ BENIK: Vlakom možete ići do Ploča, onda autobusom.

VI: _____

SLUŽ BENIK: Preporučujem vam zrakoplov. Kada želite otputovati?

VI: _____

SLUŽ BENIK: Prekosutra ima dva mjesta na poslijepodnevnom letu.¹

VI: _____

SLUŽ BENIK: Dobro. Na koje ime, molim?

VI: _____

SLUŽ BENIK: Sad ću vam pripremiti karte.

1 let 'flight'(b)[†] Translate into Croatian:

I must make plans for (about) the holiday. I want to travel to Croatia at the beginning of June.¹ I shall visit friends in Zagreb. I'll stay a few days with them. Then I'll go to Split. I think I'll travel by train. I like the train and you can see a lot through the window. It will be hot, but that won't be difficult for me. I like the heat. I shall wear a hat all the time. Then I'll go to Hvar. I shall reserve a private room near the sea. Hvar is a very beautiful island. I've already² been there several times³ and I know that I love it.

1 početkom lipnja; 2 već; 3 više puta(c)[†] Rewrite each pair of sentences using a linking word to make a single sentence:

1 Neće sada doći. Kasno je.

2 Bit će hladno na vrhu brda. Vidik je divan.

3 Ručat ćemo. Vi dođete.

4 Nije čuo vijesti. Ne gleda televiziju.

5 Možete sjediti vani. Želite.

(d) Select the appropriate second half to make complete sentences:

Ako želite,

reći ću mu da ste zvali.

Kad vidim Marka,

kad završim sve poslove.

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Dat ću knjige studentima | ako idemo autom. |
| Ići ću na godišnji odmor | jer ih imam previše. |
| Hoćeš li ići s nama na more | ja ću kupiti sve u prodavaonici. |

(e) Rewrite the following schedule in the future tense:

Plan putovanja po Istri

PETAK

Polazimo u 7 sati iz Zagreba.
 Nalazimo se u 6:45 na Glavnom kolodvoru.
 Putujemo 3 sata do Rijeke.
 Na putu stojimo u Karlovcu i razgledavamo grad.
 U Rijeci ručamo u restoranu 'Opatija'.
 Cijeli dan smo u Rijeci.
 Noćimo u hotelu 'Kontinental'.

SUBOTA

Polazimo iz Rijeke u 7 sati.
 Idemo u gradove Pula i Rovinj.
 Spavamo u Rovinju.

NEDJELJA

Polazimo natrag u Zagreb u 7 sati.
 Na putu razgledavamo gradove Hum i Grožnjan.
 Dolazimo u Zagreb navečer u 20:00 sati.
 Cijena aranžmana uključuje polupansion (doručak i večera). Ako želite puni pansion, morate platiti 10% više.

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (12)

The girls are sitting, listening to music and waiting. Why does Vesna feel so bad? What does Mara want to know? Does Maja intend to tell Ivo that she was at Vesna's that evening?

- Jao, Maro, ovo je posljednji put što ti činim uslugu!
- Nije valjda! Je li ti zbilja bilo jako neugodno?
- Ne jako, nego strašno! Što će sad Mate misliti o meni?
- Objasniti ću mu da sam ja kriva. Ne odmah, razumije se. Ali jednog dana. Je li Ivo pitao hoću li ja biti kod tebe?

- Nije, mislim da mu to nije palo na pamet.
- I bolje da nije.
- Je li, Maro, nećeš to valjda skrivati od njega?
- Neću, naravno. Izgleda da nemaš mnogo povjerenja u mene.
- Nije istina. Samo ne znam što kaniš.
- Ne znam ni ja, pravo da ti kažem. Ali ti mogu reći da od svega srca želim da Mate dođe večeras.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| istina | truth | jao | help! (expression of distress) |
| kaniti (imp.) | to intend | | |
| nije istina | it's not true | pasti na pamet | to occur to |
| posljednji | last someone | | |
| povjerenje | trust | pravo da ti kažem | to tell you the truth |
| put | time | razumije se | it goes without saying |
| skrivati (imp.) | to hide | | |
| srce | heart | strašan | terrible |
| usluga | service, favour | | |

13

U kazalištu

At the theatre

Dialogue 2

In this unit we will look at:

- ordinal numbers: first, second etc.
- periods of time
- dates
- days of the week
- time of day

Dialogue 1



Idemo u kazalište

We are going to the theatre

Slavko and Marija suggest an evening at the theatre. Why would Nora prefer to go to a play rather than a concert? Who is the author of 'U agoniji'? Are theatres in Zagreb normally open through the summer? Where does Nora want to sit? Will they be in Dubrovnik in time for the Summer Festival?

MARIJA: Koji je danas datum?

ALAN: Danas je ponedjeljak, dvadeset drugi kolovoza.

MARIJA: Pitam jer želim vidjeti što se daje u kazalištu. Želimo vas večeras odvesti na neku predstavu. Ili možda više volite koncerte?

NORA: Ne, za nas je bolje ići u kazalište zbog jezika.

SLAVKO: Tako smo i mi mislili. Dakle, što se daje, Marija?

MARIJA: Davat će se 'Hamlet iz Mrduše Donje'. To je izvrsna drama, ali na žalost premijera je tek početkom rujna.

SLAVKO: Ima li nešto od Krleže?

MARIJA: Baš ima, daje se 'U agoniji'.

ALAN: Čuo sam za Krležu. Je li još živ?

SLAVKO: Nije, umro je krajem prosinca 1982, a rođen je 1893.

ALAN: Zanima me drama velikog hrvatskog pisca.

NORA: I mene. Hvala lijepo na prijedlogu.

SLAVKO: Onda dobro. Imamo sreće jer je ovo izvanredna predstava: kazališta su inače zatvorena preko ljeta. Ja ću sad otići po karte. Gdje više volite sjediti, u parketu ili u loži?

NORA: Po mogućnosti u parketu, ne preblizu, recimo u desetom ili dvanaestom redu.

MARIJA: Na žalost u Dubrovnik ćete stići nakon Ljetnih igara. Baš čitam da su ove godine jako uspješno gostovali Zagrebački solisti. A predstavu 'Hamleta' na Lovrijencu uvijek vrijedi gledati.



Hrvatsko narodno kazalište

NORA: Morat ćemo se vratiti druge godine! Posebno želim gledati neke narodne plesove.

MARIJA: Možda se još uvijek daje 'Moreška' u Korčuli. Pokušajte je pogledati ako imate prilike.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|--|----------------------|
| bolje (comp. of dobro) | better | datum | date |
| | | deseti | tenth |
| dvanaesti | twelfth | gostovati (imp. gostujem) | to perform on |
| imamo sreće | we're in luck | | tour |
| inače | otherwise | izvanredan, -dna | extra, special |
| karta | ticket | loža | box (in the theatre) |
| Ljetne igre (Dubrovačke) | Dubrovnik Summer Festival | | |
| | | Moreška | 'Moorish' dance |
| | | najviše (superl. of mного) | most |
| nakon (+ gen.) | after | | |
| narodni ples | national, folk dance | odvesti (pf. odvedem) | to take |
| parket | stalls (theatre) | pisac (gen. pisca) | writer |
| po mogućnosti | if possible | početak | beginning |
| ponedjeljak | Monday | poseban, -bna | special |
| posebno | particularly | preblizu | too close |
| predstava | performance | premijera | first night, opening |
| prijedlog | proposal | | |
| prosinac | December | roditi se (pf.) | to be born |
| rođen | born | rujan | September |
| tek | only, not until | umrijeti (pf. umrem) | to die |
| uspješan, -šna | successful | | |
| više voljeti | to prefer (lit. 'to like more') | živ | alive |

Language point 1*Ordinal numbers*

These are very straightforward: all are regular definite adjectives.

| | |
|----------|--|
| 1st | prvi, prva, prvo |
| 2nd | drugi, druga, drugo |
| 3rd | treći, treća, treće |
| 4th | četvrti, četvrta, četvrto |
| 5th–99th | peti, peta, peto – devedeset deveti, devedeset deveta, devedeset deveto |

Ordinal numbers are formed by adding **-i** (m.), **-a** (f.), **-o** (n.) to the cardinal:

| | |
|-------|---|
| 5th | peti, peta, peto |
| 11th | jedanaesti, jedanaesta, jedanaesto |
| 20th | dvadeseti |
| 21st | dvadeset prvi |
| 99th | devedeset deveti |
| 100th | stoti, stota, stoto |
| 200th | dvjestoti |
| 999th | devetsto devedeset deveti |

Note: In compound numbers only the last element is declined:

Dubrovačke ljetne igre su se zatvorile dvadeset petog kolovoza.
The Dubrovnik Summer Festival closed on 25 August.

Two tourists meet in the travel agent's in Zagreb.

A: Jeste li prvi put u Zagrebu?

B: Jesam, a vi?

A: Daleko od toga! Ovo mi je peti put!

B: Ja sam već treći put u Hrvatskoj, a ranije nisam bio u Zagrebu.

A: A ja dolazim svake godine na more. Ovo mi je sigurno deseti put da sam u Hrvatskoj!

daleko od toga far from it **ranije** earlier, before

Exercise 1[†]

Translate the following sentences into Croatian:

- The room is on the second floor.
- The post office is round the first corner on the left.
- This is his¹ fifth book.
- The bathroom is the third door on the right.
- Is this your¹ first dinner in Dalmatia?

¹ Use dative of pronoun.

Language point 2

Vocabulary building: time 1

Periods of time

| | |
|---------------|---|
| dan | day |
| sat | hour (irreg. gen. pl. sati) |
| tjedan | week |
| mjesec | month (irreg. gen. pl. mjeseci) |
| godina | year |

Jedan dan ima dvadeset četiri sata, jedan tjedan ima sedam dana, jedan mjesec ima četiri tjedna, jedna godina ima dvanaest mjeseci ili tristo šezdeset pet dana.

Dates

Note: The names of the days of the week and months are not capitalized.

Days of the week (either Sunday or Monday may be counted as the first day):

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------------|----------|
| nedjelja | Sunday | četvrtak | Thursday |
| ponedjeljak | Monday | petak | Friday |
| utorak | Tuesday | subota | Saturday |
| srijeda | Wednesday | | |

Months. Croatian uses Slavonic names:

| | | |
|-----------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| January | siječanj | u siječnju |
| February | veljača | u veljači |
| March | ožujak | u ožujku |
| April | travanj | u travnju |
| May | svibanj | u svibnju |
| June | lipanj | u lipnju |
| July | srpanj | u srpnju |
| August | kolovoz | u kolovožu |
| September | rujan | u rujnu |
| October | listopad | u listopadu |
| November | studen | u studenom¹ |

December

prosinac

u prosincu

1 **u studenom** has an adjectival ending because it is derived from an adjective.

Koji je danas datum?

What is the date today?

Danas je ponedjeljak, prvi siječnja.

Today is Monday, 1 January.

A further, less frequent, possibility is to use the ordinal numerals for the appropriate month: **Danas je ponedjeljak prvi prvoga.**

Seasons

proljeće

spring

ljet

summer

jesen

autumn

zima

winter

Exercise 2

(a) Write out the following sentences in full:

- 1 Danas je utorak (22, kolovoz).
- 2 Jučer je bio petak (15, srpanj).
- 3 Sutra će biti srijeda (8, svibanj).
- 4 Prekjučer je bila subota (28, lipanj).
- 5 Prekosutra će biti nedjelja (11, veljača).
- 6 Prije tri dana bio je četvrtak (6, ožujak).
- 7 Za pet dana će biti ponedjeljak (25, prosinac).

(b) Read your horoscope (see facing page) and write out the date of your birthday:

Što ste po horoskopu?

‘What is your star sign?’

Language point 3

Expressions of time

‘On Monday’. etc. is expressed by **u** + accusative: **u ponedjeljak**, **u srijedu**. Other dates on which an event occurs are expressed by the genitive:

Stigli smo četvrtog kolovoza.

We arrived on 4 August.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------------|
| TJEDNI HOROSKOPTJEDNI HOROSKOP | |
| VODENJAK | LAV |

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>(21. siječnja do 19. veljače) LJUBAV: Obiteljski život je lijep. Vi ste zadovoljni. POSAO: Vi ste odlučili promijeniti posao. ZDRAVLJE: Poboljšanje.</p> | <p>ZDRAVLJE: Mali problemi. (23. srpnja do 22. kolovoza) LJUBAV: U obitelji je sve harmonično. POSAO: Financije su stabilne. ZDRAVLJE: Dobro.</p> |
| <p>RIBE (20. veljače do 21. ožujka) LJUBAV: Nove osobe, nove ljubavi. POSAO: Novi poslovi, novi ljudi. ZDRAVLJE: Dobro.</p> | <p>DJEVICA (23. kolovoza do 22. rujna) nade. LJUBAV: Ostali ste sami, ali ima POSAO: Posao je dobar. Vi ste zadovoljni. ZDRAVLJE: Odlično.</p> |
| <p>OVAN (22. ožujka do 20. travnja) LJUBAV: Želite izlaziti i družiti se. Upoznat ćete puno prijatelja. POSAO: Ide vam dobro. Imat ćete puno posla sljedeći tjedan. ZDRAVLJE: Dobro.</p> | <p>VAGA (23. rujna do 22. listopada) LJUBAV: Vaša veza je stabilna. POSAO: Vaš posao postaje dosadan. Želite naći novi posao.</p> |
| <p>BIK (21. travnja do 21. svibnja) LJUBAV: Možda ćete upoznati jednu novu osobu. POSAO: Kriza na poslu. Vaš šef vas ne razumije. ZDRAVLJE: Loše.</p> | <p>ŠKORPION ZDRAVLJE: Dobro. (23. listopada do 21. studenog) LJUBAV: Vaša veza s partnerom je stabilna. POSAO: Izabrali ste dobro zanimanje. ZDRAVLJE: Vrlo dobro.</p> |
| <p>BLIZANCI (21. svibnja do 21. lipnja) LJUBAV: Provest ćete vikend u lijepom društvu. POSAO: Morat ćete štedjeti radnu energiju. Bit će vam dobro da se družite s prijateljima i bavite sportom.</p> | <p>STRIJELAC (22. studenog do 21. prosinca) LJUBAV: Jedna će osoba pokušati ući u vaš život. POSAO: Posla će biti preko glave.</p> |
| <p>RAK ZDRAVLJE: Poboljšanje. (22. lipnja do 22. srpnja) LJUBAV: Rakovi su danas sretni i veseli. Svi ih vole. POSAO: Na poslu nije tako dobro. Imate puno posla.</p> | <p>JARAC ZDRAVLJE: Loše. (22. prosinca do 20. siječnja) LJUBAV: Uživajte biti sami jer ste se umorili od prolaznih veza. POSAO: Posao vam je u opasnosti. ZDRAVLJE: Odlično.</p> |

Moja kći ima rođendan drugog rujna.

My daughter's birthday is 2 September.

Other expressions of time follow a similar pattern:

Sljedećeg dana su ustali jako rano.

They got up very early (on) the next day.

Tog tjedna sam zaista zaposlen.

I'm really busy that week.

Te godine će biti velika proslava.

There will be a great celebration that year.

Duration of time is generally expressed by the accusative:

Pokušavam te dobiti telefonom cijeli dan.

I've been trying to get you on the phone all day.

Provest ćemo mjesec dana u Zagrebu.

We shall spend a month in Zagreb.

Oni su stanovali godinu dana u ulici do naše, a nismo ih upoznali.

They lived in the next street to ours for a year, but we didn't meet them.

Habitual events, occurring on specific days of the week, are expressed by the instrumental:

Subotom uvijek nekamo idemo u šetnju.

We always go somewhere for a walk on Saturdays.

Obično idu u klub utorkom.

They usually go to the club on Tuesdays.

Exercise 3[†]

(a) Translate the following sentences into Croatian:

- 1 They will come on Monday.
- 2 You will stay until Saturday, won't you?
- 3 On Wednesdays I play football.
- 4 We are going to the cinema on Friday.
- 5 What are you doing on Sunday?
- 6 I always phone¹ (my) mother on Saturdays.
- 7 We go for a walk with the children on Sundays.
- 8 They are coming to dinner on Wednesday.
- 9 She arrived early on Thursday.
- 10 He has invited you to the theatre on Saturday.

1 **javljati se** (imp.)

(b) Choose the most appropriate form to complete the sentences:

1 Poznajemo se _____ .

- (a) godina (b) godinu dana (c) godina dana

- 2 Idemo na izlete _____ .
 (a) nedjelja (b) nedjelju (c) nedjeljom
- 3 Moj rođendan je _____ .
 (a) petnaestog travnja (b) petnaesti travanj
 (c) petnaesti travnja
- 4 Imam sastanak _____ .
 (a) petak (b) u petak (c) na petak
- 5 Naš let za Split je _____ .
 (a) sljedeći tjedan (b) tjedan (c) sljedećim tjednom

Reading passage 1

Priča našeg vremena (13)

Mark is making plans for the rest of his stay in Croatia. How much longer does Mark have at his disposal? What does he want to do? Where will they start their trip? When will they reach Karlovac?

Danas po povratku iz ureda, sjeo sam s Jasnom u hotelski bar da se dogovorimo o mom daljnjem boravku. Imam još dva tjedna na raspolaganju. Želim se upoznati s radom svakog ogranka, pa smo odlučili da ćemo prekosutra, dakle petog listopada, krenuti autom u obilazak cijele mreže. Počet ćemo na sjeveru i obići ćemo sva istočna područja. Onda ćemo, oko desetog, krenuti prema zapadu, i vratit ćemo se južnim putem. Stići ćemo sedamnaestog u Karlovac.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| istočni (adj.) | eastern | južni | southern |
| krenuti (pf. krenem) | to set off | mreža na raspolaganju | at (one's) disposal net, network |
| obići | to visit, go (pf. obidem) | obilazak | visit (going round round) |
| po povratku | on (our) return | područje | region, area |
| vratiti se (pf.) | to return | | |

Language point 4

Vocabulary building: time 2

Time of day

| | |
|---------------------------|---------|
| jutro, prije podne | morning |
| podne | noon |

poslije podne

afternoon

večer

evening

noć

night

ponoć

midnight

There is also a useful series of adverbs:

jutros this morning

večeras this evening

noćas tonight

sinoć last night

Koliko je sati?

What time is it?

Sada je jedan sat.

It's now one o'clock.

dva sata

2 o'clock

pet sati (gen. pl.)

5 o'clock

devet sati i pet minuta

5 past 9

deset i petnaest

quarter past 10

deset i četvrt

quarter past 10

jedanaest i pol/trideset pol dvanaest¹

half past 11



¹ Care must be taken by those accustomed to English 'half twelve', which in Croatian would mean 11.30.

Znate li točno vrijeme?

Have you got the right time?



| | |
|------------------------------|--------------|
| dvadeset pet do jedan | 25 to 1 |
| petnaest do dva | quarter to 2 |
| četvrt do dva | quarter to 2 |
| deset do tri | 10 to 3 |

Reading passage 2



Read the following short play and see how much you can understand. There is a translation in the 'Key to exercises', pp. 319–20, but try not to look at it until you feel confident that you have understood everything.

Dubravko Mihanović: Bijelo

LIKOVİ: Majstor, 60 godina; Mali, 20 godina

SCENA: Prazna prostorija ogoljenih zidova. Na lijevom zidu otvoren prozor. Pod pokriven novinskim papirom, prazne boce piva, pepeljara. Po prostoriji ličilački pribor.

VRJEME: Između 8 i 9 ujutro, jednog dana u srpnju.

Majstor i Mali premazuju bojom desni zid. Mali je na ljestvama.

Majstor: Jesi li sinoć gledao?

Mali: Koga?

Majstor: Koga. Naše.

Mali: Tako. Malo.

Majstor: Moraš to gledati.

Mali: Znam.

Majstor: Naši su spori.

Mali: Tko?

Majstor: Naši nogometaši. Kažem da su spori. Danci trče. Puno. Ima ih po cijelom terenu. Znaš o čemu sam razmišljao ...

Mali: O čemu?

Majstor: Vidiš, svi ovi ... sjevernjaci ... Svi puno trče. Pogledaj Dance. Trče. Šveđani?

Trče. Norvežani? Trče. Dobro, za Fince ne znam. Oni baš ne igraju nogomet.

Mali: Ne?

Majstor: E, i sad sam ja mislio - možda oni trče jer je gore hladno. Pa se moraju mićati.

Da se ugriju. I prešlo im je u naviku.

Mali: Može biti.

Majstor: Zato puno trče i kad igraju u gostima. Iz navike.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|---|
| likovi | characters | majstor | workman |
| ogoljen | stripped bare | prostorija | room, space |
| pepeljara | | ashtray | ličilački pribor wall painting tools |
| premazivati (imp. premazujem) | to apply paint | | |
| | | ljestve | ladder |
| preći u naviku | to become a | trčati (imp. trčim) | to run habit |

Bilješka o piscu: Dubravko Mihanović

Rođen 1975. u Zagrebu. Završio Klasičnu gimnaziju, studira dramaturgiju na Akademiji Dramske Umjetnosti. Prva drama 'Pingvini' izvedena u Požegi i koncertno izvedena na 'Mamutu', maloj sceni Dramskog kazališta Gavella u Zagrebu. Urednik drame u časopisu *Plima*.

Exercise 4

(a) Write out the times in the following passage in full:

Radnim danom Bojan ustaje jako rano: u 5.30. Na brzinu se umiva i brije. Oblači se. U 6 doručkuje. Malo jede i izlazi iz kuće u 6.20. Ima točno 13 minuta hoda do autobusne postaje. Autobus polazi u 6.35. Vožnja traje oko 17 minuta, ovisno o prometu. Ako se žuri i ni s kim usput ne razgovara, Bojan stiže na posao u 6.58.

Vozi se dizalom do ureda na 4-om katu, vješa ogrtač iza vrata i u 7.03 već sjedi za radnim stolom.

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| brijati se (imp. brijem se) | to shave | | |
| doručkovati (imp. doručkujem) | to have breakfast | | |
| hod | walk | na brzinu | in haste, quickly |
| oblačiti se (imp.) | to dress | ogrtač | overcoat |
| ovisno (o + loc.) | depending (on) | promet | traffic |
| radni | working | razgovarati (imp.) | to talk, converse |
| trajati (imp. trajem) | to last | | |
| | | umivati se (imp. umijem se) | to wash |

| | |
|-----------------------|---------|
| vješati (imp.) | to hang |
| vožnja | drive |

(b) Write an account of your own daily routine.

Culture point

Traditionally, in most Balkan countries the working day starts very early: at 7 or 8 a.m. This means that people finish work at 2 or 3 p.m. Generally speaking, they do not eat a substantial breakfast. They may have a snack, which can be the equivalent of a light English lunch, in the middle of their morning, but the main meal of the day is lunch, which may be eaten any time between 2 and 4 p.m. when the household has reassembled. Nowadays, however, Croatian working hours are becoming more and more similar to Western European ones.

Exercise 5

Pitanja

- 1 Koji je datum?
- 2 Kamo će Slavko i Marija odvesti Cameronove?
- 3 Zašto Nora misli da je dobro ići u kazalište?
- 4 Daje li se 'Hamlet iz Mrduše Donje'?
- 5 Kad je umro hrvatski pisac Miroslav Krleža?
- 6 Jesu li kazališta u Zagrebu otvorena cijele godine?
- 7 Gdje Nora voli sjediti?
- 8 Hoće li Cameronovi stići u Dubrovnik za vrijeme Ljetnih igara?
- 9 Što Nora naročito želi gledati?
- 10 Što im Marija preporučuje?

Dialogue 3



Ljubavna priča (13)

It was already late, and Mate had not come. Does Mara believe that he is going to come? Does Ankica approve of Vesna's attitude to life? When is Ankica not prepared to take risks? Why does Ankica think that something serious is happening to Mara?

Djevojke su sjedile i slušale glazbu. Bilo je već kasno, a Mate nije dolazio.

- Znam da neće doći, kaže Mara utučenim glasom.
- Možda je tako bolje.
- Jao, Vesna – kaže njihova prijateljica Ankica – ti ništa ne poduzimaš, ništa ne riskiraš. Kakav je to život, bez ikakve opasnosti, ili barem nesigurnosti?
- U redu, priznajem da to može biti dosadno, ali kad su u pitanju tuđi osjećaji, baš neću ništa riskirati.

Zvono. Ankica baca pogled na Maru.

– Sva si blijeda, Maro! S tobom se nešto ozbiljno događa!

Vesna ide otvoriti vrata. Uskoro se čuje Matin glas:

– Baš ti hvala što si se sjetila mene!

– Pa normalno je, kad si ti inače sam, a mi ovdje sjedimo. Izvoli u sobu. Donijet ću kolač koji sam ispekla s Marom.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| b aciti pogled | to glance | b lijed | pale |
| b olje (comp. of dobro) | better | g las | voice |
| | | i nače | otherwise |
| i speći (pf.) | to bake | n esigurnost | uncertainty |
| o pasnost | danger | o sjećaj | feeling |
| p oduzimati (imp.) | to undertake | p riznavati (imp.) | to acknowledge |
| r iskirati (imp.) | to risk | t udi | someone else's; other people's |
| u tučen | depressed | | |
| z vono | bell | | |

14

Pakiranje

Packing

In this unit we will look at:

- the comparative of adjectives
- the comparative of adverbs
- structures with the comparative
- the superlative
- clothes, colours

Dialogue 1

Što treba za put?

What is needed for the journey?

The Camerons are preparing to leave Zagreb. Marija has come to give them a hand. What does Alan say they will put in the smaller case? What is she going to do while Alan packs? What does Marija suggest that Nora wears for travelling?

Alan i Nora se spremaju otputovati iz Zagreba. Odlučili su unajmiti auto. Bit će tako slobodniji, moći će se zaustavljati gdje žele i samo putovanje će biti ugodnije nego u krčatom vlaku. Marija im je došla pomoći.

ALAN: Staviti ćemo sve što trebamo na putu u ovaj manji kofer. Tako nećemo morati sve stalno vaditi iz auta. Molim te da sad napraviš najuži izbor!

NORA: Evo, izvoli. Već sam odvojila neke stvari. Putovat ću u ovoj haljini. Lako se pere i ne gužva se. Nosit ću ove sandale i uzet ću jaknu za svaki slučaj. Mogu valjda vaditi iz auta i onu veću crnu torbu. U nju možemo staviti stvari za noćenje. Dok ti pakiraš, ja mogu još ponešto oprati. Gdje su prljave košulje?

ALAN: Na dnu ormara. Ima i nekoliko čarapa i nešto donjeg rublja. Možeš staviti i kupaće kostime u crnu torbu.

MARIJA: Baš ti je lijepa ova zelena suknja, nisam je ranije vidjela.

NORA: Ne, nisam je dosad nosila u Zagrebu. Mogu i nju poni-jeti na put, jako je zgodna i lijepo ide uz ovu žutu bluzu.

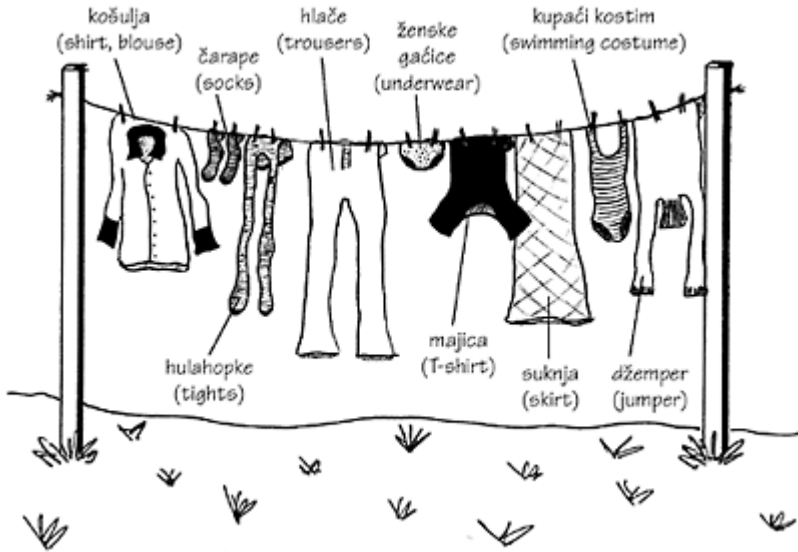
MARIJA: Ali majice su praktičnije za put, kad ne možeš ništa peglati. Zašto ne uzmeš ovu plavu majicu?

NORA: Imaš pravo. Uzet ću i ove lagane ružičaste hlače i crveni džemper, jer će možda biti svježije navečer. Poni-jet ću i hulahop čarape.

ALAN: Nema više mjesta u manjem koferu! Ako nam još nešto zatreba lako ćemo to izvaditi iz većeg. Ništa više ne primam!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|
| bluza | blouse | čarapa | sock, stocking |
| hulahop čarape | tights | crven | red |
| dno | bottom | donje rublje | underclothes |
| dosad | up to now | džemper | jumper |
| gužvati (imp.) | to crumple | hlače (f. pl.) | trousers, slacks |
| izbor | choice | jakna | jacket |
| kreat | crowded | kupaći kostim | swimsuit |
| majica | T-shirt | napraviti (pf.) | to make |
| noćenje | spending the night | odvojiti (pf.) | to separate |
| | | pakiranje | packing |
| pakirati (imp.) | to pack | peglati (imp.) | to iron |
| ponešto | something | praktičan, -čna | practical |
| prati (imp. perem) | to wash | primati (imp.) | to accept, receive |
| | | prljav | dirty |
| ranije (comp. of rano) | earlier | ružičast | pinkish |
| | | staviti (pf.) | to put, place |
| suknja | skirt | unajmiti (pf.) | to hire |
| uzak, uska (užu comp.) | narrow | veći (comp. of velik) | bigger |
| za svaki slučaj | just in case | žut | yellow |



Language point 1

Comparative adjectives

(a) Most comparatives are formed by the addition of the endings **-iji**, **-ija**, **-ije** etc. to the indefinite adjective:

| | |
|---------------|--|
| star | stariji, starija, starije |
| poznat | poznatiji, poznatija, poznatije |
| gladan | gladniji, gladnija, gladnije |

Adjectives ending in **-o** derived from **-l** have these endings added to the **-l** which we have seen returns in oblique cases:

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| mio 'dear' | miliji, milija, milije |
| veseo | veseliji, veselija, veselije |

(b) Other adjectives have the suffix **-ji**, although this is not always obvious: the exact form depends on the final consonant of the indefinite masculine – as we know, certain combinations of letters result in regular consonant changes. Do not be too alarmed, you will soon learn those comparatives which are in frequent use. For a complete list of consonant changes, see 'Grammar summary', 6, p. 302.

| | | | | |
|-------------|--------|---------------|----------|--------------|
| jak | strong | k + j: | č | jači |
| drag | dear | g + j: | ž | draži |
| tih | quiet | h + j: | š | tiši |

| | | | | |
|-------------|-------|---------------|----------|--------------|
| ljut | angry | t + j: | ć | ljući |
| tvrd | hard | d + j: | đ | tvrđi |

If the adjective stem ends in **p, b** or **v**, an **l** is often inserted after the consonant:

| | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------------|
| skup | expensive | skuplji |
| grub | coarse | grublji |

but **lijep ljepši**

Comparative adjectives are declined like regular definite adjectives.

Examples are:

Tko je stariji – Ivo ili Ante?

Who is older – Ivo or Ante?

Ante je stariji, iako je Ivo viši.

Ante is older, although Ivo is taller.

Je li vaša nova kuća novija?

Is your new house newer?

Nije, nego je udobnija i bliža.

No, but it's more comfortable and closer.

I mi sada stanujemo u mirnijoj ulici. Više volim manja mjesta.

We live in a quieter street now as well. I prefer smaller towns.

Imaš li vijesti od svog mladeg brata? Imam, izgleda da mu je bolje: u planinama je zrak svježiji i čistiji nego u dolini.

Have you any news of your younger brother? Yes, he seems to be better: the air in the mountains is fresher and cleaner than in the valley.

Dajte mi bocu tog sladeg vina; skuplje je, ali mi se čini da je ukusnije. Svakako ima ljepšu boju!

Give me a bottle of that sweeter wine; it's more expensive, but it seems tastier. It's certainly a nicer colour!

Exercise 1

Supply the appropriate form of the comparative (* indicates mobile a):

- 1 Onaj auto je star, ali ovaj je ____ .
- 2 Direktor ovog hotela je uljudan*, ali ovaj je ____ .
- 3 Vlak kojim smo putovali bio je spor, ali ovaj je još ____
(**spor** 'slow').
- 4 Ta studentica je ozbiljna, ali čini se da je ova ____ .

- 5 Taj hotel se nalazi u bučnoj ulici, ali je ova još ____
(**bučan*** 'noisy').
- 6 Vodič kojeg su oni imali bio je veseo, ali je ovaj ____
(**vodič** 'guide').
- 7 More je bilo bistro tamo, ali ovdje je još ____
(**bistar*** 'clear').
- 8 Moji stari roditelji su energični, ali tvoji su još ____ .
- 9 Te mlade žene su simpatične, ali ove djevojke su ____ .
- 10 Sela u Dalmaciji su slikovita, ali ova na brdima su ____
(**slikovit** 'picturesque'; **brdo** 'hill').

Language point 2

Comparison of adjectives ending in -ak, -ek, -ok

Most adjectives with these endings drop the final syllable and form the comparative by the addition of **-ji** to the resulting stem:

| | | |
|----------------|-------|---------------|
| blizak | near | bliži |
| kratak | short | kraći |
| dalek | far | dalji |
| dubok | deep | dublji |
| rijedak | rare | rjeđi |
| visok | tall | viši |

Exercise 2†

Supply the correct form of the comparative:

- Moramo poći (**kratak**) putem.
- Možete večerati u (**blizak**) kavani.
- Volim plivati u (**dubok**) moru.
- Navikao sam se penjati po (**visok**) brdima.
- Žele se voziti čamcem oko (**dalek**) otoka.
- Moraš vezati kufer (**jak**) konopcem.
- Spavat ćemo bolje u (**tih**) mjestu.
- Moji roditelji sada stanuju u (**velik**) kući. (comp. **veći**)
- Isplati se rezervirati sobe u malo (**skup**) hotelu.
- Za doručak čaj je bio gorak, ali čini mi se da je kava bila (**gorak**).

Language points 3

Comparison of adverbs

Where the neuter singular of an adjective is used as the adverb, the neuter singular of the comparative is similarly used:

| | | |
|---------|---------|----------------------|
| (jako) | jače | more strongly |
| (lako) | lakše | more easily |
| (blizu) | bliže | more closely |
| (drago) | draže | more dearly |
| (skupo) | skuplje | more expensively |
| (teško) | teže | with more difficulty |
| (rado) | radije | more gladly |

Irregular comparatives

Several common adjectives and adverbs have quite irregular comparative forms:

| | |
|------------------|--|
| dobar | bolji |
| zao 'bad' | gori (used also as comp. of loš 'bad') |
| velik | veći |
| malen | manji |
| mnogo | više |
| malo | manje |

Jeste li naučili sve nove riječi?

Have you learned all the new words?

Manje više.

More or less.

Superlative

The superlative is formed by the addition of the prefix **naj-** to the comparative: **najstariji**, **najbliži**, **najbolje**, **najviše**, **najmanje** etc.

Exercise 3

(a) Turn back to the text about Zagreb in Unit 9 (p. 121). Identify all the superlatives and write out the original form of the adjectives.

(b)† Translate the following sentences into Croatian:

- 1 I prefer travelling by plane, although it's more expensive.
- 2 He wants to send this letter by the quickest way.
- 3 Please give me a smaller meal for the child.
- 4 She will sleep better in a quieter room.
- 5 Have you got (any) larger jumpers?

(c)† Give the comparative or superlative of the adjectives in brackets as appropriate:

- 1 Ben Nevis je _____ (**visok**) vrh Škotske.
- 2 Ove godine nam je _____ (**dobar**) godišnji odmor od prošle godine.
- 3 Moj stan je _____ (**velik**) od tvog.
- 4 Zrakoplov je _____ (**brz**) od auta.
- 5 Atlantik je _____ (**dubok**) od Jadranskog mora.
- 6 Marko je _____ (**pametan**) student na godini.
- 7 Danas je _____ (**lijep**) dan u lipnju.
- 8 Ovo vino je _____ (**skup**) od piva.
- 9 Mi smo _____ (**mali**) grupa studenata.
- 10 Vlakovi u Hrvatskoj su _____ (**jeftin**) od autobusa.

(d)† Compare the following cities and countries:

London je _____ (velik) od Zagreba. New York je _____ (užurban)
od Splita. Split je _____ (prljav) od Zadra. Švicarska je _____ (čist)
od Engleske. London je _____ (prometan*) od Zagreba.

| | | | |
|----------------|---------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| užurban | hurried | prljav | dirty |
| čist | clean | prometan, -tna | full of traffic |

Dialogue 2

Two sisters are arguing about what to take on holiday.

A: Nećeš valjda vući sve ovo sa sobom!

B: Što? Tko mi zabranjuje?

A: Previše je! A osim toga, sve je samo crno ili bijelo!

B: A ti ćeš sad odlučivati o mom ukusu, je li?

A: Smiri se! Samo kažem, malo je tužno bez ijedne druge boje!

B: Hvala na brizi. Ti gledaj svoj posao. Nosi sve dugine boje, ako te je volja. A mene pusti na miru!

Vocabulary

ako te je volja

if you feel like it

briga

concern

| | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|--|-------------------|
| gledati svoj posao | to mind one's own business | duga | rainbow |
| ukus | taste | previše | too much |
| vući (imp. vučem) | to drag | pustiti na miru | to leave in peace |
| | | zabranjivati (imp. zabranjujem) | to forbid |

Language point 4

Vocabulary building

Colours (boje)

Crn 'black' (also used for red wine); **bijel** 'white'; **siv** 'grey'; **smeđ** 'brown'; **žut** 'yellow'; **zelen** 'green'; **plav** 'blue'; **modar** 'dark blue'; **ljubičast** 'mauve'; **crven** 'red'; **ružičast** 'pinkish'; **žutkast** 'yellowish'; **sivkast** 'greyish'

Exercise 4[†]

(a) Translate into Croatian (**Prevedite na hrvatski**)

We are going on holiday on Saturday, the day after tomorrow! We don't want to carry much, so we'll take only the most essential things.¹ I have one small suitcase and one large bag. I shall take trousers and a jumper, because it is sometimes cool in the evening, three dresses, a skirt, two T-shirts, two blouses, shoes, stockings and underwear. (My) husband will take trousers, five shirts, three T-shirts, shorts² and two jumpers. He can carry the swimming costumes and towels.³

1 'essential', use 'necessary' **potreban**; 2 **šorc** (sing.); 3 **ručnik**



(b) Complete the following dialogue with the comparative or superlative forms of adjectives:

ANA: Danas se prvi put nalazim s Markom. Što misliš što ću obući? Ovu _____ (lagan) zelenu haljinu ili plave hlače i bijelu majicu?

IVA: Danas je _____ (hladno) nego što je bilo jučer. Mislim da je _____ (dobro) da obučeš nešto _____ (toplo).

ANA: Imaš pravo. Hoću li obući onda crnu dugu suknju i crvenu majicu ili ovu _____ (kratak) ljubičastu suknju i bijelu košulju?

IVA: _____ (Dobro) ti stoji ljubičasta boja nego crna. U crnoj boji izgledaš _____ (staro).

ANA: Eh, dobro. Ti imaš _____ (puno) ukusa od mene.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------|------|
| obući (pf. obučem) | to put on (clothes) | dug | long |
| | | nego | than |
| izgledati (imp.) | to appear | star | old |

Language points 5

Comparison to an object or phrase

When two objects are compared the preposition **od** + genitive is generally used:

Moj brat je stariji od tebe.

My brother is older than you.

Zrakoplov je skuplji od vlaka.

The plane is more expensive than the train.

Tvoj sin je viši od tvog muža, zar ne?

Your son is taller than your husband, isn't he?

But when the comparison involves a whole phrase the conjunction **nego** must be used:

Kasnije je nego što sam mislila.

It's later than I thought (it was).

Avionom se putuje brže nego vlakom.

It's quicker to travel by plane than (it is to travel) by train.

Note: **nego** may also be used instead of **od** + genitive:

**On je stariji nego ti.
Tvoj sin je viši nego tvoj muž.**

Structures with the comparative

Notice the following structures:

sve + comparative ‘more and more, increasingly’

Svakim danom *sve bolje* vladate našim jezikom.
You speak our language *better and better* with each day.

Moram priznati da *sve rjeđe* pišem pisma.
I must confess that I write (letters) *less and less*.

Vrijeme *sve brže* prolazi!
Time passes increasingly quickly!

što + comparative ‘as ... as possible’

Dodite nam opet *što prije*!
Come again as soon as you can!

Sjedi *što bliže* meni!
Sit as near me as possible!

Rekao je da će pisati *što češće*.
He said that he would write *as often as possible*.

Reading passage



Priča našeg vremena (14)

Mark has started packing for his trip round the firm's branches. What did Mark discover when he started packing? Why did he decide to buy more shirts? When will he go shopping? What does he have to wear to the formal lunch with representatives of the Chamber of Commerce?

Počeo sam se spremati za put i ustanovio sam da nisam od kuće ponio dovoljno košulja. Bit će teško bilo što izglacati dok smo na putu, pa mislim da će biti pametno da kupim još par košulja koje se mogu oprati i odmah osušiti. Kako veći dućani rade do osam navečer, ići ću sutra poslije službenog ručka sa zastupnicima Gospodarske komore. Za taj sastanak ću morati obući sako i kravatu – što je neugodno, jer sam se potpuno odviknuo u nefor-malnoj sredini ‘našeg’ ureda.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| bilo što | anything | Gospodarska | Chamber of Commerce |
| izglačati (pf.) | to iron | komora | |
| kravata | tie | kupiti | to buy |
| obući (pf.) | to put on (of clothes) | (pf. kupovati, kupujem | |
| obučem) | | imp.) | |
| odviknuti se (pf.) | to get unused to, lose the habit | oprati (pf. operem) | to wash |
| osušiti (pf.) | to dry | pametno | clever, sensible |
| par | a couple, a few (+ gen. pl.) | potpuno | completely |
| | | sako | jacket |
| sastanak | meeting | služben | official |
| sredina | surroundings, milieu | ustanoviti (pf.) | to establish |
| | | zastupnik | representative |

Exercise 5

(a) Complete the dialogue

You are in a department store, buying a jumper for a relative.

PRODAVAČICA: Izvolite, mogu li vam pomoći?

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Trebate li laganiji* ili topliji džemper?

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Želite li neku posebnu boju?

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Imamo samo ove zelene džempere od sintetike.

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Imamo lijepe vunene džempere u plavoj ili crvenoj boji.

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Trebate li veći ili manji broj?

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Možda će vam odgovarati ovaj plavi.

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Izvolite. Platite na blagajni molim.

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Nema na čemu. Do viđenja.

 lagan lightweight

(b) Describe the contents of a large suitcase you are taking on holiday, giving the colour of each item.

(c)† Choose the most appropriate word:

1 Zrakoplov je brži _____ auta.

(a) od (b) nego (c) iz

2 Petar je _____ u našem uredu.

(a) zaposleniji (b) zaposleno (c) najzaposleniji

3 Želi napraviti _____ više posla da ne mora raditi u subotu.

(a) naj (b) sve (c) što

4 On je _____ bolji kuhar.

(a) sve (b) što (c) naj

5 Moj stan je _____ od tog stana.

(a) svjetliji (b) najsvjetliji (c) svijetao

(d) Find the adjectives in the comparative and superlative forms and write their original form:

OGLASI I REKLAME

Naša putnička agencija 'Sunce' nudi najbolju ponudu i najraznovrsniji izbor putovanja za ljetovanja i zimovanja.

Najveći broj odredišta. Skijanje na najvišim vrhovima Alpa.

Ljetovanje u najljepšim uvalama Jadrana.

U našem restoranu ćete naći najveći izbor jela.

Naša kuhinja je zanimljivija od drugih.

Naša jela su ukusnija.

Naš butik 'Ana' u Radničkom dolu 23 nudi najkvalitetniju robu po najpovoljnijim cijenama.

Ova ponuda vrijedi do kraja kolovoza. Bolje je da dođete što prije.

Dialogue 3



Ljubavna priča (14)

As soon as Mate came in, an awkward silence fell among the girls. Where did Mara suggest he sit? How did Mara look? What kind of mood was Mate in? What did they do all evening?

Čim je Mate ušao, nastala je neugodna tišina među djevojkama.

- Dobro, mlade dame, ponudite mi da sjednem!
- Oprosti, Mate, baš smo nepristojne! Dođi ovamo, molim te, i sjedni do Ankice na divan. Bit će ti ugodnije nego na tom stolcu. Mara je ustala s divana da mu ponudi svoje mjesto.
- Nemoj ustajati, ima mjesta za sve.

Mate je sjeo, sasvim blizu Mare, koja je još uvijek bila neobično blijeda.

- Hajde – rekla je veselo Ankica – pričaj nam što si radio danas. Sviđa li ti se još uvijek Dubrovnik?
- Naravno – počeo je Mate, s namjerom da svoje riječi kao obično okrene na šalu. Onda se predomislio i ušutio.

Cijela večer je prošla ugodno, ali nekako tiho i potišteno.

Slušali su glazbu, pili pivo, a na kraju su čak i zapjevali. Ali pjevali su uglavnom tužne bosanske sevdalinka.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| dodi ovamo | come over here | čak | even |
| namjera | intention | nastati (pf.) | to begin, occur |
| nepristojan | impolite | okrenuti (pf.) | to make a joke |
| ponuditi (pf.) | to offer | na šalu | |
| potišten | subdued | predomisliti se (pf.) | to change one's mind |
| sevdalinka | (Bosnian) | | |
| | love song | stolac | chair |
| tih | quiet | tišina | silence |
| ušutjeti (pf. ušutim) | to fall silent | zapjevati (pf.) | to break into song |

15

Polazak

Departure

In this unit we will look at:

- demonstrative pronouns: 'this', 'that'
- possessive adjectives
- driving, route planning

Dialogue 1

Cameronovi polaze na put

The Camerons set off on their journey

The day before the Camerons set off, Marija telephones to ask whether they can take her nephew with them. What was Marija's brother supposed to do that day? What does she ask Nora and Alan? How old is Ranko? What road should they take out of Zagreb? Where does Marija suggest they spend the night on the way?

MARIJA: Nora, imam veliku molbu. Moj brat je trebao danas odvesti mog malog nećaka, Ranka, k baki u Zadar. Međutim, žena mu se dosta teško razboljela. Odveli su je u bolnicu. Sada nema nikoga da čuva Ranka. Trebamo naći nekoga tko će ga odvesti k baki. Mislila sam na vas.

NORA: Bez daljnjega, jako rado. Nemamo nikakvog određenog plana pa ga lako možemo odvesti do Zadra. Samo nam trebaš pokazati na karti kojim je putem najbolje ići. Koliko godina ima dječak?

MARIJA: Sedam. Mali je dobar i pristojan. Mislim da vam neće biti teško s njim.

Na dan polaska, Slavko i Marija su rano došli u hotel s Rankom. Sjeli su za stol i Slavko je izvadio kartu.

SLAVKO: Ovak, vi ćete ići iz Zagreba ovim putem koji vodi za Karlovac.

ALAN: Kakav je put?

SLAVKO: Izvrstan, jer je autocesta. Plaća se cestarina, ali nije skupa. Južno od Karlovca su brjegovi Gorskog kotara. Zimi je taj put malo neugodan.

NORA: Nećemo žuriti, pa ćemo se vjerojatno zaustaviti negdje na putu. Koje je zgodno mjesto?

MARIJA: Ako imate vremena da prenoćite na Plitvicama, to se zaista isplati. Ali vam treba barem jedan dan za obilazak jezera.

ALAN: Molim te, zabilježi ovdje točno kome trebamo predati maloga, i eventualno javiti ako se odlučimo zadržati dan dva na putu.



Vodopad na Plitvičkim jezerima

Vocabulary

autocesta motorway, expressway

barem at least

bez daljnijega it goes without saying, of course

bolnica hospital

brijeg hill

cestarina road toll

čuvati (imp.) to look after

dosta enough

eventualno perhaps

isplati se it's worth

jezero lake

međutim however

molba request

obilazak visit, looking round

određen specific

polazak departure

prenoćiti (pf.) to spend the night

pristojan, -jna polite
razboljeti se to be taken ill

zabilježiti (pf.) to make a note

(pf. **razbolim**)

žuriti (se) (imp.) to hurry

Language point 1

Demonstrative pronouns

We have already come across the demonstrative pronouns **taj** and **ovaj** in the course of the units, in several different cases. Here is the declension of **taj** in full.

| | <i>Singular</i> | | | <i>Plural</i> | | |
|--------|-------------------|---------------|------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| | <i>m.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>f.</i> | <i>m.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>f.</i> |
| nom. | taj | to | ta | ti | ta | te |
| gen. | tog(a) | tog(a) | te | tih | tih | tih |
| dat. | tom(u) | tom(u) | toj | tim(a) | tim(a) | tim(a) |
| acc. | tog(a)/taj | to | tu | te | ta | te |
| loc. | tom(e) | tom(e) | toj | tim | tim | tim |
| instr. | tim(e) | tim(e) | tom | tim | tim | tim |

ovaj 'this' and **onaj** ('that,' i.e. further than **taj**) are both declined on this model.

Exercise 1

(a) Put the demonstrative pronouns into the correct case:

1 Treba li poći (**ova**) ulicom?

2 Da, skrenite lijevo kod (**taj**) semafora.¹

3 Prolazite pokraj (**ta**) velike zgrade.

4 Onda produžite² (**ovaj**) putem do (**on**) križanja.³

5 Na (**taj**) putu ćete vidjeti većinu⁴ (**one**) novih kuća.

6 Vidite li (**ona**) veliku novu zgradu?

7 Muzej se nalazi na (**taj**) malom trgu.

8 Gdje je (**taj**) put na (**ova**) karti?

9 Možete stići do katedrale (**ove**) malim uličicama.

10 Telefonska govornica se nalazi na kraju (**ona**) ulica.

1 **semafor** traffic lights; 2 **produžiti** to continue; 3 **križanje** crossroads; 4 **većina** majority

(b)†Choose the most appropriate demonstrative pronoun:

U knjižari

A: Molim vas _____ autokartu.

B: Želite li _____ manju u mjerilu 1:25 000 ili _____ veću?

A: Koliko košta _____ manja?

B: _____ manja košta 35 kuna, a veća 50 kuna.

A: Uzet ću _____ manju, hvala.

U butiku

A: Koliko košta _____ crveni džemper?

B: Mislite li na _____ svijetlo crveni ili _____ tamno crveni?

A: Na _____ svijetlo crveni. Mogu li ga probati?

B: Izvolite, kabine su na drugom katu.

A: Hvala.

Na kiosku

A: Jesu li ____ novine današnji 'Večernji list'?

B: Ne, ____ novine su 'Jutarnji list', a _____ su 'Večernji list'.

A: Molim vas onda ____ novine, a je li izašao novi broj 'Glorije'?

B: Da, evo vam novog broja na _____ strani.

Language point 2*Possessive adjectives*

Possessive adjectives can be formed from proper nouns or nouns denoting people.

Masculine nouns ending in a consonant or **-o** have the ending **-ov**:

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Antun | Antunov | Antunov brat | Antun's brother |
| Marko | Markov | Markov novi auto | Marko's new car |
| putnik | putnikov | putnikov šešir | the passenger's hat |

Masculine nouns ending in a soft consonant have the ending **-ev**:

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| prijatelj | prijateljev | prijateljev pas | (my) friend's dog |
| Petrović | Petrovićev | Petrovićev ured | Petrović's office |

Feminine nouns ending in **-a** drop the final **-a** and replace it with **-in**:

| | | | |
|---------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Marija | Marijin | Marijin brat | Marija's brother |
| sestra | sestrin | sestrin nećak | (my) sister's nephew |

These possessive adjectives are then declined like regular definite¹ adjectives with the appropriate endings added to the new suffix:

Antunova sestra je ovdje.

Antun's sister is here.

Vidjela sam Markovog brata.

I saw Marko's brother.

Jesi li to rekao putnikovoj sestri?

Did you tell that to the passenger's sister?

1 You will also find indefinite endings for masculine possessives.

Note: These forms cannot be preceded by a qualifying adjective:

Ovo je putnikova torba.

but **To je torba onog drugog putnika.**

Examples:

Je li Slavko Jasnin muž?

Ne, Slavko je Marijin muž.

A kako se zove Alanova žena?

Zove se Nora.

Tko je mali Ranko?

On je Marijin nećak.

Gdje živi dječakova baka?

U Zadru, živi s Marijinom mladom sestrom.

Je li to ranije bila Antunova kuća?

Jest, na Babićevom trgu.

Exercise 2†

(a) Translate the following sentences into Croatian:

1 Is that Jasna's husband?

2 Where are the passenger's gloves?

3 I met (my) wife at Slavko's sister's.¹

4 We are travelling in Ivan's new car.

5 Will you be seeing Ana's mother?

6 The tickets are in Nora's bag.

7 Are you going to the cinema with Tomo's brother?

8 She wants to meet (my) wife's nephew.

9 Did you see the teacher's hat?

10 They left² the luggage in Marko's car.

1 kod ... sestre; 2 ostaviti

(b) Rewrite the following sentences, as in the example:

Example:

Ovo je auto od prijatelja.

Ovo je prijatelj²ev auto.

1 Ovo je stan od Marka.

2 Ovo je torba od Marije.

3 Ovo su ključevi od žene.

4 Ovo su knjige od muža.

5 Ležite na terasi od susjeda.

6 Pušite cigarete od Ivana.

7 Idete na rodendan od Maje.

8 Idete gledati novu kuću od prijateljice.

9 Ovo je dijete od kolege.

10 Spavam na novom krevetu od sina.

Reading passage 1

Try to translate the passage on your own, making informed guesses based on the context where necessary. You can check your version with the translation in the 'Key to exercises', p. 322, when you are satisfied.

Autom do Plitvičkih jezera

Od Zagreba do Karlovca vodi moderna autocesta u pravcu Jadranske obale. Ovaj put prolazi kroz plodnu i živopisnu dolinu rijeke Korane. Kod sela Rakovice put skreće za Split, a poslije nekoliko kilometara vide se prvi bukovi i vodopadi Nacionalnog parka Plitvička jezera. Ovo veličanstveno djelo prirode predstavlja jednu od najvećih atrakcija u Europi i jedno od najprivlačnijih mjesta u unutrašnjosti Hrvatske. Šesnaest jezera, prekrasnih plavozelenih pastelnih boja, u kojima se ogleda zelenilo gustih šuma, bukovima i vodopadima slivaju se jedna u drugo. Neki su slapovi visoki od trideset i do sedamdeset osam metara, a neki izvanredno lijepi su mnogo manji. Staze spajaju jezera, što posje-tiocima omogućuje da potpuno upoznaju i uživaju u ljepoti i miru ovog prekrasnog prirodnog fenomena. Da bi se u potpunosti sačuvala ljepota ovog područja, zabranjena je vožnja automobilima u neposrednoj blizini jezera.

Dialogue 2

Razgovor kod benzinske crpke

Conversation at the petrol pump

Mr Filipović is on the road and thinks he has lost his way. He goes to fill up with petrol.

F: Molim vas, gdje je najbliža benzinska pumpa?

A: Kod prvog velikog križanja.

B: Koliko litara želite?

F: Napunite do kraja, molim vas, i provjerite ulje i vodu.

B: Da napunim akumulator destiliranom vodom?

F: Da, molim. Već sam jučer provjerio ulje za kočnice.

B: Da provjerim gume?

F: Da, molim. Tlak mora biti jedan i šest prednje jedan i osam zadnje. Imate li dobru autokartu ovog područja?

B: Izvolite.

F: Hoćete li mi pokazati na karti točno gdje se nalazim? Mislim da sam na pogrešnom putu.

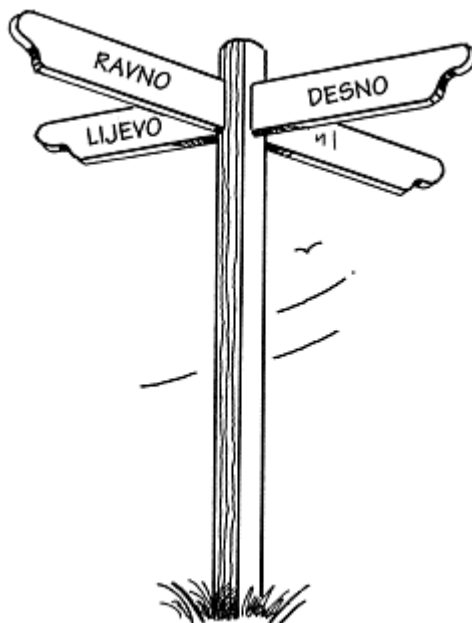
B: Idite ravno ovim lokalnim putem. Izaći ćete kod semafora na glavni put za centar grada.

Vocabulary

križanje

crossroads

| | |
|------------------|------------------|
| provjeriti (pf.) | to check |
| ulje | oil |
| akumulator | battery |
| kočnica | brake |
| guma | tyre |
| tlak | pressure |
| prednji | front |
| zadnji | back |
| autokarta | road map |
| područje | district, region |
| tačno | exactly |
| pogrešan, -šna | mistaken, wrong |
| ravno | straight |
| semafor | traffic lights |



Exercise 3

(a) Odgovorite na sljedeća pitanja

‘Answer the following questions’:

- 1 Kamo je trebalo odvesti Ranka?
- 2 Zašto Marijin brat nije mogao poći u Zadar?
- 3 Zašto je Marija došla k Alanu i Nori?
- 4 Hoće li moći pomoći Mariji?
- 5 Kakav je dječak i koliko ima godina?
- 6 Zašto je Alan želio pogledati kartu?
- 7 Kojim putem će izaći iz Zagreba?
- 8 Kakav je to put?
- 9 Što Marija preporučuje?
- 10 Što Alan želi zabilježiti?

(b)† Choose the most appropriate word:

1 Upoznao sam _____ brata.

- (a) Marijinog (b) Marijin (c) Marijovog

2 Skrenut ćemo lijevo na _____ križanju u daljini.

- (a) ovom (b) taj (c) onom

3 Kad dođete do križanja skrenite _____ .

- (a) ravno (b) sjever (c) lijevo

4 Na desnoj strani nalazi se velika benzinska _____ .

- (a) zgrada (b) stanica (c) benzin

(c) Give someone directions to your home, using the following vocabulary.

Skrenuti lijevo, desno ...

Na prvom, drugom križanju ...

Ići ravno do, iza, blizu ...

Reading passage 2

Priča našeg vremena (15)

Mark describes Jasna's arrival. Why didn't she come in her own car? What will they have to do while they are away? Was Jasna pleased about the car?

Jutros sam rano ustao. Otkazao sam sobu i platio račun. U dogo-voreno vrijeme se Jasna pojavila u nekom nepoznatom autu. Pitao sam je hoćemo li putovati ovim autom, i objasnila mi je da je auto posudila od tvrtke jer je veći, ima više mjesta za stvari i bit će nam ugodnije na putu. Osim toga, ako treba, moći ćemo odvesti kolege na poslovne ručkove ili večere, što nismo mogli onim drugim autom. A Jasna je rekla da će joj ipak nedostajati, jer joj je mnogo stalo do tog starog, pouzdanog 'prijatelja'.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| dogovoreno | agreed | nedostajati | to miss |
| nepoznat | unknown | (imp. nekome) | (lit. 'to be lacking to someone') |
| platiti (pf.) | to pay | | |
| pojavit se (pf.) | to appear | posuditi (pf.) | to borrow |
| pouzdan | reliable, trusty | račun | the bill |
| stalo (mi) je do (+ gen.) | I am fond of, I care about | | |

Exercise 4

Look at the map below and describe the location of the main towns and their relationship to the others:

Example: **Karlovac je 30 km od Zagreba. Dubrovnik se nalazi jugoistočno od Knina. Od Šibenika do Zadra idete prema jugu.**



Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (15)

It is getting late and Mara has to go home. Why did Mara suddenly have to leave? How far is it to her home? What does Mate offer to do? Why does he insist? What does Mara have to do before she leaves?

U jedanaest sati Mara je pogledala na sat.

- Jao, društvo, moram odmah poći. Moram uhvatiti zadnji autobus.
- Imaš pravo, vrijeme je – kaže Ankica – moram i ja poći.
- Na koju stranu idete? – pita Mate. – Mogao bih vas ja otpratiti.
- Baš si ljubazan. Pa ja stanujem tri kuće odavde! Prema tome ne bi ti oduzelo mnogo vremena. Ali Mara ima više od pola sata do kuće.
- Oh, hvala. Navikla sam. Autobus mi staje manje više ispred kuće. Ništa mi ne treba – kaže Mara odlučno.
- Možda, ali tako sam odgojen. Što mogu, ne bih mirno spavao da znam da hodaš sama po noći.
- Hvala ti onda. Samo da uzmem kišnu kabanicu pa možemo poći kad si toliko uporan!
- Ni riječi više. Još jednom ti hvala, Vesna, bilo je jako ugodno.
- Hvala što si došao. Do viđenja. Bog, Maro.
- Bog, Vesna, do sutra. I ... hvala.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| kišna kabanica | raincoat | navikao | accustomed |
| ni riječi više | not another word | odgojen | brought up |
| oduzeti (pf. oduzmem) | to take away, take up | odlučno | decisively |
| stanovati (imp. stanujem) | to live, reside | prema tome | consequently |
| | | sat | watch |
| | | uhvatiti | to catch |
| | | uporan, -rna | persistent |
| zadnji | last | | |

16

U kvaru

Breakdown

In this unit we will look at:

- possessive pronouns: 'my', 'your' etc.
- future perfect tense
- parts of a car

Dialogue 1

Nešto nije u redu s autom

Something's wrong with the car

On the second day of their journey, Alan notices a strange noise in the engine. Was it hot on the journey on the first day? Why did Alan slow down? Where did he stop? What did Nora offer to do? How did she get to the garage?

Prvi dan je prošao bez uzbuđenja. Bilo je lijepo, sunčano vrijeme, ali ne prevruće. Alan i Nora su uživali u krajoliku. Krenuli su rano sljedećeg dana da izbjegnu najveću vrućinu. Poslije sat dva, Alan je usporio vožnju.

NORA: Što je, Alane, zašto si se zaustavio?

ALAN: Motor lupa; čudno zvuči.

NORA: Ništa ne čujem na svojoj strani.

ALAN: Na ovim uzbrdicama kao da nema snage. Kao da mu je sve teže.

NORA: Imali smo jednom sličan problem i s našim autom, sjećaš se?

ALAN: Kako da ne! Mehaničar dugo nije mogao doći do rezervnog dijela, pa sam morao posuditi auto.

Auto je stao na zaustavnoj traci ceste i Alan je izašao. Podigao je haubu i pogledao unutra. Pregledao je razne dijelove.

ALAN: Sad ću ga pokušati ponovno upaliti.

Ali ovog puta, motor je bio potpuno mrtav.

NORA: Ti ostani ovdje, ja ću pokušati naći nekoga da me prebaci do najbližeg servisa.

Ranko, ti ćeš ostati s Alanom da mu praviš društvo.

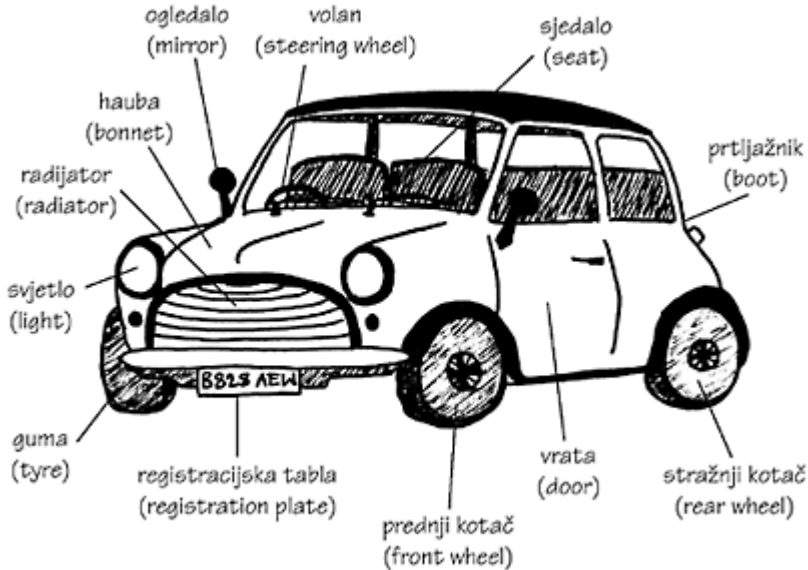
ALAN: Može. Ja ću samo pogledati kartu koju nam je Slavko dao. Čini mi se da su servisi zabilježeni na toj karti.

Nora je pošla do ruba ceste i dala znak da im treba pomoć. Poslije samo dvije tri minute zaustavio se jedan auto.

VOZAČ: Treba li vam pomoći?

NORA: Molim vas, naš auto je u kvaru. Moram otići do najbližeg servisa.

VOZAČ: Rado ću vas odvesti. Ima veći servis par kilometara oдавde.



Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| čudan, -dna | strange | dugo | a long time |
| hauba | bonnet, hood | izbjeći (pf. izbjeǧnem) | to avoid |
| krajolik | landscape | lupati (imp.) | to knock |
| kvar | fault (u kvaru 'broken down') | motor | engine |
| mrtav, mrtva | dead | podići (pf. podignem) | to raise |
| ponovno | once more | praviti nekome društvo | to keep someone company |
| potreban, -bna | necessary | rezervni dio | spare part |
| prebaciti (pf.) | to give a lift | sad ću | I'll just ... |
| prevruć | too hot | | |
| rub | edge | | |

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|---|---------------|
| servis | repair shop, garage | snaga | strength |
| | | sunčan | sunny |
| unutra | inside | upaliti (pf.) | to ignite |
| usporiti (pf.) | to slow down | uzbrdica | uphill slope |
| uzbuđenje | excitement | uživati (imp.) (u nečemu) | to enjoy |
| vožnja | driving | zabilježen | noted, marked |
| vrijeme | weather | znak | sign, mark |
| zaustavna traka | hard shoulder | | |
| zvučati (imp. zvučim) | to sound | | |

Language point 1

Possessive pronouns

The declensions of possessive pronouns are straightforward and the endings are already familiar to you from those of adjectives and demonstrative pronouns.

moj 'my', tvoj 'your', svoj 'one's own'

Singular

| | <i>m.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>f.</i> |
|--------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------|
| nom. | moj | moje | moja |
| gen. | mog(a) mojeg(a) | mog(a) mojeg(a) | moje |
| dat. | mom(e) mojem(u) | mom(e) mojem(u) | mojoj |
| acc. | as nom. or gen. | moje | moju |
| loc. | as dat. | as dat. | as dat. |
| instr. | mojim | mojim | mojom |

Plural

| | <i>m.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>f.</i> |
|------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| nom. | moji | moja | moje |
| gen. | mojih | mojih | mojih |
| dat. | mojim(a) | mojim(a) | mojim(a) |
| acc. | moje | moja | moje |

| | | | |
|--------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| loc. | as dat. | as dat. | as dat. |
| instr. | mojim(a) | mojim(a) | mojim(a) |

Where there are alternative longer and shorter forms, the shorter form is always the more common. See ‘Grammar summary’, 2, p. 297.

Use of svoj. Except in a few set phrases (e.g. **On je svoj čovjek** ‘He is “his own” man’), this cannot be used in the nominative. It cannot *be* the subject as it is used to refer *to* the subject. It may be used of any person, singular or plural, to denote things pertaining to that person:

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Vidjet ću svog sina. | I shall see my son. |
| Bili su u svojoj kući. | They were in their house. |
| Idemo svojim autom. | We are going in (by) our car. |

Exercise 1[†]

Translate into Croatian, using **moj**, **tvoj** or **svoj** as appropriate:

- 1 We’ll get our things ready.
- 2 They were not in their room when I went in.
- 3 I saw your sister at the post office.
- 4 Are you travelling in your car?
- 5 My daughter has gone to England with some friends of hers.
- 6 Is your son at his friend’s house?
- 7 They are going to visit my parents.
- 8 I live with my mother in London.
- 9 We were in your house yesterday.
- 10 He must write to his sister!
- 11 Are you looking for your bag?
- 12 Her father is celebrating his eightieth birthday.
- 13 Is he travelling in my car? (use instrumental)
- 14 He should give this book to his mother.
- 15 Will she sleep in your room?

Language point 2

Possessive pronouns

naš , vaš ‘our, your’

Singular

| | | | |
|------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------|
| | <i>m.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>f.</i> |
| nom. | naš | naše | naša |
| gen. | našeg(a) | našeg(a) | naše |

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| dat. | našem(u) | našem(u) | našoj |
| acc. | nom. or gen. | naše | našu |
| loc. | našem(u) | našem(u) | našoj |
| instr. | našim | našim | našom |
| <i>Plural</i> | | | |
| | <i>m.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>f.</i> |
| nom. | naši | naša | naše |
| gen. | naših | naših | naših |
| dat. | našim(a) | našim(a) | našim(a) |
| acc. | naše | naša | naše |
| loc. | našim(a) | našim(a) | našim(a) |
| instr. | našim(a) | našim(a) | našim(a) |

njegov, njezin (njen), njihov **'his, her, their'**

These are easily remembered if you take the genitive (long form) of **on, ona, oni** respectively as the starting point. These pronouns are often declined like indefinite adjectives, i.e. m. and n.:

| | |
|------|----------------------------------|
| gen. | njegova, njezina, njihova |
| dat. | njegovu, njezinu, njihovu |

So are possessive adjectives formed from nouns, with endings **-ov** and **-in**.

Exercise 2

(a)† Supply the correct forms of personal pronouns:

I Marko, Ivan i Maja izlaze iz kuće. Vani pada kiša. _____ kišobrani su u hodniku.

MARKO: Jeste li vidjeli _____ kišobran? Ne mogu ga naći.

IVAN: Ja sam već našao _____ kišobran. Mislim da si ti _____ kišobran ostavio sinoć u kupaonici.

MARKO: Ah, da, imaš pravo, vidim ga u kadi.

MAJA: Ma, ne, Marko, taj kišobran je _____, a _____ je u hodniku pokraj ogledala.

II Vesna i Marija traže Markov auto na parkiralištu.

VESNA: Kako izgleda Markov auto?

MARIJA: _____ auto je još uvijek crveni Fiat uno.

VESNA: Kako to misliš još uvijek?

MARIJA: Marko nije zadovoljan sa _____ autom jer se stalno kvari. _____ motor je star. Prije neki dan mu je pukla guma pa sam mu morala posuditi _____ auto.

VESNA: Hoćete li onda na more ići _____autom ili Markovim?

MARIJA: Idemo _____jer je sigurniji.

III Ivan i Maja idu u posjet _____prijateljima.

_____prijatelji žive u velikoj četverosobnoj kući. To nije _____kuća, nego je unajmljuju, ali za samo dva mjeseca će se preseliti u _____novu kuću. _____djeca će biti sretna jer nova kuća ima velik vrt. Nova kuća ima i garažu za _____auto.

(b) Replace the dative personal pronouns in the following sentences by the appropriate possessive pronoun, as in the example:

Example:

Je li ti ona djevojka?

Je li ona tvoja djevojka?

Is she your girlfriend?

- 1 Danas joj je sedmi rođendan.
- 2 Znaš li gdje su mi naočale?¹
- 3 Ovo mi je nova kuća.
- 4 Upoznala sam mu mlađeg brata.
- 5 Zar mu je sestra već udana?
- 6 Gdje su nam stvari?
- 7 Hoće li im se kćer uskoro vratiti?
- 8 Sad mu je izašla prva knjiga.
- 9 Dođi da nam vidiš sobu!
- 10 Kava vam je na stolu, ohladit će se!²

1 **naočale** 'glasses'; 2 **ohladiti se** 'to get cold'

(c)† Replace the possessive pronouns in the following sentences by the dative personal pronouns, as in the example:

Example:

Je li ovo tvoj auto? Je li ti ovo auto?

Is that your car?

- 1 Njihov motor ne radi.
- 2 Moj sin obožava sportske automobile.
- 3 Kad Marija vrati tvoju knjigu, mogu li je ja čitati?
- 4 Sutra ću njegovog sina odvesti na automobilske trke.
- 5 Sigurna sam da je ovo njezin novi bicikl.
- 6 Uzela je svoju čašu sa stola.
- 7 Ovo je njezin momak.
- 8 Vidio sam tvog brata jučer.
- 9 Vodio sam njegovog psa u šetnju.
- 10 Pozvao sam tvoju sestru u kino.

(d) **Pitanja**

- 1 Kakvo je bilo vrijeme prvog dana Alanovog i Norinog puta?

- 2 Što su svi radili na putu?
- 3 Zašto su krenuli rano sljedećeg dana?
- 4 Što se dogodilo poslije dva sata vožnje?
- 5 Jesu li ranije imali sličan problem sa svojim autom?
- 6 Gdje je auto stao?
- 7 Što je radio Alan kad je zaustavio auto?
- 8 Što je predložila Nora?
- 9 Je li morala dugo čekati?
- 10 Je li bilo daleko do servisa?

(e)† Fill the gaps with the appropriate prepositions from the list below. The English translation is in the 'Key to exercises', p. 323, but try not to consult it until you have completed the exercise to your satisfaction.

Naš auto je ____ kvaru. Mi smo ____ autoputu Zagreb– Karlovac, nekih petnaest kilometara ____ Karlovca. Možete li poslati mehaničara ____ nas? Izgleda da nešto nije ____ redu ____ motorom. Muž mi je ostao ____ autom. Ja sam ____ auta. Možete li doći ____ pol sata? Hoćete li moći i mene povesti ____ kamionu? Hvala, čekat ću ovdje ____ ovoj klupi ____ suncu.

u na od do s bez za

Language point 3

Future perfect

The future perfect is used in complex (temporal and conditional) sentences to express an action in the future which precedes another action in the future. It is composed of the present perfective of **biti** and the active past participle:

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| (ja) budem pisao/pisala | (mi) budemo pisali |
| (ti) budeš pisao/pisala | (vi) budete pisali |
| (on) bude pisao | (oni) budu pisali |
| (ona) bude pisala | (one) budu pisale |

Javit će ti se čim se bude vratio.

He'll ring you as soon as he gets back.

Pročitat ću tvoju knjigu kad budem imala vremena.

I shall read your book when I have time.

In Croatian, the verb in the main clause need not be in the future tense: a relatively frequent use is to express requests which refer to the future:

Kupi mi novine kad se budeš vraćao.

Buy me a newspaper (when you will be) on your way home.

Ako budete našli kave, uzmite pola kile za mene.

If you find any coffee, get me half a kilo.

The future perfect tense may be replaced by the simple present tense:

Javit će ti se čim se vrati.

He'll ring you as soon as he gets back.

Pročitat ću tvoju knjigu kad pronađem vremena.

I shall read your book when I have time.

Kupi mi novine kad se vraćaš.

Buy me a newspaper on your way home.

Ako nadete kave, uzmite pola kile za mene.

If you find any coffee, get me half a kilo.

Exercise 3[†]

(a) Rewrite the following sentences using the future perfect:

- 1 Kad imam 18 godina, kupit ću si auto.
- 2 Ići ćemo u kino kad imamo malo više vremena.
- 3 Kad kupimo stan, preselit ćemo se.
- 4 Kad pročitaš knjigu, vrati je u knjižnicu.
- 5 Kad popije kavu, otići će na posao.

(b) Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets using the future perfect:

- 1 Kad _____ (**urediti**) vrt, napravit će veliki roštilj.
- 2 Otići će na godišnji odmor kad _____ (**kupiti**) avionske karte.
- 3 Kad _____ (**kupovati**) pokućstvo, ići će na veliki sajam pokućstva.
- 4 Kad Marko _____ (**imati**) 10 godina, preselit ćemo se u Španjolsku.
- 5 Idemo na plažu kad _____ (**naći**) hotel.

knjižnica library **urediti** organize, tidy **sajam** fair, exhibition

Reading passage**Priča našeg vremena (16)**

Mark has returned to Zagreb after an interesting trip around Croatia. Did Mark enjoy his trip? Why was he so tired? What happened after all the official meetings?

Sinoć sam se vratio s puta. Bilo je sve vrlo zanimljivo, ali moram priznati da sam se jako umorio. Nisam uopće imao vremena pisati dnevnik. Cijeli dan smo bili na nogama. Tijekom dana detaljno smo razgledali tvornice i razgovarali s ljudima u područnim uredima. Dobio sam jasan pregled cijele mreže ove rasprostranjene tvrtke. Poslije službenog posjeta, obavezno su slijedili poslovni ručkovi i večere, na kojima su nas bogato ugostili ogromnim količinama ukusnih jela i pića.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| količina | quantity | noga | foot, leg |
| obavezno | compulsory | ogroman | huge |
| područni | regional | pregled | overview |
| priznati (pf.) | to confess | rasprostranjen | widespread |
| slijediti (imp.) | to follow | ugostiti (pf.) | to entertain |
| umoriti se (pf.) | to tire oneself | | |

Exercise 4[†]

(a) Translate the following passage into Croatian:

- Hello, is that Marko? I'm ringing¹ to say that we're setting off to the coast on Saturday.
- Lucky you!² I hope it will be good weather. Is there anyone to look after your cat?³ I shall gladly come in from time to time.
- Thank you, that's nice of you. Zlatan's nephew will be here and he will probably bring some of his friends.
- Where are you going? Have you booked a room somewhere?
- No, we haven't. We shall presumably find private accommodation without any problem. We don't know exactly where we shall be.
- And when are you coming back?⁴
- We can only stay five days. Will you be in Zagreb when we get back?⁴
- Yes, I shall go to Italy later.
- Good, we'll see each other soon then.
- Have a good journey!⁵

1 'to ring' **javljati se**; 2 'lucky you' **blago vama/tebi!**; 3 cat **mačka**; 4 'to come back': think about which aspect to use in each case – **vraćati se** (imp.), **vratiti se** (pf.); 5 'good journey!' **sretan put!**

(b) Fill the gaps with the words from the list:

prometni 'traffic', **cjenik** 'price list', **kvar** 'fault', **pomoć** 'help', **radni** 'working', **tehnički**, **vozilo** 'vehicle', **vozač**, **popravak** 'repair'

Na cestama se danas često događaju_____ nesreće.¹ Razlog² je ili auto u kvaru ili_____. Vozači se moraju brinuti o autu i obavljati³ redoviti⁴ _____pregled.⁵

Kad se dogode nesreće onda možemo dobiti tehničku _____ od Hrvatskog autokluba. Vozači mogu dobiti tehničku pomoć 365 dana u godini, 24 sata dnevno, _____ danom, nedjeljom i praznikom.⁶

Tehnička pomoć vozačima na cesti obuhvaća⁷ popravak _____ na vozilu na cesti, uklanjanje⁸ vozila u kvaru, napuštenih⁹ _____ ili vozila oštećenih¹⁰ u prometnoj nesreći i prijevoz¹¹ do najviše 100 km.

Za ove usluge¹² u Republici Hrvatskoj je jedinstveni _____ usluga.

1 Usluge _____ vozila na cesti

| USLUGA | CIJENA (kn) |
|---|-------------|
| PAUŠAL ¹³ (do 1 sat rada i do 20 km) | 120,00 kn |
| DO 1/2 SATA RADA mehaničara na cesti | 40,00 kn |
| DO 1 SAT RADA mehaničara na cesti | 80,00 kn |
| CIJENA KILOMETRA | 4,00 kn |

2 Usluge uklanjanja vozila s ceste i prijevoz

| USLUGA | CIJENA (kn) |
|----------|-------------|
| do 20 km | 200,00 kn |

od 21 do 100 km 200,00 kn + 7 kn po km preko 20

od 100 do 200 km 760,00 kn + 6 kn po km preko 100 km

od 200 km 1.360,00 kn + 5 kn po km preko 200 km

U cijenu nije uračunat¹⁴ porez na dodanu vrijednost¹⁵ koji je 22%.

1 **nesreća** 'accident'; 2 **razlog** 'reason'; 3 **obavljati** 'to carry out'; 4 **redovit** 'regular'; 5 **pregled** 'check, examination'; 6 **praznik** 'holiday'; 7 **obuhvaćati** 'to include'; 8 **uklanjanje** 'removal'; 9 **napušten** 'abandoned'; 10 **oštećen** 'damaged'; 11 **prijevoz** 'transport, transfer'; 12 **usluga** 'service'; 13 **paušal** 'flat rate, lump sum'; 14 **uračunat** 'calculated'; 15 **porez na dodanu vrijednost (PDV)** 'VAT'

Dialogue 2

Kod mehaničara

MEHANIČAR: Izvolite.

MARKO: Nešto nije u redu s mojim autom. Motor mu se često kvari, a mislim da i gume treba zamijeniti jer mi je rezervna guma pukla prije dva mjeseca.

MEHANIČAR: Pogledat ćemo ga kad budemo imali vremena. Sad nam je velika gužva.

Možete li parkirati svoj auto u garažu i doći sutra?

MARKO: Dobro. Hoćete li mi javiti kad popravak bude bio gotov?

MEHANIČAR: Naravno.

MARKO: Kada vam mogu platiti?

MEHANIČAR: Platit ćete kad budemo završili posao.

MARKO: Hvala, do viđenja.

MEHANIČAR: Nema na čemu. Do viđenja.

puknuti (**puknem** pf.) to burst, have a puncture

Exercise 5

Look at the diagram of the car on p. 213 and describe the location of the various named parts and their relationship to the others: e.g. **Prtljažnik se nalazi iza sjedala. Motor je ispod haube.**

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (16)

The atmosphere in the bus is awkward. Why does Mate remark on Mara's silence? How much longer is Mate intending to stay in Dubrovnik? Has he got a girlfriend? How long have Mara and Ivo been together?

Mara je sjedila u autobusu bez riječi.

- Zašto si tako šutljiva – pita veselo Mate – to nije u tvom stilu, koliko sam mogao primijetiti.
- Pa i nije, imaš pravo.
- Što ti je onda, nešto si mi tužna?
- Nisam, zaista, ne znam što mi je ovih dana ... Pustimo to. Dokle misliš ostati u Dubrovniku?
- Ne znam točno. Još nekoliko dana.
- Imaš li ...obaveza ...? – počinje Mara – Čeka li te ... netko?
- Djevojka, misliš?
- Pa ... bilo tko.
- U neku ruku da. Hodam već dosta dugo s jednom curom, ali ...
- Ali ...?
- Ne znam dokle će trajati. A ti, koliko dugo ste ti i Ivo skupa?
- Bit će skoro godinu dana. Ali ...
- Ali?
- Bolje o tome ne govoriti. Ne smijem. Pogotovo ne s tobom.
- Zašto? Zar nismo prijatelji?
- Jesmo, Mate. Hajde! Ovo je moja stanica.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| bilo tko | anyone | dokle | until when |
| hodati s | to go out with | ne smijem | I may not |
| obaveza | obligation, responsibility | pogotovo | particularly |
| | | primijetiti (pf.) | to notice |
| pustiti (pf.) | to leave | smjeti (imp. smijem) | to dare, be allowed |
| stil | style | | |
| šutljiv | quiet | u neku ruku | in a way |

17

U kupnji

Shopping

In this unit we will look at:

- interrogative pronouns: 'who', 'what' etc.
- relative pronouns: 'who', 'which' etc.
- shopping for food
- aspect 2
- lost items, visiting a police station

Dialogue 1

Cameronovi idu u kupnju

As they wait in a small town for their car to be mended, the Camerons go shopping. What does Ranko like to eat? What is Alan going to buy? What do Nora and Ranko buy? What fruit does Ranko like? Does he like figs?

Dok su čekali da im se auto popravi u malom mjestu gdje su se slučajno našli, Alan, Nora i Ranko su otišli u kupnju.

NORA: Što ti najviše voliš, dušo?

RANKO: Ne znam, sve! Uvijek sam gladan! Volim meso i voće, pa kolače, bombone, sladoled. Oh, i čokoladu!

ALAN: Uđimo u ovo samoposluživanje, tu ćemo naći sve što trebamo.

NORA: Alane, hoćeš li ti potražiti kruh dok ja idem s Rankom vidjeti koji sir i kakvo suho meso voli?

ALAN: U redu, uzet ću i salatu, rajčice i slično. Jedeš li ti paprike i krastavce, Ranko?

RANKO: Jedem. A jako volim kruh!

ALAN: Kupit ću onda mnogo kruha! Naći ćemo se kod povrća kad završite.

NORA: Uzmimo dvadeset deka ovog pršuta i cijelu ovu salamu. Priлично je skupa, ali će trajati. Onda, neki tvrdi sir. Zapravo više volim bijeli sir, ali nije praktičan za put.

RANKO: Ja volim onaj sir u trokutima u malim okruglim paketicima. Evo ga!

NORA: Uzet ću i nekakve konzerve za svaki slučaj. Recimo ovu paštetu. A sad da potražimo Alana.

ALAN: Ah, evo vas. Vidite kakav je lijep izbor voća.

NORA: Mnoga djeca vole banane, jesi li ti jedan od tih?

RANKO: Baš nisam. Volim breskve, marglice, lubenice, dinje, grožđe ...

ALAN: A smokve?

RANKO: Ni slučajno!

Platili su sve na blagajni.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------|-----------------|-----------|
| blagajna | till | bombon | sweet |
| breskva | peach | čokolada | chocolate |



Dućan u Zagrebu

| | | | |
|---|-------------------|---|------------------|
| deka (abbrev. of dekagram) | 10 grammes | dinja | sweet melon |
| jesti (imp. jedem) | to eat | grožđe (coll.) | grapes |
| kruh | bread | konzerva | tin (of food) |
| lubenica | watermelon | krastavac (gen. krastavca) | cucumber |
| okrugao, okrugla | round | marelica | apricot |
| paprika | green, red pepper | ostali | other, remaining |
| | | pašteta | paté |
| | | popraviti (pf.) | to mend |

| | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| potražiti (pf.) | to look for | povrće (coll.) | vegetables |
| pršut | prosciutto, smoked ham | recimo | let's say |
| samoposluživanje | supermarket | salama | salami |
| sladoled | ice cream | sir | cheese |
| ni slučajno | not on your life! | slučajno | by chance |
| trokut | triangle | suh | dry |
| zapravo | actually | trajati (imp.) | to last |
| | | tvrd | hard |
| | | završiti (pf.) | to finish |

Language point 1

Interrogative pronouns

| | | |
|---|-------------------|---|
| | tko 'who' | što 'what' |
| nom. | tko | što |
| gen. | koga | čega |
| dat. | kome, komu | čemu |
| acc. | koga | što |
| loc. | kom, kome | čemu |
| instr. | kim, kime | čim, čime |
| Tko je na vratima? Who's at the door? | | S kim si putovala? Who did you travel with? |
| Kod koga ste prenočili? At whose place did you spend the night? | | Što ste kupili? What did you buy? |
| Čega se boji? What's he afraid of? (bojati se + gen.) | | O čemu se radi? What's it about? |

The indefinite pronouns – **netko** 'someone' and **nitko** 'no one' – are declined like **tko**; **nešto** 'something' and **ništa** 'nothing' are declined like **što**.

Razgovarala je s nekim.

She was talking to someone.

Sjetila sam se nečega.

I've remembered something.

Nikoga nismo vidjeli.

We didn't see anyone.

Nisu se ničega sjećali.

They didn't remember anything.

Note: But where negative compound pronouns occur with prepositions, the preposition is placed between the component parts:

Ne vida se ni s kim.

He doesn't see anyone.

Ni od koga nemamo vijesti.

We've no news from anyone.

Uzrujavaš se ni zbog čega.

You're getting upset about nothing.

Dialogue 2

Two friends meet in the park.

A: Čekaj! Hoću te nešto pitati!

B: Izvoli. O čemu se radi?

A: S kim si bio sinoć? Netko je nekome rekao da sam pobijedio na lutriji!

B: Čestitam ti! Misliš da sam to ja? Nisam nikome ništa rekao! Nisam ni znao!

A: Ali nije istina! Netko je to izmislio! Onda je moja žena od nekoga nešto čula.

B: Pa ja ništa ni od koga nisam čuo, nisam se ni s kim vidio!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|---------|
| o čemu se radi? | what is it about? | pobijediti (pf.) | to win |
| | | lutrija | lottery |
| izmisliti (pf.) | to invent | | |

Language point 2

Relative pronoun koji, koje, koja 'who', 'which'

| | <i>Singular</i> | | | <i>Plural</i> | | |
|------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | <i>m.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>f.</i> | <i>m</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>f.</i> |
| nom. | koji | koje | koja | koji | koja | koje |
| gen. | kojeg(a) | kojeg(a) | koje | kojih | kojih | kojih |
| dat. | kojem(u) | kojem(u) | kojoj | kojim(a) | kojim(a) | kojim(a) |
| acc. | nom. or gen. | koje | koju | koje | koja | koje |
| loc. | kojem(u) | kojem(u) | kojoj | kojim(a) | kojim(a) | kojim(a) |

| instr. | kojim | kojim | kojom | kojim(a) | kojim(a) | kojim(a) |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|----------|----------|----------|
|--------|-------|-------|-------|----------|----------|----------|

Notice that the declension is very similar to that of **moj**.

It is important to distinguish between the interrogative pronoun **tko** and the relative pronoun **koji**. This is not always easy in practice as, in some parts of the country, genitive and dative of **koji** (masculine and neuter) are identical to genitive and dative of **tko**. It is awkward also because English uses 'who' for both functions.

The relative pronoun cannot be omitted, as it can in English, particularly when it is used as an object: 'the man I saw'; 'the town you visited'. In Croatian these must always be present:

the man whom I saw
čovjek kojeg sam vidio

the town which you visited
grad koji ste posjetili

Examples:

Tko je ta dama s kojom sam vas vidio sinoć?

Who is that lady I saw you with last night?

To je moj prijatelj iz Engleske o kome sam ti pričao.

That is my friend from England I told you about.

Vlak kojim su oni putovali kasnio je pola sata.

The train they travelled by was half an hour late.

Note: When you have to translate English sentences like these, first see whether a relative pronoun has been omitted and then use the appropriate form of **koji**.

In certain circumstances **što** can be used as a relative pronoun, and it must be used after neuter indefinite pronouns: **ovo, to, ono, nešto, ništa, jedino, prvo, sve**.

Svida mi se ono što sam vidjela.

I like what I have seen.

Imate li sve što trebate?

Have you got all you need?

Ima nešto o čemu moram s vama govoriti.

There is something I must speak to you about.

Nisu razumjeli ni riječ od onoga što smo im rekli.

They didn't understand a word of what we told them.

Exercise 1†

(a) Translate the following sentences into Croatian:

1 The letter which came this morning is on the table.

- 2 Where is the book you gave me?
- 3 The friends we travelled with are now in England.
- 4 That's the first letter he has written to me!
- 5 I think that we've lost the address she gave us.
- 6 Is this the hotel in which your sister works?
- 7 Who was the girl you were at the cinema with last night?
- 8 The friend I gave your address to is coming tomorrow.
- 9 The car they travelled by is very small and old.
- 10 Isn't that your cousin whom we met last year?¹

1 prošle godine

(b) Supply the correct forms of the relative pronouns:

- 1 Ovo je knjiga _____ sam ti preporučio.
- 2 Ovo je čovjek o _____ sam ti pričao.
- 3 _____ film želiš gledati?
- 4 Kolegica _____ radi sa mnom je Markova žena.
- 5 To je auto _____ najviše volim.
- 6 Ovo je moj prijatelj _____ sam pozvao na rođendan.
- 7 Gledali smo film _____ je dobio Oscara.
- 8 Želim upoznati tvog prijatelja _____ živi na moru.
- 9 Ovo je najbolji restoran u _____ sam bio.
- 10 Ovo je krevet na _____ ja spavam.

(c) Connect the following pairs of sentences into one using the most appropriate relative pronoun, as in the example:

**Ova knjiga je dobra. U njoj ima puno zanimljivih priča.
Ova knjiga, u kojoj ima puno zanimljivih priča, je dobra.**

- 1 Ovo je moj prijatelj Petar. Petar živi i radi u Londonu.
- 2 Torba je na stolu. U njoj ima puno knjiga.
- 3 Ovo je ulica. U njoj živi Ivan.
- 4 Marija je studentica. S njom živi Ana.
- 5 Ovo je film. Preporučio sam ti ga.
- 6 Marko je dobar konobar. S njim su svi zadovoljni.
- 7 Naši studenti idu na izlet u Dubrovnik. O njima sam ti pričao.
- 8 On želi razgovarati s profesorom. Profesor govori hrvatski.
- 9 Ovo je moj muž. Upoznao si ga prije tjedan dana.
- 10 To je film. Gledali smo ga jučer.

Language point 3

Relative pronoun čiji, čije, čija 'whose'

Čiji is declined like **koji**, agreeing in all respects with the noun which follows it:

Čiji je taj lijepi šešir?

Whose is that nice hat?

Znaš li čije su te naočale?

Do you know whose those glasses are?

Čijim ste autom došli?

Whose car did you come in?

U čijoj smo kući bili?

Whose house were we in?

Exercise 2

Supply the correct forms of **čiji** and answer the questions:

- 1 _____ kuća je pokraj mora?
- 2 _____ auto je parkiran ispred naše kuće?
- 3 _____ dijete je najbolje u školi?
- 4 Na _____ krevetu spavaš?
- 5 _____ je ovo torba na stolu?
- 6 _____ knjigu čitaš?
- 7 U _____ stanu sada živiš?
- 8 _____ je ovo stolica?
- 9 _____ sin živi u New Yorku?
- 10 _____ je on muž?

Dialogue 3

Na policiji

At the police station

When they return from the shops, Nora discovers that she does not have her handbag. Where does she think she left it? What was in it? What does the shop assistant suggest? Had Nora noticed anyone else in the shop at the same time? Why did the policeman say she was lucky?

NORA: Gdje mi je torba? Sigurno sam je ostavila na podu. Sjećam se da sam je stavila na pod s jednim paketom dok sam razgledala nakit koji je tamo bio izložen. Onda si me ti zvao i uzela sam paket. Zaboravila sam torbu.

ALAN: Je li bilo mnogo toga u njoj?

NORA: Nešto sitnija u novčaniku, ključevi, takve stvari. Dođi, Ranko, trčimo!

U dućanu su pitali prodavačicu je li slučajno netko našao i predao žensku crnu torbu.

PRODAVAČICA: Žao mi je, ali ništa nismo primili. Jeste li sigurni da ste je ostavili baš u ovom dućanu?

NORA: Jesam, i to prije možda desetak minuta.

PRODAVAČICA: Najbolje je da idete odmah na policiju prijaviti izgubljeno. Može biti da je torba nađena. Policijska postaja vam je iza prvog ugla desno.

* * *

U policiji

NORA: Oprostite, hoću prijaviti izgubljenu torbu.

POLICAJAC: Treba popuniti ovaj formular, gospođo. Točno u koliko sati ste izgubili torbu? Jeste li primijetili još nekoga u dućanu u to doba?

ALAN: Bila su dvojica mladića koji su kupovali žilete.

POLICAJAC: Biste li ih mogli opisati?

ALAN: Donekle. Jedan je bio plav, jedan crn s dugom kosom, može biti stranac. Nosili su traperice i jedan je bio u plavoj majici, drugi čini mi se u bijeloj košulji.

POLICAJAC: A što ste imali u torbi, gospođo?

NORA: Ništa od velike vrijednosti – nešto sitnog novca, ključeve, šminku, rupčić. Meni su najdragocjenije stvari u njoj fotografije naše djece i adresar.

POLICAJAC: Pričekajte ovdje jedan trenutak.

Policajac se vratio poslije nekoliko minuta, s najlon vrećicom u ruci.

POLICAJAC: Izgleda da imate sreće, gospođo. Dvoje djece je našlo ovu torbu na ulici prije nekoliko minuta i predalo je. Razumije se da nema novca, ali je sve ostalo unutra.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|--|-------------------|
| adresar | address book | donekle | up to a point |
| dragocjen | precious | izgubljen (pass. part. of izgubiti) | lost |
| izložen | laid out, displayed | naden (pass. part. of naći) | found |
| nakit | jewellery | ostaviti (pf.) | to leave, abandon |
| opisati (pf. opišem) | to describe | pod | floor, ground |
| plav | blue; blond (of hair) | popuniti (pf.) | to fill in |
| prijaviti (pf.) | to report | prodavačica | saleswoman |
| razgledati (imp.) | to examine | rupčić | handkerchief |
| sitniš, sitan novac | change, loose coins | šminka | make-up |
| | | stranac (gen. stranca) | foreigner |

| | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| torba | handbag | | |
| traperice (f. pl.) | jeans | trčati (imp. trčim) | to run |
| ustanoviti (pf.) | to ascertain, establish | | |
| | | vrećica | bag |
| najlon vrećica | plastic bag | vrijednost (f.) | value |
| žao mi je | I'm sorry | žilet | razor blade |

Exercise 3

Comprehension exercises

(a) True or false. Respond to the statements below with a complete sentence, either endorsing or denying the statement:

- 1 Marija je ostavila torbu na blagajni u dućanu.
- 2 Marija je razgledala šešire.
- 3 Policijska stanica je iza drugog ugla lijevo.
- 4 U Marijinoj torbi je sitan novac, ključevi, šminka i rupčići.
- 5 Dvoje djece je našlo torbu u autobusu prije nekoliko minuta.

(b) Complete the sentences with the most appropriate words:

1 Ona je sigurno _____ torbu na podu.

- (a) razgledala (b) ostavila (c) uzela

2 U dućanu su _____ prodavačicu je li netko našao torbu.

- (a) vidjeli (b) našli (c) pitali

3 Idemo na policiju _____ izgubljeno.

- (a) prijaviti (b) reći (c) vidjeti

4 Trebate _____ ovaj formular.

- (a) pročitati (b) popuniti (c) naći

5 Jeste li _____ još nekoga u dućanu.

- (a) našli (b) kupili (c) primijetili

6 Dva mladića su _____ traperice.

- (a) nosila (b) držala (c) imala

7 Dvoje djece je _____ ovu torbu prije nekoliko minuta.

- (a) našlo i predalo (b) vidjelo i gledalo (c) kupilo i dalo

Language point 4

Aspect 2

We touched on the question of aspect in Unit 2. Now we should consider it in more detail. You have come across many examples of the use of aspect in the units and the reading passages. When you have worked through this section, it would be advisable to look back over all the earlier material, observing the use of aspect.

Examples of aspect pairs:

Večest mjeseci kupuju novu kuću; sad su je konačno kupili.

They have been buying a new house for six months; now they've finally bought one.

Pijete li uvijek hladan čaj? Svoj sam već odavno popila!

Do you always drink cold tea? I drank mine long ago!

Putuje se tri sata do granice; kad namjeravate otputovati?

One travels three hours to the border; when do you intend to leave?

Rado vam dajem te tri knjige, ali ovu ne bih nikome dala!

I gladly give you those three books, but I wouldn't give this one to anybody!

Ovo dijete strašno polako jede; bit će dovoljno ako pojede meso.

This child is eating terribly slowly; it will be enough if he eats up the meat.

Notice that in each pair the first verb describes an open-ended action, while the second denotes an action conceived as finite, whether in the past, present or future.

Exercise 4†

(a) Translate the following pairs of sentences into English, selecting the verbs from the list below (the imperfective is given first in each case):

kasniti, zakasniti

silaziti, sići

pisati, napisati

sjećati se (+ gen.), sjetiti se

čitati, pročitati

prolaziti, proći

kriti (krijem), sakriti

otvarati se, otvoriti se

jesti (jedem), pojesti

piti, popiti

1 The train is thirty minutes late.

2 He was late for dinner again.

3 I'm coming down by lift, wait for me at the door.

4 Excuse me, are you going to get off at the next stop?

- 5 I wrote this letter last week and it's still on my desk!
 6 She's writing to her brother in the living room.
 7 I don't remember this crossroads, are you sure this is the right way?
 8 At last he has remembered where he parked the car!
 9 Your daughter reads very well. How old is she?
 10 Leave¹ him to read his letter in peace.
 11 My friend passes by that shop every day.
 12 He passed by me in the street, but he didn't see me.
 13 I'm sure she's hiding something from us.
 14 My aunt hid her jewellery somewhere and now she can't find it.
 15 The post office opens at 8 o'clock, you can buy the stamps then.
 16 That new shop will open on the fifth of October.
 17 We never eat before 8.30 in the evening, so come when you can.
 18 Will he be able to eat this whole portion?
 19 Drink up that red wine, then you can try this white.
 20 We're drinking home-made brandy, will you (have some) too?

1 pustiti ... na miru

- (b) Complete the following sentences using the most appropriate verb in its correct form, tense and aspect:

Marko je sada skoro odrastao čovjek, ali pokušajte sada _____
 (preskakati, preskočiti) deset ili jedanaest godina i vratiti se unazad; pa zatvorite
 oči i _____ (zamišljati, zamisliti) način na koji on tada _____
 (provoditi, provesti) vrijeme dok je bio dječak. U to vrijeme, prije desetak godina
 dok je živio na selu samo _____ (čitati, pročitati), a otac ga
 _____ (poučavati, poučiti). Kad _____ (ne učiti, ne naučiti),
 _____ (sjediti, sjesti) na suncu i _____ (spavati, zaspati).
 Danas se Marko dobro _____ (sjećati se, sjetiti se) svoga djetinjstva.

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| preskakati | to jump over, across | unazad | backwards |
| zamišljati | to imagine | poučavati | to teach, instruct |

Dialogue 4

The translation is in the 'Key to exercises' at the end of the book. As usual, try to read the Dialogue first without referring to it.

Two friends are talking. One is being nosy and the other is out of sorts.

- Tko ti je došao?
- Nitko, bio sam sam.
- Gdje je onaj mladić koji je bio s vama u subotu?
- Ne znam; otišao je nekamo.
- Čija je ta lijepa crna torba?
- Ne znam, sigurno ju je netko zaboravio.
- Je li to kuća u kojoj si se rodio?

- Tako su mi rekli, ja se ne sjećam!
- Kakav je bio grad u kojem si odrastao?
- Malen i dosadan. Svatko mlad je htio pobjeći.
- Onda je valjda bio sve manji!
- Ne, u početku nam se činilo da grad nije ničiji, a polako je postajao naš.
- Vidaš li se s nekim starim prijateljima?
- Ni s kim.
- Kakvi su ti sada planovi?
- Nemam nikakvih planova.
- Zašto si tako neraspoložen?
- Ni zbog čega. Valjda zbog vremena!

Reading passage 1

Mr and Mrs Jović are shopping.

Jovići su krenuli u kupnju. Gđa. Jovićće ići najprije u pekarnicu. Tamo će kupiti kruha i peciva. Kupit će pola raženog kruha, mali bijeli kruh i četiri peciva. Zatim će ići u mljekarnicu. Cijela obitelj voli mliječne proizvode pa će kupiti jogurta, kiselog mlijeka, razne sireve i vrhnje za kolač koji će ispeći poslije podne. Zatim će poći u mesnicu. Tamo će kupiti jetrice, mljevene govedine, kobasice, slanine, nekoliko odrezaka, janjećih kotleta, bubrega i šunke. U međuvremenu je njen muž otišao na tržnicu. On će tamo kupiti krumpira, luka, špinata, cvjetače, patlidžana i češnjaka. Na kraju će se muž i žena naći u slastičarnici gdje će se počastiti porcijom kremšnita i kapučinom.



Tržnica 'Dolac' u Zagrebu

Shopping for food

| | | | |
|--------------------------|---|--------------------|-------------|
| pekarnica | baker's shop | pecivo | roll |
| raženi kruh | rye bread | mljekarnica | dairy |
| mliječni proizvod | milk product | jogurt | yogurt |
| kiselo mlijeko | sour milk (thicker than jogurt) | sir | cheese |
| | | vrhnje | cream |
| | | mesnica | butcher |
| jetrica | liver | mljevena | minced beef |

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| kobasica | sausage | | govedina |
| slanina | bacon | odrezak | cutlet |
| kotlet | chop | bubreg | kidney |
| šunka | ham | tržnica | market |
| krumpir | potatoes | luk | onions |
| špinat | spinach | cvjetača | cauliflower |
| patlidžan | aubergine | češnjak | garlic |
| slastičarnica | confectioner | kremšnita | cream cake |
| kapučino | cappuccino coffee | častiti nekoga nečime | to treat someone to something |
| ispeći (pf.) | to bake | | |

Exercise 5

(a) Complete the dialogue (you are in a general grocer's shop):

PRODAVAČICA: Izvolite, što želite?

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Imamo i crnog i bijelog kruha. Imamo i peciva.

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Izvolite peciva. Želite li još nešto?

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Imamo ovaj ukusni bijeli sir.

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Izvolite dvadeset deka sira. Još nešto?

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Imamo ove kobasice, salamu i pršut.

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Ima grožđa, smokava, breskvi.

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Evo vam grožđa. Još nešto?

VI: _____

PRODAVAČICA: Izvolite račun. Platite na blagajni, molim.

(b) Complete the sentences with the most appropriate words:

1 U pekarnici se može kupiti _____ .

(a) kruh i pecivo (b) mlijeko i jogurt (c) odjeća i obuća

2 U mljekarnici se mogu kupiti _____ .

(a) povrće i voće (b) mliječni proizvodi (c) meso i kobasice

3 U mesnici se mogu kupiti _____ .

(a) kotleti, kobasice i šunka (b) mliječni proizvodi (c) kruh i pecivo

4 Na tržnici se može kupiti _____ .

(a) slanina i kobasice (b) voće i povrće (c) kapučino

5 U slastičarnici se jedu _____ .

(a) kobasice i krumpiri (b) kolači (c) kava

Reading passage 2

Priča našeg vremena (17)

Mark has decided to try to draw up an import–export contract with the firm. Where did he go today? What products did he think could be sold on the UK market? What kind of British products did he think he could place in Croatia? What does he need to do now?

Danas sam bio na sastanku u prvoj tvornici koju smo posjetili. Njihovi su glavni proizvodi voćni sokovi i marmelade. Vjerujem da bi ti proizvodi mogli uspjeti na našem tržištu. Istovremeno, želio bih plasirati neke britanske proizvode, keks, naprimjer, čiji bi osnovni sastojak također bio voće. Sada moram saznati od upravnog odbora sve detalje o uvjetima za uvoz proizvoda iz inozemstva, o porezima i općenito o postupku oko toga.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------|
| istovremeno | at the same time | keks | biscuits |
| marmelada | jam | općenito | generally |
| osnovan | basic | porez | tax |
| postupak | procedure, step | sastojak | component |
| saznati | to find out | tržište | market |
| upravni odbor | managing committee, board | uvjet | condition |
| | | uvoz | import |
| voćni sok | fruit juice | | |

Exercise 6[†]

Prevedite ove rečenice na hrvatski ‘Translate these sentences into Croatian’:

- Someone has come to see you.
- I don't want to see anyone!
- Was anyone at home?
- No, there was no one.¹
- What were you talking about?
- Who will they give the book to?

- 7 He was telling me about someone in the hotel.
 8 Who were you with at the sea?
 9 Whose is that beautiful house?
 10 What shall I write with? I haven't got a pencil.²

1 use **nije bilo** + gen.; 2 **olovka**

Dialogue 5

Ljubavna priča (17)

Mate wants to know exactly what is going on. Where does Mate stop? What does Mara say about her feelings? How does Mate react? What does he suggest that Mara does?

Kad su sišli s autobusa, Mate je uzeo Maru za ruku i zaustavio se pod svjetiljkom. Naslonio se o stup.

- Slušaj, Maro – reče – zašto si tako tajanstvena? Želim znati što se događa. Zašto si rekla 'pogotovo ne sa mnom'? Ima tu nešto što ja ne razumijem.
- Bolje ne pitati, Mate. Bolje da se ne izražava riječima ... Osjećam se čudno otkad si ti među nama. Želim biti stalno kraj tebe. Sada, sama s tobom u ovoj noći čini mi se da sam u raju. Želim da ovaj trenutak potraje zauvijek. Ali čim to kažem znam da će sve odmah završiti.
- Jesi li normalna? A Ivo? Dok sam gost u njegovoj kući? Kako ti nešto takvo može pasti na pamet!
- Nemoj, Mate, molim te! Kažem ti, znam da je sve gotovo čim se izrazi riječima. Ah, tako mi je bilo lijepo večeras, i tako je kratko trajalo!
- Nemoj biti patetična. Nije se ništa dogodilo. Ionako se moram vratiti kući.
- Kako se zove tvoja djevojka?
- Zašto pitaš? Nije zbog nje.
- Nego?
- Hajde. Gdje ti je kuća? Kasno je već.
- Dakle, gotovo je.
- Nije ništa gotovo, ništa nije ni bilo. Hajde, uđi i mirno spavaj. Ujutro će ti se ovaj razgovor činiti smiješnim.
- Laku noć. Daj da se rukujemo i ne ljuti se na mene ...

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| gotovo | finished | ionako | in any case |
| izražavati (imp.), izraziti (pf.) | to express | jesi li normalan? | are you crazy? |
| | | kratak | short |
| kuća | house | nasloniti se (pf.) | to lean |
| otkad | since | raj | paradise |

| | | | |
|--|----------------|-------------------|------------|
| rukovati se (imp. rukujem se) | to shake hands | smiješan | funny |
| | | stup | post |
| svjetiljka | light | tajanstven | mysterious |
| za<u>u</u>vijek | for ever | | |

18

Prometna nesreća

Road accident

In this unit we will look at:

- the imperative
- negative imperatives
- adjective phrases expressed by verbs
- aspect 3
- parts of the body

Dialogue 1



Auto se sudario s kamionom

A car has run into a truck

On the road again, the Camerons come upon a traffic accident. What did Alan think he heard? What did they see round the bend? When had the accident happened? Were the children hurt? How did the truck driver look? What did Alan ask Nora?

Auto je uskoro bio popravljen i krenuli su ponovno na put. Vozili su se kroz lijepi, brjegoviti pejisaž Gorskog kotara. Kod jednog zavoja, Alanu se učinilo da čuje jak tresak, kao da su se dva auto-mobila sudarila. I Nora je nešto čula.

NORA: Uspori vožnju, Alane, nešto se dogodilo ispred nas!

ALAN: Morat ću naglo kočiti. Pazite!

Iza zavoja su ugledali strašan prizor: mali žuti auto se sudario s kamionom. Nesreća se tek dogodila i nisu skoro ništa vidjeli od guste prašine.

ALAN: Pričekajte ovdje!

Alan je iskočio iz auta i otrčao do žutog automobila.

ALAN: Je li tko ozlijeđen?

PRVI VOZAČ: Pomozite mi otvoriti vrata, mislim da sam slomio ruku. Pogledajte što je s djecom otraga.

DJEČJI GLAS: Ništa nam nije, tata. Beba se uplašila i udarili smo se jako o sjedala, ali imat ćemo samo modrice. Ne brini se!

PRVI VOZAČ: Hvala Bogu, samo da ste mi živi!

Dok im je Alan pomagao prišao im je i vozač kamiona. Bio je potpuno blijed, uplašen i ljut.

DRUGI VOZAČ: Kakav je to način vožnje! Prvo nauči voziti pa onda sjedni za volan! Nemoj pretjecati na zavojima, jesi li normalan!

ALAN: Smirite se, molim vas, svi ste doživjeli strašan šok. O tome ćete kasnije. Sad treba pozvati policiju. Ima li svjedoka? Ne dirajte vozila! Nora, imaš li tople kave u termosici? Daj svima i pričekajte svi ovdje dok se ne vratim.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|----------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| brjegovit | hilly | dirati (imp.) | to touch |
| doživjeti (pf. doživim) | to experience | gust | thick, dense |
| | | hvala bogu | thank God |
| iskočiti (pf.) | to jump out | kamion | lorry |
| kočiti (imp.) | to brake | ljut | angry |
| modrica | bruise | način | way |
| naglo | abruptly | nesreća | accident, misfortune |
| otraga | behind | | |
| ozlijeđen | hurt, wounded | prašina | dust |
| pretjecati (pf. pretječem) | to overtake | prizor | scene, sight |
| | | sjedalo | seat |
| sломiti (pf.) | to break | sudariti se (pf.) | to collide |
| svjedok | witness | tresak (gen. treska) | bang |
| udariti se (pf.) | to knock into | | |
| uplašiti se (pf.) | to be frightened | volan | steering wheel |
| vozač | driver | vozilo | vehicle |
| zavoj | bend, turn (in road) | | |

Language points 1

Formation of the imperative

To form the imperative, take the third person plural of the present tense and remove the final vowel. The stem will end either in **-j** or in a consonant.

(i) If the stem then ends in **-j**, add nothing for second person singular and **-jmo**, **-jte** for first and second person plural as below:

| | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| | | <i>čekaju</i> | <i>piju</i> | <i>boje se</i> |
| 2nd pers. sing. | čekaj! | -j | pij! | boj se! |

| | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1st pers. pl. | -jmo | čekajmo! | pijmo! | bojmo se! |
| 2nd pers. pl. | -jte | čekajte! | pijte! | bojte se! |

(ii) If the stem ends in a consonant, add the following endings:

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|------------------|----------------|
| | | <i>govore</i> | <i>pišu</i> |
| 2nd pers. sing. | -i | govori! | piši! |
| 1st pers. pl. | -imo | govorimo! | pišimo! |
| 2nd pers. pl. | -ite | govorite! | pišite! |

(iii) With verbs whose infinitive ends in **-ći**, the formation of the imperative is not quite so straightforward: the endings are added not to the present tense stem, but to the infinitive stem. The original infinitive stem cannot always be easily deduced and the imperatives should therefore be learned as they occur. A good dictionary will provide them. Examples:

reći (derived from
rek-ti, k + i = c): reci, recimo, recite
pomoći
(pomog-ti, g + i = z): pomози, pomozimo, pomozite

Note: **ići** and its derivatives form the imperative from the present tense stem:

(idu) idi, idimo, idite

Also, colloquial: **Ajde! Ajmo! (Hajde! Hajmo!)**

(dođu) dođi, dođimo, dođite

(iv) Imperative of **biti**:

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| budi | 2nd pers. sing. |
| budimo | 1st pers. pl. |
| budite | 2nd pers. pl. |
| Budi razuman! | Be sensible! |
| Budimo ljudi! | Let's be decent human beings! |
| Budite ljubazni! | Be so kind (as to ...) |

(v) Imperatives of other persons: these are formed by using the present tense and **da** or **neka**:

First person singular **da** + present:

Da vidim! Let me see!

Third person singular and plural **neka** + present:

Neka dođe! Let him come!

Neka čekaju!

Let them wait!

Exercise 1

(a) Give the imperative, all three persons, of the following verbs:

obećati putovati (putujem) kupovati (kupujem)

dati pričati očekivati (očekujem)

kriti (krijem) stajati (stojim) čuti (čujem)

zahvaljivati se (zahvaljujem se)

(b) Give the imperative of the following verbs:

zaspiti (zaspim) šutjeti (šutim) prati (perem)

posjetiti donijeti (donesem) bježati (bježim)

učiti pušiti ustati (ustanem) staviti

(c)† Rewrite the sentences in the imperative:

1 Kupit ćeš hranu za večeru.

2 Idete u školu.

3 Ručali smo i onda smo otišli na posao.

4 Uzimate lijek svaki dan.

5 Doći ćeš sutra.

6 Ti si dobar.

7 Govoriš glasno.

8 Kupujemo samo organsku hranu.

9 Pogledali ste taj film.

10 Pomoći ćemo joj da se preseli.

Dialogue 2

Kod liječnika

At the doctor's

(a) *In Zadar, the Camerons easily found Ranko's grandmother's house. How is Ranko's mother? Why does Alan want to see a doctor? What does Ranko's grandmother say she'll do? What does the doctor give Alan? What does he suggest to Nora?*

BAKA: Jako je ljubazno od vas što ste Ranka doveli k meni. Puno ste nam pomogli.

NORA: Kako vam je sada kći?

BAKA: Hvala na pitanju. Sad joj je bolje. Morali su je operirati i sada mora ležati u bolnici još tjedan dana. Poslije toga bi trebala otići petnaest dana na oporavak.

ALAN: Dugo to traje, dakle.

BAKA: Da, ali, hvala Bogu, nije više opasno. Sada mora samo biti malo opreznija, i kažu liječnici da će uskoro moći živjeti potpuno normalnim životom.

NORA: To nam je jako drago čuti.

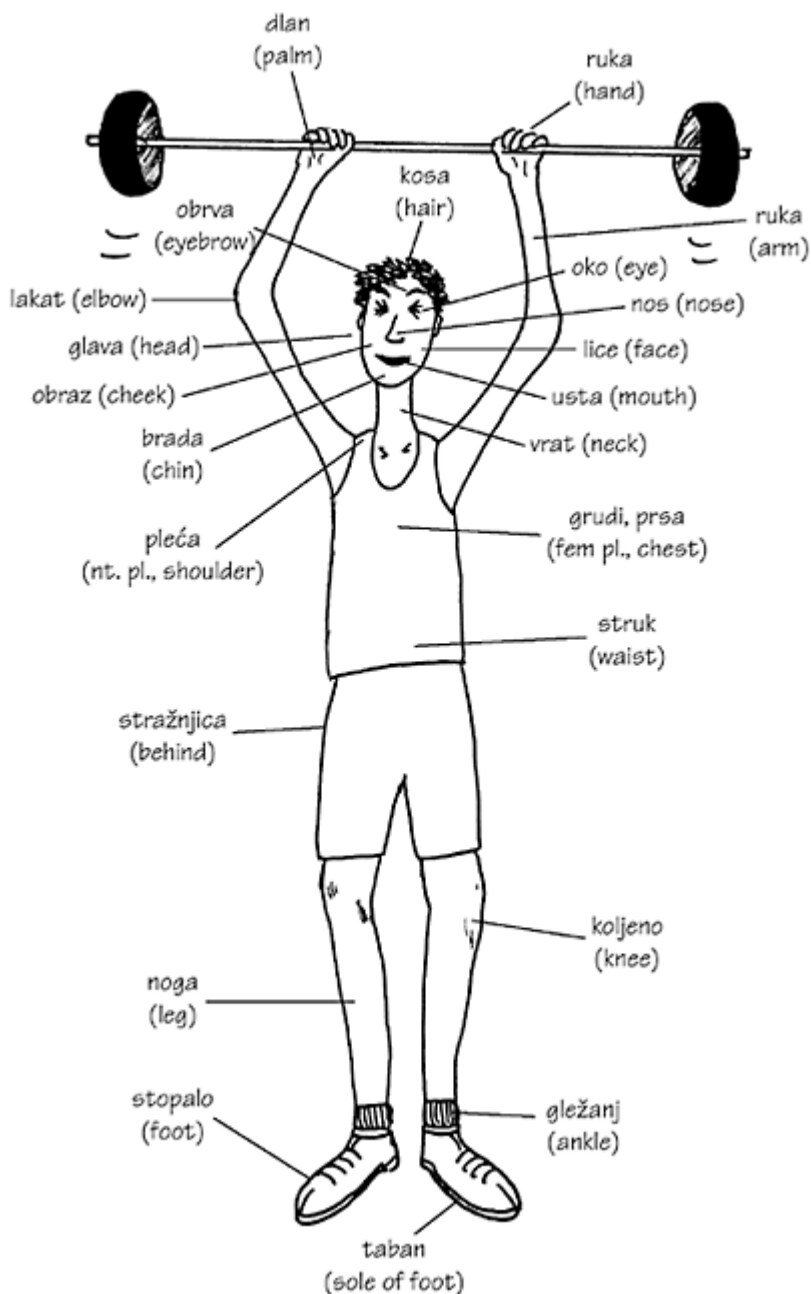
ALAN: Kad smo već kod zdravlja, mislim da bi bilo pametno da mi svratimo do liječnika dok smo u Zadru. Na početku našeg puta ovamo, ozlijedio sam lakat i nikako da krene na bolje. Boli me kad vozim i postaje dosta neugodno. Volio bih da ga liječnik pregleda.

BAKA: To neće biti nikakav problem. Vjerujem da će moj liječnik biti večeras u ambulanti. Sad ću nazvati medicinsku sestru da provjerim.

NORA: Mogu li i ja poći u isto vrijeme? Mene glava prilično gadno zaboli ako sam predugo na suncu i ne znam koji bi mi lijek protiv glavobolje najviše pomogao.

BAKA: Vratit ću se odmah. Vi se odmorite od puta.

* * *



LJIJEČNIK: Dobra večer, gospodo Cameron. Pregledao sam vam supruga i dao sam mu recept za mast za lakat. Odnosite to u ljekarnu. Treba lakat dobro namazati ujutro i prije spavanja. Počet će odmah djelovati. A vama trebaju neke tablete i prašak za

glavobolju, je li tako? Dat ću vam nešto jako, a preporučujem vam da pijete što više mineralne vode i po mogućnosti izbjegavate najjače sunce.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|--------------|--|----------------------------|
| ambulant | clinic | boljeti (imp. bolim) | to hurt |
| djelovati (imp. djelujem) | to act | gadan | horrible |
| glavobolja | headache | lakat (gen. lakta) | elbow |
| liječnik | doctor | lijek | medicine |
| ljekarna | chemist | mast (f.) | ointment |
| medicinska sestra | nurse | opasan, -sna operirati (imp.) (+ dir. obj.) | dangerous to operate |
| oporavak (gen. oporavka) | recuperation | pametan, -tan | clever, sensible |
| postajati (imp. postajem) | to become | predugo provjeriti (pf.) | too long to check |
| prašak (gen. praška) | powder | recept svratiti (pf.) | prescription to call on |
| zdravlje | health | | |

(b) The translation is in the 'Key to exercises' at the end of the book. Try to read the dialogue without consulting it. You can then use the Key to translate the dialogue back into Croatian.

MEDICINSKA SESTRA: Izvolite, kako vam mogu pomoći?

BOLESNIK: Mislim da moram vidjeti liječnika.

LIJEČNIK: Izvolite sjesti. Kako se osjećate?

BOLESNIK: Ne osjećam se dobro. Bolestan sam već nekoliko dana. Boli me glava, imam visoku temperaturu, boli me grlo, ne mogu gutati. Stalno kašljem i kišem. Naravno, curi mi i nos. Jučer sam imao temperaturu 38 s 5.

LIJEČNIK: Zašto niste došli ranije?

BOLESNIK: Mislio sam da će samo proći. Pio sam čajeve s medom i limunom i andole, ali sad me i trbuh boli.

LIJEČNIK: Skinite se da vas pregledam. Duboko dišite! Pluća su u redu, ali tlak vam je malo povišen.

BOLESNIK: Doktore, je li to ozbiljno?

LIJEČNIK: Imate gripu. Morate ležati i redovito uzimati lijekove. Napisat ću vam recept.

BOLESNIK: Hvala vam. Do viđenja.

LIJEČNIK: Do viđenja.

Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---------------------|
| gutati (imp.) | to swallow |
| kašljati (imp.) | to cough |
| kihati (imp. kišem) | to sneeze |
| curiti | to leak, run |
| andol | painkiller |
| tlak | blood pressure |
| skinuti se (pf. skinem se ; skidati se) | to take off clothes |
| gripa | flu |
| redovito | regularly |

Exercise 2[†]

(a) Complete the sentences choosing the most appropriate words from the list:

glava, kihati, kašljati, (biti) prehladen ‘to have a cold, chill’, **slomiti, temperatura, nos** ‘nose’, **trbuh** ‘stomach’, **gripa, uganuti** ‘to sprain’, **ga**

- 1 Boli je _____ .
- 2 Boli _____ grlo.
- 3 Boli ih _____ .
- 4 Imaju _____ .
- 5 Stalno _____ i _____ .
- 6 _____ sam.
- 7 _____ sam nogu.
- 8 _____ sam gležanj.¹
- 9 Imam visoku _____ .
- 10 Curi joj _____ .

1 **gležanj** ‘ankle’

(b) **Prevedite na hrvatski:**

Let me hear! Let’s go! Let me try (**probati**)! Let them sing!

Let him sit down! Let them come in! Let’s have a look!

Let’s drink this wine! Let her eat! Let them read a bit longer (**još malo**)!

Language point 2

Negative imperative

There are two methods of forming the negative imperative:

- (i) **ne** + imperative: **Ne brini se!**
 Don't worry!
- Ne dirajte!**
 Don't touch!

In these sentences, the *imperfective* aspect *must* be used. The effect of this method is sometimes rather abrupt.

- (ii) **nemoj** (2nd pers. sing.): **Nemoj to jesti!**
 Don't eat that!
- nemojmo** (1st pers. pl.) + infinitive: **Nemojmo se brinuti!**
 Don't let's worry!
- nemojte** (2nd pers. pl.) **Nemojte zakasniti!**
 Don't be late!

This method should be used for softer prohibitions. Either the imperfective or the perfective aspect may be used as appropriate.

(iii) First person singular and third persons simply insert the negative particle **ne** before the verb:

- Neka ne zaboravi!** Let him not forget!
- Neka ne čekaju!** Let them not wait!
- Da ne zakasnim!** Let me not be late!

These may also be rendered by means of a request or command to a second person to intervene:

- Nemoj da zaboravi!** Don't let him forget!
- Nemojte da zakasnim!** Don't let me be late!

Exercise 3

(a) Give the negative imperative of the following verbs:

- zaboraviti (ti) doći rano (vi)
 zakasniti (mi) misliti na to (vi)
 piti tu vodu (ti)

(b) Rewrite the following sentences in the negative imperative, giving both possible forms:

- 1 Zaboravi je!
- 2 Izlazi van!
- 3 Pojedi sve!
- 4 Pročitajte sve do sutra!
- 5 Neka nas čekaju ispred kuće!
- 6 Neka dođe!
- 7 Govori glasnije!
- 8 Radi to tako!
- 9 Čekajte me ovdje!
- 10 Neka donese knjige sutra!

Language points 3

(i) Some useful imperative phrases:

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Bježi(te)! | Go away! |
| Gubi(te)se! | Get lost! (use this with care) |
| Pusti(te) me na miru! | Leave me alone! |
| Pazi(te)! | Watch out! |
| Stani(te)! | Stop! |
| Drž'te lopova! | Stop thief! |
| Dodi ovamo! | Come here! |
| Poljubi me! | Give me a kiss! |

(ii) English adjective phrases expressed by a verb: many expressions which in English are composed of 'to be' + adjective are rendered in Croatian by a verb. These should be carefully noted as you come across them.

Examples are:

| | |
|--|---------------|
| kasniti, zakasniti | to be late |
| ljutiti se, naljutiti se | to be angry |
| strpjeti se (pf. strpim se) | to be patient |
| šutjeti (imp. šutim) | to be quiet |

Reading passage



Priča našeg vremena (18)

Mark has a meeting with representatives of head office to discuss his proposals. Why did Mark get dressed up? Where did the meeting take place? Why did the representative of the Chamber of Commerce come? Who else did Mark talk to?

Jasna je rano došla po mene da me odvede u glavni ured. Ja sam obukao svečano odijelo za taj važni sastanak. Stigli smo na vrijeme. Dočekali su nas srdačno i uveli u glavnu konferencijsku dvoranu. Čak su pozvali predstavnika Gospodarske komore koji je došao na kraju da mi objasni načela izvoznog i uvoznog sustava u Hrvatskoj. Ranije sam razgovarao o svim detaljima posla i predstavnici raznih odsjeka tvrtke su pripremili ugovore i razne druge potrebne papire.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------------|-------------|-------------------------|
| izvozni | export | načelo | principle |
| obući (pf.) | to put on (clothes) | predstavnik | representative |
| sustav | system | svečan | solemn, formal, festive |
| ugovor | contract | | |
| uvozni | import | | |

Language points 4

Aspect 3

This is a large and complex subject and we can do no more than touch on one or two features in these units. We have already looked at many examples of the practice, so we should now consider some features of the theory.

In attempting to formulate a useful description of aspect it is best to start with the more clearly marked quality of perfective verbs. Their function is to express a single finite action which cannot be divided into phases:

Pojeo sam sladoled.

I ate up the ice cream.

This sentence does not refer to the beginning, middle or end of the action or the process of eating the ice cream. It describes the totality of the action. Here is another example:

Došli smo da te vidimo.

We have come to see you.

Again there is no reference here to the business of arriving, the speaker's concern is entirely with the fact of having arrived. This is the clearest use of the perfective.

The function of imperfective verbs is vaguer. Imperfective verbs express an action which may have various different qualities, such as:

- gradual: **Jedem sladoled i gledam more.**
I am eating ice cream and looking at the sea.
- repeated: **Dolazimo često na ovu plažu.**
We often come to this beach.
- general: **Vole čitati stripove.**
They like to read comic strips.

We have described this function earlier as 'open-ended' and 'ongoing'. These terms are impressionistic and vague. The closest we can get is perhaps to say that the imperfective describes an action which is not conceived as an indivisible total. Another example of this 'open-endedness' is the use of the imperfective to describe an action which was not actually brought to completion:

Nekoliko dana se odlučivao da otputuje.

He had been deciding to leave for several days.

or He spent several days trying to make up his mind to leave.

If this is contrasted with the perfective:

Već se nekoliko puta odlučio da otputuje.

He has already decided to leave several times.

It should be clear that in the first instance the subject did not actually make the decision, whereas in the second he did, but something evidently prevented him carrying it out. Again:

Cijeli dan je gledala izloge i kupovala nove haljine, ali nijedna joj nije odgovarala.

She spent the whole day looking in shop windows and buying new dresses, but she did not like a single one.

In this case she bought the dresses in her imagination only.

Tog dana je kupila tri nove haljine.

That day she bought three new dresses.

In this case it might have taken her all day, but she did buy the dresses in the end.

Since the perfective is conceived as an indivisible totality, it will be obvious that verbs such as **početi** 'to begin', **nastaviti** 'to continue', **završiti** 'to finish' etc., which refer specifically to the phases of a process (the beginning, middle and end, respectively), must be followed by the imperfective:

Počela sam učiti vaš jezik; tko zna hoću li ga ikad naučiti!

I have begun to study your language; who knows if I'll ever learn it!

Probudit ćemo susjede, ako nastavimo ovako glasno pjevati!

We'll wake the neighbours, if we carry on singing so loudly!

Kad završite čitati, posudite mi tu knjigu, molim vas.

When you've finished reading, please lend me that book.

Language in action

Translation of 'it depends'

This is usually rendered by **ovisi o** + locative, for example: **ovisi o vremenu** 'it depends on the weather'. A useful way of expressing English 'it depends when' etc. is to add the conjunction **kako** to the adverb or pronoun you wish to qualify:

Volite li hladno pivo?

Do you like cold beer?

Kako kad.

It depends, sometimes.

Voli li vaša obitelj lignje?

Does your family like squid?

Kako tko.

It depends, some do.

Može li se kupati u toplesu na Jadranu?

Is there topless bathing on the Adriatic?

Kako gdje.

It depends, in some places.

Exercise 4

(a) Odgovorite na pitanja:

- 1 Kada su ponovno krenuli na put?
- 2 Kakav je bio pejzaž?
- 3 Kako se zove kraj kroz koji su se vozili?
- 4 Što je čuo Alan?
- 5 Što su ugledali iza zavoja?
- 6 Je li netko bio ozlijeđen?
- 7 Što je bilo s djecom?
- 8 Kako je izgledao vozač kamiona?
- 9 Što je radio Alan?
- 10 Jeste li vi doživjeli prometnu nesreću?

(b) † Prevedite na hrvatski:

It's difficult to be a child. Your parents, teachers, anyone (**bilo tko**) who is older, all keep telling you (**stalno govoriti**) what you have to do: 'Get

up, get dressed, clean your teeth, make your bed, don't forget to comb your hair, don't be late for the bus, eat it all up, be home at seven o'clock, telephone as soon as you arrive, come here, don't be rude (**biti bezobrazan**), don't speak to me like that! I wonder (**pitati se**), shall I talk to my children like that?

| | |
|---|-------------------|
| ustati (pf. ustanem) | to get up |
| obući se (pf. obučem se) | to dress |
| zub | tooth |
| namjestiti (pf.) krevet | to make one's bed |
| očesljati (pf.) kosu | to comb hair |
| dijete (n.) | child |
| djeca (coll. f. sing.) | children |

(c)[†] Choose the most appropriate word:

1 Osjećam se loše, mislim da imam _____ .

(a) prehladen (b) gripu (c) boli

2 _____ me glava.

(a) boli (b) imam (c) osjećam se

3 _____ lijekove dva puta dnevno.

(a) jedem (b) imam (c) uzimam

4 Slomio sam _____ .

(a) nogu (b) glavu (c) zub

5 _____ sam.

(a) boli (b) prehladen (c) gripa

(d)[†] Choose the correct verb from the list: **kupovati/kupiti; trošiti/potrošiti; putovati/otputovati; dolaziti/doći; izlaziti/izaći; ulaziti/ući; čitati/pročitati; piti/popiti; pisati/napisati; spavati/zaspati**

1 Obično _____ hranu u samoposluživanju, ali jučer sam sve _____ na tržnici.

2 Kad _____ svoju mjesečnu plaću, onda počnem _____ svoju uštedevinu.

- 3 Najviše volim _____ vlakom, ali sutra moram _____ zrakoplovom.
 4 Nemoj _____ svaki dan, nego samo _____ kad imaš vremena.
 5 Moj muž je _____ prije pet minuta, on obično ne _____ ovako kasno.
 6 Ne možemo sada _____ u dizalo jer nema dovoljno mjesta. Na ova se vrata samo _____ .
 7 Kad ti _____ knjigu, onda ću je ja početi _____ .
 8 Ja _____ kavu svako jutro. Kad _____ sve, kupit ćemo još.
 9 _____ sam razglednicu prijatelju, a poslije podne ću _____ e-mailove.
 10 _____ cijelu noć čim _____ .

plaća pay, salary **ušteđevina** savings

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (18)

How does Mara spend the day? What do her parents think? Who did she telephone? Does Mara agree with Vesna that it was good that Mate saw her home? What will Mara do later?

Sljedećeg dana, Mara ustaje kasno. Mate joj je stalno na pameti. Vrti se oko telefona. Pali kompjutor i provjerava mail. Nema poruke. Na kraju izlazi u dugu šetnju s psom. Roditelji je sumnjivo gledaju.

- Što ti je, dušo? Da nisi bolesna?
- Nisam. Ništa mi nije. Želim malo prošetati. Pustite me na miru.

Kad se vrati poslije podne, odmah sjedne da telefonira Vesni.

- Ah, Maro, gdje si bila? Ivo te je više puta tražio. Nije bilo nikoga kod tebe pa nije znao gdje da te nađe. Mobitel ti je bio isključen ...
- Izašla sam. Je li ti Ivo nešto rekao?
- U vezi s čime?
- S Matom. Možda će uskoro otići.
- Kako ti je bilo s njim? Dobro je ispalo što te je mogao otpratiti, zar ne?
- Ne znam, možda baš nije bilo dobro.
- Zašto?
- Previše sam mu rekla. Zato će tako brzo otići.
- A možda neće, daj nazovi Ivu pa vidi.
- Hoću. Svratit ću kasnije do tebe, može?
- Naravno. Bog.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| daj (imp. of dati) | go on | dušo (voc.) | dear (lit. 'soul') |
| ispasti (pf. ispadnem) | to turn out (lit. 'to fall out') | pamet (f.) | mind |

| | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------|--|-----------------|
| u vezi (s + instr.) | in connection with | pas | dog |
| | | više puta | several times |
| | | vr̄tjeti se (imp. vr̄tim) | to turn, fidget |

19

Razgovor o svakodnevnom životu

Conversation about everyday life

In this unit we will look at:

- the conditional: 'I would' etc.
- conditional clauses
- reflexive phrases

Dialogue 1

Razgovor o vremenu

Towards the end of the day, Alan and Nora go for a walk with Ranko. They discuss the Dalmatian climate. What does Nora suggest they do? What is the weather like? Is it always fine on the Dalmatian coast? When can one have a free holiday on the island of Hvar? What does Alan suggest at the end?

Potkraj dana su krenuli u šetnju da potraže sobu. Alan i Nora su se divili lijepoj plavoj boji mora.

ALAN: More izgleda tako privlačno! Da smo samo ranije stigli, mogli bismo se odmah okupati.

NORA: Nema veze, ima vremena! Ako brzo nađemo sobu barem ćemo moći sjesti i nešto popiti pokraj mora.

ALAN: Ali pogledajte kako je nebo oblačno. Bojim se da bi sutra mogla padati kiša. Što misliš, mali?

RANKO: Možda, ali ako padne neće dugo.

NORA: Je li ljeti uvijek lijepo ovdje na moru?

RANKO: Pa, ne, ponekad puše bura. To obično traje dan dva, pa je onda opet lijepo.

ALAN: Ako je vrijeme jako toplo, ima valjda ponekad oluje s grmljavinom?

RANKO: Ima. Ja to volim!

NORA: A kakvo je vrijeme ovdje zimi?

RANKO: Vjeter puše. Može biti kišovito. Ali nije nikad jako hladno.

ALAN: Čuo sam da je boravak u hotelu na Hvaru zimi besplatan ako temperatura padne ispod određene granice.

NORA: Plaća se pola cijene ako je hladno, a besplatno je tek ako padne snijeg.

ALAN: Što se zaista ne bi moglo dogoditi!

NORA: Mislim da bi meni najviše odgovarao boravak na Jadranu ili u jesen ili u proljeće.

Onda je klima valjda umjerena: nije ni prehladno, a ni pretoplo. Vrućina mi škodi.

ALAN: Doći ćemo mi jedne godine u proljeće, recimo u svibnju. A sad nemojmo više pričati, gledajmo ovaj prekrasni zalazak sunca!



Vocabulary

| | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|--|------------------|
| besplatan, -tn | free, gratis | bojati se (imp. bojim se) | to be afraid |
| bura | north-east wind, storm | cijena | price |
| diviti se | to admire, wonder at | grānica | limit |
| | | grmljavina | thunder |
| kiša | rain | kišovit | rainy |
| nema veze | never mind | oblačan, -čna | cloudy |
| oblak | cloud | odgovarati (imp.) | to suit |
| okupati se (imp. kupati se) | to bathe | olujā | storm |
| | | padati (imp.) (pf. pasti, padnem) | to fall |
| potkraj (+ gen.) | towards the end | | |
| puhati (imp. pušem) | to blow | snijeg | snow |
| | | škoditi (imp.) | to harm (+ dat.) |
| stupanj (gen. stupnja) | degree | umjeren | moderate |
| svibanj | May | vjetar (gen. vjetra) | wind |
| vani | outside | | |
| zalazak sunca | sunset | | |

Language points 1

Formation of the conditional

This mood expresses such statements as ‘I would like to live here’, ‘That really could not happen’. In Croatian it is a compound tense composed of the active present participle (the same as that used for the perfect) and an old past tense of **biti** called the aorist.

Generally speaking, the auxiliary is placed in the same position as other auxiliary (enclitic) verbs (**sam** etc. and **ću** etc.). There are therefore two possible positions for the participle, depending on whether or not the pronoun, or other preceding word, is used.

citati

| <i>Pron.</i> | <i>Auxiliary</i> | <i>Participle</i> | <i>or</i> | <i>Participle</i> | <i>Auxiliary</i> |
|--------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------------|------------------|
| ja | bih | čitao/čitala | | čitao/čitala | bih |
| ti | bi | čitao/čitala | | čitao/čitala | bi |
| on | bi | čitao | | čitao | bi |
| ona | bi | čitala | | čitala | bi |
| ono | bi | čitalo | | čitalo | bi |
| mi | bismo | čitali/čitale | | čitali/čitale | bismo |
| vi | biste | čitali/čitale | | čitali/čitale | biste |
| oni | bi | čitali | | čitali | bi |
| one | bi | čitale | | čitale | bi |
| ona | bi | čitala | | čitala | bi |

Negative: The negative particle **ne** is placed immediately before the auxiliary: **Ja ne bih čitao, Ne bih čitao.**

Ne bih nikad od njega kupio auto.

I'd never buy a car from him.

Ne bi slušala.

She wouldn't listen.

Ne biste stigli na vrijeme.

You wouldn't get there in time.

Interrogative:

| <i>Question marker</i> | <i>Auxiliary</i> | <i>Participle</i> | |
|------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| Zašto | biste (vi) | stajali? | Why should you stand? |
| Koliko | bih (ja) | platila? | How much would I pay? |
| Gdje | bi (oni) | ručali? | Where would they have lunch? |
| Kada | bi (ona) | došla? | When would she come? |

Da li **bismo** **zakasnili?** Would we be late?

But we have seen that Croatian prefers the construction verb + **li** to **da li** + verb. The following structure for the interrogative conditional is then preferred in Croatian:

Bih li (ja) došao?

Would I come?

Bi li (ti) pjevala?

Would you sing?

Bi li (on) vozio auto?

Would he drive the car?

Biste li (vi) mogli pomoći oko kupovanja?

Would you be able to help with the shopping?

Such questions may then be answered by the auxiliary on its own:

Biste li putovali s nama? Bismo.

Would you travel with us? Yes.

Bi li on mogao ući? Bi.

Could he come in? Yes.

Bi li ti pušila? Bih!

Would you smoke? Yes!

Exercise 1

(a)† **Prevedite sljedeće rečenice na hrvatski:**

- 1 I would not want to go out today.
- 2 Would you like to travel with them?
- 3 Would we be able to help?
- 4 I would invite her, but she wouldn't come.
- 5 It would be better to have lunch here.
- 6 She would not want to sit with him.
- 7 Would you write to me?
- 8 Would he believe that?
- 9 He would not recognize¹ the children.
- 10 Could they come tomorrow?

1 prepoznati

(b) Answer the following questions, using the conditional:

- 1 Gdje biste voljeli provesti godišnji odmor?
- 2 Gdje bi vaš muž/vaša žena volio/voljela ljetovati?
- 3 Koju zemlju biste najviše voljeli posjetiti?
- 4 Što biste sada htjeli pojesti?
- 5 Kako biste se željeli obući za izlazak?
- 6 Kamo bi vaš najbolji prijatelj volio najviše oputovati?
- 7 Kako biste voljeli provesti vikend?
- 8 Kad biste se najradije željeli ustajati svaki dan?
- 9 Biste li voljeli promijeniti posao?
- 10 Koji biste film voljeli pogledati?

Language points 2

Formation of the conditional

As a rule, English 'would' may be translated by **bih** etc. In addition to conditionals, it is used to express:

- Habitual actions:

Pročitao bi po pet knjiga svakog tjedna.

He would read some five books each week.

- Softened requests, statements and commands:

Biste li otvorili prozor?

Would you open the window?

Nešto bih vas pitao.

I would (like to) ask you something.

Ne bih to preporučila.

I wouldn't recommend that.

Ne bih to radio.

I wouldn't do that.

Conditional clauses 1

In Croatian you must distinguish between *real* and *unreal* conditions. In real conditions 'if' is translated by **ako** and the tenses are the same as in English:

Ako nademo smještaj, prenoćit ćemo ovdje.

If we find accommodation, we'll spend the night here.

Ako je lijepo vrijeme, uvijek večeraju vani.

If it's nice weather, they always have dinner outside.

Ako je on to rekao, možemo mu vjerovati.

If he said that, we can believe him.

The future perfect is used in real conditional sentences to express a future action which precedes another action in the future:

Ako budem imao vremena, ići ću s tobom na kavu.

If I have time, I will go for a coffee with you.

Ako budeš kupovao auto, reci mi.

If you buy a car, let me know.

Exercise 2[†]

Write the verbs in the brackets using the correct form:

1 Ako (ti) _____ (**moći**), pomoz mi da se preselim.

- 2 Sutra ću ići na trčanje ako _____ (**biti**) vrijeme lijepo.
 3 Ako sutra _____ (**ne padati**) kiša, idemo na izlet.
 4 _____ (**nazvati**) te ako budem imao problema.
 5 Ako _____ (**ne imati**) vremena, nemoj doći.
 6 Ako (**ti**) _____ (**čitati**) novine poslije podne, pročitaj članak o Hrvatskoj.
 7 Kupi mi čokoladu ako _____ (**otići**) u prodavaonicu.
 8 Nemoj jesti orahe ako _____ (**biti**) alergična na njih.
 9 Uzmi moj auto ako _____ (**morati**) ići na posao rano ujutro.
 10 Ako (**on**) _____ (**voljeti**) more, neka ide u Dalmaciju.

Dialogue 2

Razgovor o svakodnevnom zš ivotu

Conversation about everyday life

The Camerons arrive in Dubrovnik and meet up with their friends Nikola and Zdenka, whom they had got to know the previous year in England. What is important for Nikola on holiday? When does he have to be at work? Why does he like starting early? Do schools start early as well? What do you think 'baka-servis' is?

ALAN: Eto, mislim da smo vam ispričali sve u vezi s putovanjem ovamo. Uglavnom je bilo jako ugodno.

NIKOLA: Za mene je na odmoru uvijek glavno da izađem iz kolotečine, da ne moram ustajati u određeno vrijeme, da mogu raditi što želim i kada želim ...

NORA: Imaš li jako strogo radno vrijeme?

NIKOLA: Prilično. Radnim danom ustajem rano, u pola šest, a onda mi postaje teško promijeniti naviku.

ALAN: Tako rano ti počinje posao?

NIKOLA: U uredu sam u sedam. Čovjek se navikne. Može biti čak i ugodno, pogotovo ljeti. A još je ugodnije što posao završava rano popodne. Tada si slobodan da na miru ručaš, da odspavaš, da radiš što te je volja.

NORA: Idu li djeca u školu tako rano ujutro?

NIKOLA: Većina naših škola radi u dvije smjene. To znači da dijete ide u školu jedan tjedan prije, a jedan poslije podne. To je ponekad komplicirano ako oba roditelja rade, i ako ta obitelj nema 'baka-servis'!

ZDENKA: Meni je pak najdraže na odmoru to što ne moram misliti na kupnju i kuhanje, niti na račune – za plin, za struju, za telefon.

ALAN: Jesu li te stvari kod vas skupe?

ZDENKA: Pa znaš kako je, sve ti se čini mnogo kad ti je plaća mala.

Vocabulary

ispričati (pf.)

to relate

kolotečina

routine

| | | | |
|---|----------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| na miru | in peace | navika | habit |
| navika<u>v</u>ati se (imp. naviknuti se, naviknem) | to get used | odmor | rest |
| | | odsp<u>g</u>vati (pf.) | to take a nap |
| | | plaća | pay, salary |
| plin | gas | promij<u>e</u>niti (pf.) | to change |
| ptica | bird | smjena | shift |
| strog | strict, severe | struja | current, electricity |
| svakodnevni | everyday | | |
| većina | majority | volja | will |
| zora | dawn | | |

Language points 3

Conditional statements 2

(i) *Unreal conditions*. These are statements in which the condition has not been or will not be met, such as:

If you were here, you would see him.
 (But you are not, so you cannot.)
 If it had not been raining, we would have gone out.
 (But it was, so we did not.)

In such sentences in Croatian, the verb in the main clause is in the conditional, as you would expect. What is different is the 'if' clause.

The two sentences above could also be expressed:

Were you here, ...
 Had it not been raining, ...

In this case the unreality of the propositions is more obvious. So, when you need to translate an English 'if' clause, you should see whether the 'if' can be omitted in this way. This does not always work, but it is a useful rough guide.

The subordinate clause in such cases is introduced by the conjunction **da** + appropriate tense:

Da si ovdje, vidio bi ga.
Da nije padala kiša, izašli bismo.

(ii) There is also a category of potentially realizable conditions, e.g. 'If he were to come on time, we would be able to see him'. The subordinate clause in such sentences in Croatian is introduced by **kad** or **ako** + conditional:

Kad bi došao na vrijeme, mogli bismo ga vidjeti.

Also:

Ako bi se javila, rekao bih da te nema.

If she were to phone, I'd say you weren't in.

Exercise 3

(a)† **Prevedite sljedeće rečenice na hrvatski:**

- 1 If you want to see them, come straight away.
- 2 If you knew what she told me, you would not laugh.
- 3 If we go by this road, we'll reach the coast sooner.
- 4 If you wanted to see him, why didn't you say so?
- 5 If I had read the letter, I would have known you were coming.
- 6 You would have liked the film if you had seen it.
- 7 Would they have travelled with us if we had gone by train?
- 8 If she had arrived on time, she would have met our son.
- 9 Please tell me if the plane is late.
- 10 If you are hungry, you can have dinner with us.

(b)† Write the correct forms of the verbs:

- 1 Da (**ja**) _____ (**imati**) auto, _____ (**otići**) na izlet.
- 2 Kad (**ja**) _____ (**biti**) star kao on, puno _____ (**putovati**).
- 3 Da sam došao na vrijeme, _____ (**sresti**) ga.
- 4 Da _____ (**imati**) vremena, _____ (**otići**) s tobom na kavu.
- 5 Nazvao bih ga odmah da _____ (**biti, on**) kod kuće.
- 6 Da _____ (**biti**) ja na tvom mjestu, _____ (**ne raditi**) i vikendom.
- 7 Da (**ja**) _____ (**imati**) puno novaca, _____ (**kupiti**) kuću na moru.
- 8 Kad bih našao posao koji volim, _____ (**biti**) jako sretan.
- 9 Da (**ja**) _____ (**govoriti**) talijanski, _____ (**dobiti**) posao.
- 10 Da _____ (**ne puhati**) bura, _____ (**voziti**) trajekti.

(c) What would you do in the following situations? Write sentences using the conditional:

- 1 Ivan je u gradu. Kad je krenuo u grad, bilo je sunčano, a sada je oblačno i sigurno će pasti kiša. Postalo je hladno. On nema ni kišobrana ni tople odjeće.
- 2 Marko je krenuo na put svojim autom, ali nije obavio tehnički pregled prije puta. Sada čuje kako motor lupa. Nešto nije u redu.
- 3 Marija je otišla na tržnicu. Kad je htjela nešto kupiti shvatila je da nema novčanik.
- 4 Petar Marković ima 50 godina. Njegova tvrtka je bankrotirala i on je izgubio posao. Sad nikako ne može naći novi posao.

5 Želim ići u kino, ali karte su rasprodane. Trebao sam na vrijeme rezervirati karte.

Language points 4

Reflexive passive

One of the main methods of conveying passivity in Croatian is the use of the reflexive form of verbs which are otherwise transitive. The object of the transitive verb becomes the subject of its reflexive form:

Pije li se pivo kod vas?

Is beer drunk in your country?

Ovdje se ne govori engleski.

English is not spoken here.

Gdje se kupuju karte?

Where does one buy tickets? (Where are tickets bought?)

Kako se kaže ...?

How do you say ...? (How is it said?)

Ovdje se primaju stranke.

Clients are received here.

Reflexive verbs to express 'I feel like'

Notice this use of the reflexive, with the dative case of personal pronouns:

Meni se jede nešto s roštilja.

I feel like eating something grilled.

Spava mu se.

He's feeling like sleeping/sleepy.

Ne radi nam se.

We don't feel like working.

Exercise 4[†]

(a) Translate, using the reflexive passive:

1 I hear that very good cheese is made¹ here.

2 Can Radio Zagreb be heard in London?

3 His books are read throughout² the world.

4 The cathedral can be clearly seen on the hill.

5 Luggage is not accepted at left luggage³ after 10 p.m.

1 **praviti** to make; 2 **diljem** + gen.; 3 **garderoba**

(b) Rewrite the following sentences using the reflexive verbs and dative case of the personal pronouns:

1 Ja želim piti bijelo vino.

2 Marko želi voziti bicikl.

3 Ja hoću jesti sladoled.

4 Želim ići u kino.

5 Želimo sljedeći vikend ići na planinarenje.

6 Sanja hoće izlaziti petkom i subotom.

7 Vi hoćete ići u Španjolsku na more.

8 Ti hoćeščitati knjigu cijeli dan.

9 Ne želim raditi vikendom.

10 Oni hoće govoriti hrvatski.

Language point 5

Expression of 'whoever', 'whatever' etc.

The addition of the particle **bilo** to various pronouns and adverbs conveys English '-ever': **bilo tko** 'whoever'; **bilo što** 'whatever'; **bilo gdje** 'wherever'; **bilo kad** 'whenever'.

Donesi mi bilo kakvu knjigu.

Bring me any kind of book whatever.

Napravi to na bilo koji način.

Do that in any way whatever.

Reading passage



Priča našeg vremena (19)

The firm's accountant, responsible for all taxation matters, attends the final, formal meeting. Was Mark able to understand everything? Why did the directors attend the meeting at the end? What did Mark do? What is he looking forward to now?

Na samom kraju sastanka, kad je sve bilo dogovoreno, došao je računovođa koji je odgovoran za sve što se odnosi na plaćanje poreza. Meni je to bilo prilično složeno, ali su svi bili dobro raspoloženi i strpljivi, i sve su mi polako objasnili. Glavno je da se porez na dodanu vrijednost plaća na uveznu robu, a ne na preradevinu za izvoz. Na kraju su došli

ravnatelj i tvrtke da bismo svečano potpisali ugovore. Onda sam ja održao kratak govor (na hrvatskom!) u kojemu sam rekao koliko sam zadovoljan svojim poslom ovdje i kako očekujem da ćemo uspješno surađivati. Sad jedva čekam da se vratim kući i počnem sa zajedničkim poslom!

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|----------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| dobro raspoložen | in a good mood | održati govor | to make a speech |
| očekivati (imp. očekujem) | to expect | porez na dodanu | VAT |
| potpisati (pf. potpišem) | to sign | vrijednost | |
| | | prerađevina | processed goods |
| računovoda | accountant | roba | goods |
| sam | very | strpljiv | patient |
| surađivati (imp. surađujem) | | | to cooperate, work together |

Exercise 5[†]

Prijevod. Translate the following conversation into Croatian:

A: What's the weather like today? It looks nice.

B: Why do you ask?

A: I thought we could go out somewhere, if it's not raining.

B: It's cold, I would prefer¹ to stay at home.

A: You can't stay inside all day!

B: Why not?

A: Come on, the sun's shining.² We could go to Sljeme.

B: It's always windy on hills.

A: Rubbish!³

B: You go then.

A: It would be nicer if we were together.

B: I agree. How would it be if we walked together to the City café?

1 use **više voljeti**; 2 **sjati**; 3 **glupost!**

Language points 6

Aspect 4

Features of English that can act as a guide to choosing aspect

(i) The meaning of a given verb: the nature of some types of action suggests a particular aspect.

– *imperfective*: verbs such as: 'to rest', 'to sleep', 'to listen', 'to watch', 'to study', 'to walk', 'to talk' etc.

– *perfective*: ‘to say’, ‘to learn’ (as opposed to ‘to study’), ‘to switch on/off’, ‘to glance’, ‘to catch sight of’ etc.

(ii) Verbs expressing sense impressions such as ‘to see’ and ‘to hear’ may be followed by either an infinitive or a participle in English. We have seen that for the participle construction Croatian requires **kako** + present:

Čuo sam ga kako prilazi.

I heard him approaching.

Vidjeli su ih kako se igraju loptom.

They saw them playing ball.

These constructions require the *imperfective*.

But English infinitive constructions tend to indicate the *perfective*:

Čini mi se da sam čuo kako je ušao.

I think I heard him come in.

Vidio je kako je predsjednik predao dokumente.

He saw the president hand over the documents.

(iii) Progressive tenses in English *must* be translated by the *imper-fective* in Croatian:

I am sitting by the window thinking.

Sjedim kraj prozora i razmišljam.

He was reading a newspaper.

Čitao je novine.

She will be waiting on the platform.

Čekat će na peronu.

Note: This does *not* mean that simple tenses in English denote the perfective.

Adverbs and conjunctions as determining factors

(i) Adverbs: some adverbs clearly indicate one or other aspect:

– *imperfective*: **neprestano** ‘constantly’; **stalno** ‘all the time’; **redovito** ‘regularly’; **dugo** ‘a long time’; **cijeli dan** ‘all day long’; **neko vrijeme** ‘some time’ etc.

– *perfective*: **konačno** ‘at last’; **odjednom** ‘all at once’; **iznenada** ‘suddenly’; **odmah** ‘immediately’; **naglo** ‘abruptly’ etc.

(Of course some flexibility will be required according to context: e.g. ‘at last they are on their way’ obviously refers to an ‘ongoing’ action.)

(ii) Conjunctions: some may denote either aspect, depending on context:

You ought to nibble something *when* you drink strong drinks.

Morate nešto grickati kad pijete žestoka pića. (imp.)

They took off their shoes *when* they entered the mosque.

Izuli su cipele kad su ušli u džamiju. (pf.)

Others indicate the imperfective:

She knitted this jumper *while* she was (lying) in hospital.

Isplela je ovaj džemper dok je ležala u bolnici.

As we came I noticed your new car.

Dok smo dolazili primijetila sam tvoj novi auto.

Others indicate the perfective:

I shall telephone *as soon as* I arrive.

Telefonirat ću čim stignem.

(iii) Phrases introduced by 'for' and 'in'. Time phrases introduced by 'for' tend to lay emphasis on the *process* of the action:

We wrote letters *for* three hours.

Pisali smo pisma tri sata.

The imperfective is used to express this emphasis.

On the other hand, phrases introduced by 'in' emphasize the totality of the action:

We wrote the letters *in* three hours.

Napisali smo pisma za tri sata.

Exercise 6

(a)[†] Translate the following passage, selecting from the aspect pairs below. They are given in the order in which they occur in the text and the first verb in each pair is the imperfective.

The last passengers got out¹ in the suburbs and Tina was left² alone in the compartment. She got up³ and went over⁴ to the window. Her blue eyes watched⁵ the neon advertisements which reminded⁶ her of her home town. She had stood⁷ at that window a few hours earlier and said goodbye to⁸ (*greeted*) Zagreb. The main station had been the only acquaintance who saw her off.⁹

With a sigh she put on¹⁰ her fur coat, took¹¹ her bag and went out¹² into the corridor. The passengers were waving¹³ and greeting¹⁴ relations and acquaintances. A strange feeling of loneliness overwhelmed¹⁵ Tina. The train stopped¹⁶ and she jumped¹⁷ onto the platform among the first.

Verb list

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 silaziti, sići | 10 oblačiti, obući (obučem, obukao) |
| 2 ostajati, ostati | |
| 3 ustajati, ustati | 11 uzimati, uzeti |
| 4 prilaziti, prići | 12 izlaziti, izaći |
| 5 promatrati, promotriti | 13 mahati, mahnuti |
| 6 podsjećati, podsjetiti | 14 pozdravljati, pozdraviti |
| 7 stajati, stati | 15 obuzimati, obuzeti |
| 8 pozdravljati, pozdraviti | 16 zaustavljati se, zaustaviti se |
| 9 ispraćati, ispratiti | 17 skakati (skačem), skočiti |

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| acquaintance | znanac | advertisement | reklama |
| feeling | osjećaj | fur coat | bunda |
| home town | rodni grad | loneliness | osamljenost |
| neon | neonski | platform | peron |
| sigh | uzdah | suburbs | predgrađe (sing.) |

(b) Look at the weather map on p. 260 and write a forecast using the vocabulary provided in the past, present and future tenses.

Dialogue 3

Ljubavna priča (19)

Mara finally telephones Ivo's house. Is Ivo's mother aware of any problem? Does Ivo sound pleased to hear from Mara? Why does Ivo say Mate is leaving early? What has Ivo wanted to tell Mara all day?

- Halo, molim vas, je li Ivo doma?
- Je, samo trenutak. Tko ga treba?

- Mara.
- Ah, Maro. Traži te cijeli dan. Kako si, dušo?
- Hvala, teta Dragice, dobro sam. Žao mi je što me je Ivo tako dugo tražio.
- Evo, sad ću ga pozvati. Bit će mu drago.
- Bog, Maro.
- Bog, Ivo. Kako ti je bilo na utakmici?
- Dobro. A kako tebi na tajnom sastanku?
- Kakav tajni sastanak? Kod Vesne misliš?
- Nego što?
- Pa, Ivo, ništa nije bilo tajno, zašto ne bi Vesna mogla k sebi pozvati koga hoće?
- Ne treba tu mnogo objašnjavati. Ti dobro znaš o čemu se radi. Mate odlazi već večeras.
I to zbog tebe. Nadam se da si ponosna!
- Zašto bih bila ponosna? Oh, Ivo, daj da se nađemo da ti objasnim!
- Nema smisla. Ja ti ne bih imao što reći. Zato sam te tražio, tek da ti kažem da me više ne trebačekati. Ajde, zbogom.
- Ivo ... Ivo ...!?

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------------|-------|
| nema smisla | there's no point | ponosan, -sna | proud |
| tajni | secret | | |

20

Kraj

The end

In this unit we will look at:

- participles: 'being', 'having been' etc.
- verbal nouns

Reading passage 1

Pismo

Letter

What does Nora ask Zdenka to do? Why had Nora to go home early last time she was in Dubrovnik? What do she and Alan still want to do before they reach Dubrovnik? What are Alan and Ranko doing while Nora writes her letter?

Draga Zdenka,

Pišem ovo pismo, sjedeći na plaži, naslonjena na jastuk u jako udobnom sjedalu. Baš mi je lijepo! Alan se igra loptom s jednim malim dječakom koji je s nama putovao ovamo. Sutra ga moramo odvesti baki u Zadar. Bit će nam žao, toliko smo se već naviknuli na njega. Donekle nam popunjava prazninu koju ostavlja odsutnost naše vlastite djece!

Pitamo se kako si ti i tvoji? Jedva čekamo da vas vidimo. Spremamo se u Dubrovnik krajem ovog tjedna i nadamo se da ćemo vas tamo naći. Ako budeš imali vremena, bili bismo jako zahvalni kada biste se mogli raspitati za privatni smještaj. Samo za Alana i mene. Ako se bude slučajno dogodilo da malog vodimo sa sobom, lako ćemo moći njega nekako smjestiti. Imamo gumeni madrac koji se za čas može napuhati. Kako se zvao onaj lijepi veliki hotel preko puta Lokruma s pogledom na dubrovačku luku? Je li 'Excelsior'? Čini mi se da je. Jedne godine sam bila našla divnu sobu u tom predjelu, ali na žalost mi se kći razboljela pa sam se morala vratiti u Englesku ...

Do sada smo putovali bez većih uzbuđenja. Jednom nam se auto pokvario, ali smo ga brzo popravili. Inače, svuda smo našli ugodna mjesta za noćenje, i sve u svemu bilo nam je izvanredno lijepo. Sada želimo još dobro razgledati Zadar, pa provesti dan-dva u Splitu. Prijatelji u Zagrebu nam rekoše da tamo svakako pogledamo neku opernu predstavu. Vidjet ćemo ima li karata. Baš bih to voljela, iako Alan nije bogznakakov ljubitelj opere! Njega će vjerojatno više zanimati muzeji i rimski ostaci grada.

Pretoplo mi je pa se moram osvježiti u moru. Upravo gledam kako Alan i mali Ranko skaču i prskaju se vodom. Neodoljivo!

Puno pozdravi sve svoje, do skorog viđenja,
Voli te tvoja Nora



Obala Jadranskog mora

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--|------------------|---|------------------------|
| bogznakakav | much of a ... | čas | (<i>here</i>) moment |
| gumen | rubber | jastuk | cushion, pillow |
| jedva | hardly | jedva čekam | I can't wait |
| kakav | much of | kći | daughter |
| lopta | ball | madrac | mattress |
| napuhati (pf.) | to blow up | napumpati (pf.) | to pump up |
| pozdraviti (pf.) | to greet | praznina | emptiness, gap |
| prskati (imp.) | to splash, spray | raspitati se (pf.) | to make enquiries |
| rimski | Roman | skakati (imp. skačem) | to jump, dive |
| naslonjen (past part. of nasloniti se , pf.) | leaning | naviknuti se (pf. naviknem se) | to become accustomed |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| neodoljiv | irresistible | odsutnost (f.) | absence |
| ostatak (gen. ostatka) | remainder | osvježiti se (pf.) | to refresh oneself |
| | | svuda | everywhere |
| upravo | just | vlastiti | one's own |
| zahvalan, -lna | grateful | | |

Language points 1

Participles

There are four participles in Croatian, of which two are verbal adjectives and two verbal adverbs.

We have already met the active past participle (**bio**, **imao** etc.), and know that this is one of the adjectival forms. We shall come to the other adjective form, the passive past participle, later – it is not in very common use.

There are two verbal adverbs or gerunds: one denoting simultaneous action and the other past action, for example: (i) 'seeing', (ii) 'having seen'.

Present gerund

This is formed by adding the suffix **-ći** to the third person plural of the present tense of the *imperfective*:

| | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-----------------|----------|
| (oni) | govore | govoreći | speaking |
| (oni) | pišu | pišući | writing |
| (oni) | imaju | imajući | having |

Ležeći pokraj kreveta, zazvonio mu je mobitel.

Lying beside his bed, his mobile phone rang.

Such a sentence would be more usually expressed with **dok**:

Dok je ležao pokraj kreveta, zazvonio mu je mobitel.

As it lay beside his bed, his mobile phone rang.

Note: Croatian is less strict about consistency of subject in such sentences:

Govoreći o svom poslu, zazvonio mu je telefon.

As he was talking about his job, his mobile phone rang.

The gerund is infrequently used, even in the written language, except in certain situations.

The present gerund of **biti** is based on the perfective third person plural **budu** = **buđući**. This is used frequently as a conjunction with **da**:

Budući da smo u Hrvatskoj ...

Since we are in Croatia ...

Budući da je lijepo vrijeme ...

Since it is nice weather ...

The gerund is, strictly speaking, indeclinable (like all adverbs). But certain gerunds are becoming increasingly used as adjectives:

budući **Da te upoznam sa svojim *budućim* mužem!**

Let me introduce you to my future husband!

idućí **Vratit će se sigurno *iduće* godine ako mogu.**

They will certainly come back next year if they can.

sljedeći ***Sljedećeg* dana smo se rano probudili.***

We woke up early the following day.

tekući **Koliko imaš na *tekućem* računu?**

How much have you got in your current account? (**teći** 'to flow')

Note: When it is used as an adjective meaning 'next', the word is written **sljedeći**.

Exercise 1[†]

Rewrite the following sentences using the present gerund:

1 Dok je gledao televiziju, čuo je kako netko zvoni na vrata.

2 Dok sam svirao gitaru, nisam čuo da zvoni telefon.

3 Dok sam razgovarao sa Sanjom u kafiću, vidio sam Petra kako prolazi pokraj nas.

4 Dok gledam televiziju, ne volim odgovarati na pitanja.

5 Dok ste kuhali u kuhinji, niste čuli da vas zovem.

Language point 2*Past gerund*

This is formed by adding the suffix **-v**, **-vši** (after a vowel) or **-avši** (after a consonant) to the infinitive stem:

usta-ti*ustavši***rek-ti (reći)***rekavši***vidje-ti***vidjevši***mog-ti (moći)***mogavši***sjeti-ti se***sjetivši se***Započevši knjigu, htio bih je završiti.**

Having started the book, I'd like to finish it.

Again, the past gerund is rarely used: it is more common to find a whole clause where such a participle is used in English.

Kad sam počeo čitati knjigu, htio bih je završiti.

or

Budući da sam počeo ...

or

Počeo sam, pa bih htio ...

As in the case of the present gerund, we find that the past gerund of **biti**, **bivši**, is in common use as an adjective:

Da te upoznam sa svojom bivšom suprugom!

Let me introduce you to my former wife!

Ta kuća pripada bivšem predsjedniku.

That house belongs to the former president.

Note: The common English construction with the active present participle ending in ‘-ing’ can cause problems in translating, e.g. ‘I heard the birds singing’. Such sentences should be rendered by **kako** + present (imperfective) tense: **Čuo sam kako ptice pjevaju.**

Exercise 2[†]

(a) Rewrite the following sentences using the past gerund:

- 1 Kad sam završio razgovor s njim, otišao sam kući.
- 2 Kad sam dobio pismo, odmah sam napisao odgovor.
- 3 Kad sam pročitao knjigu, vratio sam je u knjižnicu.
- 4 Kad sam primio plaću, otišao sam u dućan i sve sam potrošio.
- 5 Kad sam sve potrošio, nije mi ostalo ništa.

(b) Rewrite the following text using present or past gerund where appropriate:

Dok je pripremao večeru za svoje prijatelje, zaboravio je na vrijeme. Već je bilo 8 sati, a prijatelji su dolazili oko 8.30. Kad je čuo zvono na vratima, Marko se jako iznenadio. Dok je otvarao vrata i pozdravljao se sa svima, zaboravio je na ribu koja se pekla u pećnici. Kad se vratio u kuhinju, shvatio je da je riba izgorjela.

(c) **Prevedite sljedeće rečenice:**

- 1 I think I saw them coming.
- 2 Have you heard her singing?
- 3 We found them playing in the park.¹
- 4 He didn't notice me going out.
- 5 She stood by the window and watched the people passing by.²

1 park; 2 prolaziti

Language points 3

Participles

Passive past participle, verbal nouns

(i) *Passive past participle* – this is the other verbal adjective. Passive participles are formed from the infinitive stem of either aspect. Most verbs with infinitive ending in **-ati** have passive participle in **-an**:

| | |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| čitati | čitan, čitana, čitano |
| pozvati | pozvan, pozvana, pozvano |

Most verbs with infinitive ending in **-iti** or **-eti/jeti** have **-jen** (see ‘Grammar summary’, 6, p. 302 for rules of effect of **j** on preceding consonant):

| | |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| vidjeti | viden, viđena, viđeno |
| učiniti | učinjen, učinjena, učinjeno |

Verbs with infinitive ending in **-nuti** have **-nut**:

| | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| prekinuti | prekinut |
|------------------|-----------------|

Verbs with infinitive ending in **-eti** and present **-mem** or **-nem** have **-et**:

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| zauzeti (zauzmem) | zauzet |
| prokleti (prokunem) | proklet |

These are the most common regular patterns. Examples:

Je li ovaj kruh dobro ispečen?

Is this bread well baked?

Stol je prostrt, kruh je narezan, vino je ohlađeno, riža je skuhana. Dodite ručati!

The table is laid, the bread is cut, the wine chilled, the rice boiled. Come and have lunch!

(ii) *Verbal nouns* – many of these passive participles may be made into nouns by the addition of the suffix **-je**:

| | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| osloboditi | osloboden | oslobodenje | |
| to liberate | liberated | liberation | |
| čitati | čitan | čitanje | reading |
| promatrati | promatran | promatranje | observation, watching |

| | | | |
|--------------|-------------|---------------|----------|
| učiti | učen | učenje | learning |
|--------------|-------------|---------------|----------|

Intransitive verbs cannot have a passive participle; in such cases the endings **-anje** or **-enje** are added to the infinitive stem.

| | | |
|------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| kupati se | kupanje | bathing |
| sjediti | sjedanje | sitting |
| putovati | putovanje | travelling, journey |

Exercise 3[†]

Supply the correct forms of the passive participle of the verbs in brackets:

- 1 Većina njegovih knjiga je već _____ (prevesti) na engleski.
- 2 Kruh je već _____ (ispeći).
- 3 Ovo sjedalo je _____ (zauzeti).
- 4 On je _____ (oženiti).
- 5 Pogledajte odgovor u _____ (napisati) dokumentu.
- 6 Njegova žena nije bila _____ (pozvati).
- 7 On je došao _____ (ne pozvati).
- 8 Na stolu su _____ (narezati) kruh, _____ (skuhati) riba, _____ (oprati) salata i voće i _____ (pržiti) krumpiri.
- 9 Već dugo nisam gledao tako dobro _____ (režirati) film.
- 10 Ovo je već dobro _____ (isprobati) tehnika.

Reading passage 2

Priča našeg vremena (20)

At the end of Mark's meeting with the head office representatives, he goes with them to hear a speech by the president of the Chamber of Commerce to a group of foreign businessmen who were in Croatia at the time. Put yourself in Mark's position and try to understand as much of the text as you can without referring to a dictionary or the translation at the end of the book.

Zbog svog zemljopisnog položaja Hrvatska je zanimljiva za poslovnu suradnju. Nakon neuspjeha komunističkog upravljanja i uvođenja političkog pluralizma, u Hrvatskoj se trenutno zacrtava pravni sustav koji će pomoći da se Hrvatska usmjeri k tržišnom gospodarstvu. Sukladno s ovim promjenama, Hrvatska gospodarska komora se ustrojila kao suvremena, tržišna i stručna ustanova koja odgovara potrebama poslovanja kako u Hrvatskoj, tako i u inozemstvu. Plan za sadašnju Hrvatsku gospodarsku komoru zacrtan je prema zapadnoeuropskim komorama uz nekoliko naših posebnih, tradicionalnih primjesa. Komora se sastoji od dvadesetak područnih komora i od središnje komore u Zagrebu, glavnom gradu Hrvatske. Glavni su ciljevi komore: promidžba hrvatskih poslovnih interesa u zemlji i u inozemstvu, razmjena poslovnih informacija među mogućim partnerima, pomoću djelotvorne baze podataka te daljnje poslovno

obrazovanje. Tijekom proteklih godina, hrvatsko gospodarstvo doživjelo je velike promjene. Osnovane su tisuće novih privatnih poduzeća. U Hrvatskoj danas postoji preko 60,000 aktivnih gospodarskih jedinica. Zbog obilja svojih prirodnih i ljudskih bogatstava i dugotrajne poslovne tradicije Hrvatska je idealni poslovni partner za budućnost.

Language points 4

Word order 1

This is another area which can cause some difficulties for English speakers. Some of the requirements are basic to correct grammar, and some are more subtle and largely stylistic. It is important to be aware of differences in word order between the two languages, both in composing correct and informative utterances in Croatian and in translating from Croatian into English.

Difficulties arise for two main reasons: (i) the presence of *enclitics*, for which there is no equivalent in English; (ii) the fact that English speakers are used to a system in which word order indicates syntactic relations between the main elements of a sentence and only secondary elements (adverbs, preposition phrases) normally vary in position.

We shall look at these two areas of difficulty in turn.

Enclitics

We are already quite familiar with the basic rules governing the placing of enclitics and with the order in which they come when there are several of them. Where there is a group of enclitics they must all come together in the following order:

interrogative particle **li**; verbal; dat., acc./gen. (of pronouns); **se**; **je**

The enclitic group is normally placed after the first element in the sentence or clause. This may be a *single word*:

Ivan mi je kupio kartu.

Ivan bought me a ticket.

Note: **ne** + verb count as a single word:

Ona je zauzeta i ne može nas vidjeti.

She is busy and she can't see us.

Remember also that the linking conjunctions **i**, **a** and **ni** do not count as separate words in this context.

The first element may also be a phrase:

Jedan moj prijatelj mi je rekao da imate stan.

A friend of mine told me you had a flat.

Prošlog tjedna su nas pozvali na večeru.*Last week they invited us to dinner.*

In general, it is considered literary or pedantic to break up a phrase by putting the enclitics strictly after the first word. But notice the following interrogative words which do not form a phrase with the words they govern:

Koliko je sati?

What's the time?

Koliko ima godina?

How old is he/she?

Koje je boje tvoj novi auto?*What colour is your new car?*

The conjunctions **ali**, **ili** and **jer** may be treated as the first word in the sentence or simply as linking words. But some other conjunctions never count as the first word because they are followed by a pause, sometimes an actual comma:

Dakle nisam mu ga dao.*So I didn't give it to him.***Prema tome, javit će ti se sutra.***Consequently he'll ring you tomorrow.*

The most important thing to remember is that if a sentence or clause starts with a 'clause introducer', the enclitics must follow immediately after it. Consequently when you are composing a clause in Croatian and come to such a word you must immediately work out which enclitics will be required later in the sentence and put them in. All the other elements in the sentence must then be fitted in. This necessity is the cause of frequent mistakes for English speakers. Such 'clause introducers' are **da**, **što**, **ako**, relatives and interrogatives.

Rekao je da će mi ga odmah vratiti.*He said (that) he would give it straight back to me.***Drago mi je što ste nam opet došli.***I'm glad (that) you've come to us again.***Prije nego što smo mu objasnili o čemu se radi, izašao je.***Before we had explained to him what it was about, he went out.***Ako mi je vrati, dat ću ti knjigu.***If he returns it to me, I'll give you the book.***To je prijatelj koji mi je pričao o tebi.***That's the friend who told me about you.*

To je prijatelj o kojemu sam ti pričala.That's the friend I told you about (*about whom* I told you).**Više ne znam ni kako se zvao.**I no longer even know *what* he was called.**Moram znati kad ćeš mi ga dati.**I must know *when* you're going to give it to me.

Care must be taken with subordinate clauses which behave like independent units. Enclitics from the main clause are not usually placed immediately after them and never inside them. This presents no difficulty if the main clause comes first:

Jasno mi je da si ga tajno vidala.

I realize that you've been seeing him secretly.

When the subordinate clause comes first the enclitics from the main clause follow the first word in the main clause: **Da si ga tajno vidala, jasno mi je**. This construction can be awkward, so often the pronoun **to** is added to take over the role of the subordinate clause: **Da si ga tajno vidala, to mi je jasno**. Such constructions are far more frequent in Croatian than their equivalent would be in English.

Infinitives can behave either as separate clauses or as parts of the main clause:

Mara te želi vidjeti.

Mara wants to see you.

If the main clause contains enclitics, they are all put together:

Mara te je željela vidjeti.

Mara wanted to see you.

Pokušat ću ga sutra naći.

I shall try to find him tomorrow.

Zašto se ne bi Boris mogao javiti danas?

Why shouldn't Boris ring today?

Exercise 4

(a)[†] Write the following sentences in the correct word order:

1 jučer Ivan znaš da me li je kino pozvao u?

2 njom ga s htio upoznati sam.

3 jako je i može s u restoranu naći zaposlen se nama večeras ne.

4 mi je što ste opet posjetili nas drago.

5 godine smo i na prošle i na išli skijanje more.

6 moja je ovo s školu u prijateljica kojom u išla istu sam.

7 svoje dala joj sam knjige sve.

8 jasno da ti je se sviđa mi on jako.

9 Ivan otputuje što prije nego vidjeti vas želi.

10 dugo ste zajedno živjeli koliko?

(b) Write a description of two friends of yours who have quite different tastes and habits.

Language point 5

Word order 2

(ii) Apart from the strict rules governing the placing of enclitics, word order in Croatian is relatively free. The existence of cases makes it possible to place subject, verb and object in any order:

Dala sam nosaču prtljagu.

I gave the porter the luggage.

Prtljagu sam dala nosaču.

Nosaču sam dala prtljagu.

All of these sentences are equally acceptable. Their order is not random, however: each sentence conveys a slightly different emphasis. It is important to distinguish first of all between basic, grammatical word order in Croatian and order which is determined by context and which conveys meaning in itself.

Basic word order, independent of context, is on the whole similar to English: subject – verb – object.

In word order conditioned by context, however, there are various differences. These seem to stem from the fact that in Croatian, as a rule, the less informative part of the sentence comes before the more informative part. (This is related to the question of enclitics, in that stress tends to build up over the sentence with increasing emphasis on the end. Consequently the enclitics must be placed as far as possible from this inherent emphasis.)

Examples:

Prošlog tjedna nismo uopće izašli.

We didn't go out at all last week.

This order emphasizes the fact that the speaker stayed at home.

Nismo uopće izašli prošlog tjedna.

This order, on the other hand, stresses the fact that the speaker usually goes out a lot in any given week but did not this particular week. This means that in Croatian if the object

is of less informational value (perhaps because it has already been mentioned) it may be placed first in the sentence:

Tu kuću je sagradio poznati arhitekt.

A famous architect built that house.

It is possible for English to preserve the Croatian order by using a passive construction: 'This house was built by a famous archi-tect'. This is a very important device which works both ways: Croatian generally avoids the passive, but English passive constructions can usually be rendered by placing the object first in the sentence, as in the example above.

The principle is, then, that new information or the more informative part of the sentence tends to follow other elements in the sentence:

Ovi stanovi su sagradeni prije deset godina. U stanovima žive uglavnom mladi ljudi.

These flats were built ten years ago. On the whole young people live in the flats.

Adverbial 'scene setting' phrases

In a neutral sentence in Croatian, these phrases are placed at the beginning of the sentence: their function is to 'set the scene' for the main information. In English, on the other hand, they are normally at the end:

Na plaži je bilo mnogo meduza.

There were a lot of jellyfish *on the beach*.

Po povratku smo bili jako zauzeti.

We were very busy *after we got back*.

Za vrijeme odmora na otoku, nismo mnogo čitali.

We didn't read much *during our holiday on the island*.

In general, in Croatian adverbs which qualify or quantify the action of the verb precede it:

Jako lijepo svira klavir.

She plays the piano *very well*.

Prebrzo govore. Ništa ne razumijem!

They speak *too fast*. I don't understand a thing!

So, English speakers should take care over the placing of adverbs and adverbial phrases: make a note of instances you come across in your reading.

Adverbs and pronouns with low informational value

Usually, objects, pronouns and adverbs which carry little information precede the verb. To put them after the verb would give them special emphasis, altering the meaning of the sentence:

Daj da ti nešto pokažem.

Let me show you *something*.

Daj da ti pokažem nešto.

Let me show you *at least something*, even if you don't want to see everything.

Negdje smo ga vidjeli.

We saw him *somewhere*.

Vidjeli smo ga negdje.

We saw him *somewhere*, I'm just trying to think where it was.

Such 'low prominence' words include: **nešto, negdje, nekako, nekud, tu, ovdje, jučer, danas, sutra, ovo, to, sad, često, stalno.**

Phrases with fixed word order

There are a few more or less fixed patterns which should be learned.

Vocative phrases

In these the neutral order of adjective–noun is often reversed:

Budalo jedna!

You fool!

Bože dragi!

Dear God!

Mili moj! Mila moja!

My darling!

Zlato moje!

My treasure (gold)!

Possessive phrases

taj moj prijatelj

that friend of mine

ovi njegovi prijatelji

these friends of his

jedan moj znanac

an acquaintance of mine

dva naša znanca

two acquaintances of ours

Exercise 5†

Translate the following passages into Croatian, paying particular attention to word order:

1 The Lord of the Rings

Since it was first published in 1954–55, Tolkien's original, powerful fantasy, *The Lord of the Rings*, has accumulated fame, fans, and excellent reviews. No other writer of Tolkien's century created so distinct an imaginary world as Middle-earth, complete with its own geography, history, languages, and legends. And certainly no one has created characters as endearing as Tolkien's large-hearted, hairy-footed hobbits. Today, Tolkien's epic fantasy is still popular, with yearly worldwide sales in the tens of thousands. Tolkien's classic works have large numbers of fans, even forty years after publication. They have been translated into thirty-eight languages.

The first part of the new movie version of 'Fellowship of the Ring' was released in December 2001, and the other film editions of the 'The Lord of the Rings' novels were released in 2002 and 2003. Those films made the novel even more popular.

'to publish' **objaviti**; 'fantasy' **fantazija**; 'fan' **obožavatelj**;
 'to achieve' **steći**; 'fame' **slava**; 'novel' **roman**; 'hairy' **dlakav**;
 'to release' **emitirati**; 'publication' **objavljivanje**

2 The Zagreb soloists were founded almost thirty years ago by Antonio Janigro. They have been well known to the public for years already for the quality of their interpretations. Quite a lot is known about their successes as well, but not how they actually work, what kind of problems they encounter.

Reading passage 3

Ljubavna priča (kraj)

A week later, a letter arrives for Mara. She does not recognize the handwriting.

Tjedan dana poslije razgovora s Ivom, stiglo je za Maru pismo. Nije prepoznala rukopis. Žurno je otvorila otmotnicu i vidjela što je potajno čekala: pisao je Mate.

Draga moja luda mala Maro,

Imam dojam da ti ipak dugujem pismo i nekakvo objašnjenje. Bojim se da si ostala sama jer se Ivo strašno naljutio. Nisam mu ništa rekao osim da mi je bilo neugodno one večeri kod Vesne jer mi se činilo da se sa mnom manipulira. Onda sam spomenuo da sam te otrpao doma. Valjda je nešto naslutio i postavio je neka pitanja, na koja sam mu morao odgovoriti otvoreno kao prijatelj. Za ovo kratko vrijeme koje sam proveo u Dubrovniku, Ivo mi je postao blizak. Bratić mi je i stalo mi je do njega.

Ima još jedan razlog zbog kojega sam morao odmah napustiti Dubrovnik. Možda si već pogodila. Ustanovio sam da nisam ni ja ravnodušan prema tebi. Tvoje društvo mi je bilo neobično privlačno i počeo sam se malo bojati. Situacija nemoguća! A ipak zaslužuješ da to znaš. Jednog dana ćemo se svi moći vidjeti i opet se družiti, siguran sam. Moći ćemo se slatko smijati ludostima svoje mladosti. Za sada je bolje da se stane na kraj

nećemu što nije ni počelo, a što je svima nama moglo nanijeti štetu i bol. Budi sretna i strpljiva. Ne ljuti se na Ivu ni na mene. Sve će to proći.

Volim te, da znaš,

Mate

Mara je pritisnula pismo na grudi i briznula u neutješni plač. Negdje duboko u sebi divila se Matinoj razumnoj odlučnosti, ali u isto vrijeme joj se činilo nelogično što je ona, pokraj ta dva draga mladića, morala ostati sama.

Vocabulary

| | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| bol | pain | briznuti u plač | burst into tears |
| družiti se (imp.) | to be friends | dugovati (imp.) | to owe |
| grudi (f. pl.) | breast | lud | crazy |
| ludost | madness | naljutiti se (pf.) | to be angry |
| napustiti (pf.) | to leave, abandon | naslutiti (pf.) | to sense |
| neutješan | inconsolable | objašnjenje | explanation |
| omotnica | envelope | pogoditi (pf.) | to guess |
| postaviti pitanja | to put questions | potajno | secretly |
| prepoznati (pf.) | to recognize | pritisnuti (pf.) | to press |
| ravnodušan | indifferent | razlog | reason |
| rukopis | handwriting | smijati se (imp.) | to laugh |
| spomenuti (pf.) | to mention | stati nećemu na kraj | to put an end to something |
| šteta | harm | | |
| ustanoviti (pf.) | to establish, realize | zasluživati (imp.) | to deserve |
| | | žurno | hastily |

Reading passage 4

You have now covered all the main points of the grammar and some essential vocabulary. You need to consolidate your knowledge and expand your vocabulary by further reading. You should now be able to read newspapers with relative ease, as well as other more complex texts with the help of a dictionary. The following passage describes some of the main features of the Croatian linguistic area. See how you get on!

Hrvatska se najvećim dijelom pruža uz obalu Jadranskog mora, i u njoj živi oko 4,430.000 stanovnika. Glavni i najveći grad je Zagreb s oko 800,000 stanovnika, važan centar kulturnih, znanstvenih i umjetničkih djelatnosti, a također i važno industrijsko i trgovačko središte. U njemu se nalazi nuklearni institut 'Ruđer Bošković' nazvan po svjetski poznatom fizičaru sedamnaestog stoljeća iz Dubrovnika, Hrvatska akademija

znanosti i umjetnosti, Leksiko-grafski zavod, velika privredna organizacija 'Rade Končar', uglavnom proizvođač 'bijeले tehnike', poznati Zagrebački vele-sajam, itd.

Hrvatska ima nekoliko vrlo jakih industrijskih središta, kao što su Osijek, najveći grad u plodnoj Slavoniji, Sisak, s poznatom željeznicom, Rijeka na sjeveru Kvarnerskog zaljeva s velikom lukom, Pula i Split sa svojim brodogradilištima. Hrvatska je poznata i po svojim velikim turističkim mogućnostima. Ovu je popularnost Hrvatskoj donijela zaista prekrasna obala Jadranskog mora i brojni otoci, među kojima su po svojoj ljepoti i turističkim mogućnostima najpoznatiji Krk, Rab, Brač, Hvar, Korčula i Mljet. Ova je obala izuzetno bogata povijesnim i kulturnim spomenicima: nižu se, na primjer, slavna katedrala u Šibeniku, Dioklecijanova palača u Splitu, prekrasni gradovi duž cijele obale, na čelu kojih se naravno nalazi drevni Dubrovnik, nekadašnja Raguza, grad povijesti, sunca, divnih palača, tvrđava i pjaca. S njegovih zidina može se čitati ponosna povijest ovoga srednjovjekovnog grada-republike, grada koji je bio most između Zapada i Istoka, i koji se ponosi umjetničkom, trgovačkom i pomorskom tradicijom.

Grammar summary

1 Noun declensions

Masculine

Singular

| | | | | | |
|--------|-----------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| nom. | prozor | prijatelj | stol | muž | čitalac |
| gen. | prozora | prijatelja | stola | muža | čitaoca |
| dat. | prozoru | prijatelju | stolu | mužu | čitaocu |
| acc. | prozor | prijatelja | stol | muža | čitaoca |
| voc. | prozore | prijatelju | stole | mužu | čitaocu/čitaooče |
| loc. | prozoru | prijatelju | stolu | mužu | čitaocu |
| instr. | prozorom | prijateljem | stolom | mužem | čitaocem |

Plural

| | | | | | |
|--------|------------------|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| nom. | prozori | prijatelji | stolovi | muževi | čitaoci |
| gen. | prozora | prijatelja | stolova | muževa | čitalaca |
| dat. | prozorima | prijateljima | stolovima | muževima | čitaocima |
| acc. | prozore | prijatelje | stolove | muževe | čitaoce |
| voc. | prozori | prijatelji | stolovi | muževi | čitaoci |
| loc. | prozorima | prijateljima | stolovima | muževima | čitaocima |
| instr. | prozorima | prijateljima | stolovima | muževima | čitaocima |

Note: Soft consonants: **c, č, ć, dž, đ, j, lj, nj, š, ž**

- 1 Masculine nouns with soft consonant ending preceded by **e** usually have instrumental singular **-om**: **Beč** ‘Vienna’, **Bečom**; **padež** (grammatical case), **padežom**. Masculine nouns ending in **-c** usually have instrumental **-om**; but if **-c** follows mobile **a**, then instrumental always ends **-em**: **stranac** ‘foreigner’, **strancem**; **novac** ‘money’, **novcem**; **otac**, **ocem**.
- 2 Masculine nouns ending in **-anin** (e.g. **gradanin**, **Dubrovčanin**) have plural **-ani**: **gradani** etc.

Neuter

Singular

| | | | | |
|--------|--------------|--------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| nom. | selo | more | vrijeme¹ | dijete² |
| gen. | sela | mora | vremena | djeteta |
| dat. | selu | moru | vremenu | djetetu |
| acc. | selo | more | vrijeme | dijete |
| voc. | selo | more | vrijeme | dijete |
| loc. | selu | moru | vremenu | djetetu |
| instr. | selom | morem | vremenom | djetetom |

Plural

| | | | | |
|--------|---------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| nom. | sela | mora | vremena | djeca |
| gen. | sela | mora | vremena | djece |
| dat. | selima | morima | vremenima | djeci |
| acc. | sela | mora | vremena | djecu |
| voc. | sela | mora | vremena | djeco |
| loc. | selima | morima | vremenima | djeci |
| instr. | selima | morima | vremenima | djecom |

1 Most neuter nouns ending in **-me** follow this pattern.

2 Some neuter nouns have the infix **-et-**. These are usually the words for young animals and they have an irregular plural (usually a feminine singular collective form, e.g. **tele** 'calf' has gen. sing. **teleta** and nom. pl. **telad**).

Feminine

Singular

| | | | |
|--------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| nom. | žena | stvar | kći |
| gen. | žene | stvari | kćeri |
| dat. | ženi | stvari | kćeri |
| acc. | ženu | stvar | kćer |
| voc. | ženo | stvari | kćeri |
| loc. | ženi | stvari | kćeri |
| instr. | ženom | stvari | kćeri |

Plural

| | | | |
|--------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| nom. | žene | stvari | kćeri |
| gen. | žena | stvari | kćeri |
| dat. | ženama | stvarima | kćerima |
| acc. | žene | stvari | kćeri |
| voc. | žene | stvari | kćeri |
| loc. | ženama | stvarima | kćerima |
| instr. | ženama | stvarima | kćerima |

Feminine nouns ending in **-a** preceded by two or more consonants may have genitive plural in **i**: **torba**, gen. pl. **torbi** (see also section 5 below, p. 301).

2 Adjective declensions

| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | <i>Feminine</i> |
|--------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Singular definite</i> | | | |
| nom. | mladi | mlado | mlada |
| gen. | mladog(a) | mladog(a) | mlade |
| dat. | mladom(e) | mladom(e) | mladoj |
| | mladom(u) | mladom(u) | |
| acc. (inan.) | mladi | mlado | mladu |
| (an.) | mladog(a) | | |
| voc. | mladi | mlado | mlada |
| loc. | mladom(e) | mladom(e) | mladoj |
| | mladom(u) | mladom(u) | |
| instr. | mladim | mladim | mladom |
| <i>Plural definite</i> | | | |
| nom. | mladi | mlada | mlade |
| gen. | mladih | mladih | mladih |
| dat. | mladim(a) | mladim(a) | mladim(a) |
| acc. | mlade | mlada | mlade |
| voc. | mladi | mlada | mlade |
| loc. | mladim(a) | mladim(a) | mladim(a) |
| instr. | mladim(a) | mladim(a) | mladim(a) |
| | <i>Masculine</i> | <i>Neuter</i> | |

Indefinite (sing. only)

| | | |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| nom. | mlad | mlado |
| gen. | mlada | mlada |
| dat. | mladu | mladu |
| acc. (inan.) | mlad | mlado |
| (an.) | mlada | |
| loc. | mladu | mladu |
| instr. | mladim | mladim |

*Soft stem**Definite (sing.)*

| | | |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| nom. | svježi | svježe |
| gen. | svježeg(a) | svježeg(a) |
| dat. | svježem(u) | svježem(u) |
| acc. (inan.) | svježi | svježe |
| (an.) | svježeg(a) | |
| loc. | svježem(u) | svježem(u) |
| instr. | svježim(e) | svježim(e) |

Alternative longer form. The shorter forms are the norm. There are three situations in which the longer forms should be used:

- 1 If the adjective is used on its own, without a noun: **Uzmi kruha, ako ima svježega.**
- 2 If several adjectives qualify the same noun, the first will usually be long: **Sjećam se tvoga simpatičnog strica.**
- 3 If the adjective follows the noun it qualifies: **Ni imena svoga se nije više sjećao.**

The last example is not so much a grammatical rule as a stylistic preference, and it is on the whole for stylistic purposes that the longer forms are used.

3 Personal pronoun declensions

Singular

| | | | | | | |
|--------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| nom. | ja | ti | on | ono | ona | |
| gen. | mene, me | tebe, te | njega, ga | njega, ga | nje, je | sebe, se¹ |
| dat. | meni, mi | tebi, ti | njemu, mu | njemu, mu | njoj, joj | sebi, si |
| acc. | mene, me | tebe, te | njega, ga | njega, ga² | nju, ju, je | sebe, se |
| loc. | meni | tebi | njemu | njemu | njoj | sebi |
| instr. | mnom(e) | tobom | njim(e) | njim(e) | njom(e) | sobom |

Plural

| | | | | | |
|--------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| nom. | mi | vi | oni | ona | one |
| gen. | nas | vas | njih, ih | njih, ih | njih, ih |
| dat. | nama, nam | vama, vam | njima, im | njima, im | njima, im |
| acc. | nas | vas | njih, ih | njih, ih | njih, ih |
| loc. | nama | vama | njima | njima | njima |
| instr. | nama | vama | njima | njima | njima |

1 The singular reflexive forms are used also for plural meanings, e.g. **Mi smo sebi kupili automobil.**

2 The alternative short form **nj** may be used after a preposition which carries stress. You may come across examples, particularly in literary texts.

4 Verb types

Verbs are divided into several classes, with subdivisions according to their infinitive stem. There are three main sets of endings, however, as seen in Unit 2:

| | <i>I</i> | <i>II</i> | <i>III</i> |
|-----------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| 1st pers. sing. | -am | -im | -em |
| 3rd pers. pl. | -aju | -e | -u |

It is important to be aware that some forms of the verb are based on the infinitive stem, and some on the present tense stem. In many verbs these are the same, but in others they are not and the present tense stem of such verbs must therefore be learned. A good dictionary will supply the first person of the present tense whenever this cannot be deduced from the infinitive. Here are a few guidelines.

Infinitives ending in -ti

The infinitive and present tense stems of these verbs are usually the same:

čitati to read **čítam**

Usually the vowel preceding **-ti** will indicate which set of endings the verb takes, but not always:

1 Verbs ending in **-ati** take Type I endings, unless:

(a) the last consonant of the infinitive stem is **č, ž** or (sometimes) **j**, then Type II:

trčati to run **trčim**
držati to hold **držim**

| | | |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| stajati | to stand | stojim |
| bojati se | to be afraid | bojim se |

(b) the stem ends in **nj, lj** or (sometimes) **j**, then Type III:

| | | |
|------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| počinjati | to begin | počinjem |
| ostajati | to remain | ostajem |

Note: Also, in some instances when the last consonant of the infinitive stem is **s, z, t, c, k** or **ks**, the present tense stem may be different and Type III endings will be added:

| | | |
|---------------|----------|--------------|
| pisati | to write | pišem |
| kazati | to say | kažem |

2 Verbs ending in **-iti** always take Type II endings:

| | | |
|-----------------|----------|----------------|
| govoriti | to speak | govorim |
|-----------------|----------|----------------|

3 Verbs ending in **-uti** always take Type III:

| | | |
|----------------|---------|---------------|
| krenuti | to move | krenem |
|----------------|---------|---------------|

4 Verbs ending in **-eti** may take Type II or III (in this case the present tense stem is usually different: **uzeti** 'to take', **uzmem**). The present tense of each of these must therefore be learned.

Infinitives ending in -ivati, -ovati

Again, the infinitive and present tense stems are usually the same, but in these cases the syllable **-iv, -ov** is replaced by **-uj-** before the Type III endings:

| | | |
|-------------------|-----------|------------------|
| stanovati | to reside | stanujem |
| pokazivati | to show | pokazujem |

Infinitives ending in -avati

In these verbs **-j** is added to the first **a** of the suffix, before Type III endings:

| | | |
|------------------|---------|-----------------|
| davati | to give | daje |
| prodavati | to sell | prodajem |

Note: Care should be taken with these verbs as sometimes the syllable **-av-** is part of the stem and retained in the present tense:

| | | |
|-------------------|--------|------------------|
| pokušavati | to try | pokušavam |
|-------------------|--------|------------------|

Infinitives ending in -ći

Verbs ending in **-ći** *never* have the same infinitive and present tense stem:

| | | |
|---------------|---------|-----------------|
| reći | to say | reknem |
| pomoći | to help | pomognem |
| ići | to go | idem |
| doći | to come | dodem |

Infinitives ending in -sti

(a) vowel + **-sti**. The present tense stem will be different (usually **t, d, p** or **b**):

| | | |
|--------------|--------|--------------|
| jesti | to eat | jedem |
|--------------|--------|--------------|

(b) consonant + **-sti**. The infinitive and present stems may be the same, but if the final consonant is unvoiced it may change to its voiced equivalent (see ‘Assimilation’, below, p. 303):

| | | | |
|------------|-----------------|------------|----------------|
| | iscrpsti | to exhaust | iscrpim |
| <i>but</i> | grepsti | to scratch | grebem |

5 Mobile a

Nouns

(a) Masculine nouns ending in two consonants other than **st, zd, št** and **žd** have the letter **a** inserted between these consonants in the nominative singular and genitive plural:

| | <i>Gen. sing.</i> | <i>Gen. pl.</i> | |
|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| momak | momka | momaka | lad |
| pas | psa | pasa | dog |
| borac | borca | boraca | fighter, soldier |

(b) Neuter nouns with their stem ending in a consonant cluster may also have mobile **a** in the genitive plural:

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|---------|
| pismo | pisma | pisama | letter |
| društvo | društva | društava | society |

(c) Feminine nouns ending in **-a** preceded by two consonants may take mobile **a** in the genitive plural:

| | | |
|-----------------|------------------|--------|
| djevojka | djevojaka | girl |
| sestra | sestara | sister |

but the alternative genitive plural ending in **-i** has replaced this in many such feminine nouns:

legenda

legendi

legend

Adjectives

Adjectives with their stem ending in two consonants other than **st**, **zd**, **št** and **žd** may take mobile **a** to form the indefinite masculine singular:

*Definite**Indefinite*

| | | |
|----------------|---------------------------|---------------|
| dobri | dobar | good |
| kratki | kratak | short |
| radosni | radostan | joyous, happy |
| topli | topao ¹ | warm |

1 All adjectives with final **-l** derived from **-o**, including active past participles, are in this category.

The **a** in the following adjectives is also mobile: **sav**, **kakav**, **takav**, **nikakav** etc.

6 Consonant changes

We have seen that the combination of certain consonants and vowels leads to changes:

(a)

| | | | |
|--------------|------------|------------------------|----------|
| k + i | -ci | momak, momci | lad |
| g + i | -zi | kovčeg, kovčezi | suitcase |
| h + i | -si | svrha, o svrsi | purpose |

These changes occur in masculine plural and feminine dative/ locative of nouns; and the imperative (**pomoći – pomog-ti – pomozi, pomozite!**). *Note:* this rule does not apply to adjectives. Exceptions include proper names and feminine nouns with stem ending in **-tk** (**tetka**), **-čk** (**mačka**) and **-zg** (**tezga** ‘counter’).

(b)

| | | |
|--------------|------------|----------------------|
| k + e | -če | momak, momče! |
| g + e | -že | Bog, Bože! |
| h + e | -še | duh, duše! |

These changes occur in the vocative singular of masculine nouns; and in the present tense of verbs with infinitive in **-ći** derived from **k + t**, **g + t** and **h + t**:

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|--------------|----------|
| peći | (pek-ti) | pečem | to roast |
|-------------|-----------------|--------------|----------|

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------------|----------------|-----------|
| strići | (strig-ti) | strižem | to shear |
| vrći | (vrh-ti) | vršim | to thresh |

(c) consonant + j. These changes occur mostly in the comparison of adjectives:

| | | | | | | |
|---------------|---|------------|--------------|---|------------------|------------------------|
| p + j | = | plj | skup | – | skuplji | expensive |
| b + j | = | blj | riba | – | riblji | fish |
| v + j | = | vlj | krv | – | krvlju | blood |
| m + j | = | mlj | razum | – | razumljiv | reason, comprehensible |
| t + j | = | ć | smrt | – | smrću | death |
| d + j | = | đ | mlad | – | mladi | young |
| s + j | = | š | visok | – | viši | tall |
| z + j | = | ž | brz | – | brži | fast |
| k + j | = | č | jak | – | jači | strong |
| h + j | = | š | tih | – | tiši | quiet |
| g + j | = | ž | drag | – | draži | dear |
| st + j | = | šć | čest | – | češći | frequent |
| zd + j | = | žđ | grozd | – | grožđe | grapes |

Assimilation

As the spelling of Croatian is mainly phonetic, most consonant assimilations that occur are recorded in writing:

(a) Alternation of voiced/unvoiced consonants: the following consonants are ‘paired’:

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|----------|------------|------------|----------|----------|----------|-------------------|
| unvoiced: | č | ć | (f) | k | p | s | š | t |
| voiced: | d | ž | đ | (v) | g | b | z | ž d |

If one of these consonants is placed immediately next to one of the others it may be replaced by its pair so that they are both either voiced or unvoiced, according to the last consonant in the group:

| | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------|
| sladak | slatko | sweet |
| težak | teško | difficult |
| Englez | engleski | English |

(b) Alternation of s and z with š and ž.

When s, z are placed next to a palatal or palatalized consonant, they change to their palatalized equivalent š and ž:

| | | | |
|----------------|----------|------------------|---------|
| misliti | to think | mišljenje | opinion |
|----------------|----------|------------------|---------|

pazit to take care **pažnja** attention, care

7 Formation of questions

In Unit 1 you met the most common ways of asking questions. There are three more to consider:

- (a) Questions may be formed by the addition of **zar ne?** 'isn't it so?' at the end of the sentence. This usually implies the expectation of a positive answer:

Vaš stric je bogat, zar ne?
Your uncle is rich, isn't he?

- (b) The words **je li?** or **je li da?** may also be added, but in this case the expectation may be slightly different.

Vaš stric je bogat, je li?
So, your uncle is rich, is he?

- (c) **Zar** used with an affirmative verb conveys a note of surprise:

Zar učiš hrvatski?
You don't really mean you're learning Croatian, do you?

8 Other tenses

There are three tenses you have not yet encountered: the aorist, imperfect and pluperfect. There is no need for you to learn to use these yourself, but you should be able to recognize them, particularly in certain stock phrases.

Aorist

You have already come across the aorist of **biti**: **bih** etc. Apart from this, you are most likely to meet it in dialogue involving the verb **reći** 'to say':

Doći ću, reče. I shall come, he said.

or in reported speech:

Rekoh da ću doći. I said I would come.

The aorist endings of **reći** are, then: **(ja) rekoh**, **(ti) reče**, **(on) reče**, **(mi) rekosmo**, **(vi) rekoste**, **(oni) rekoše**.

In the modern language, however, the past perfect tense has virtually replaced the aorist. In narration, its place is frequently taken by the *historic present*, i.e. the present tense used with past meaning to convey speed or suddenness of action. Examples:

Pokupiše sav novac i pobješkoše.

Pokupe sav novac i pobjegnu.

They collected all the money and ran away.

Imperfect

Again, this tense has been virtually replaced by the perfect. You may sometimes hear the imperfect of **biti**, however, so you need to be able to recognize it: **(ja) bijah** or **bjeh**, **(ti) bijaše** or **bješe**, **(on) bijaše** or **bješe**, **(mi) bijasmo** or **bjesmo**, **(vi) bijaste**, **bjeste**, **(oni) bijahu**, **bjehu**.

Pluperfect

This is a compound tense, consisting of either the imperfect of **biti** and the active past participle (**bijah došao**) or the perfect tense of **biti** and the past participle (**bio sam došao**). The second method is more common.

9 Collective numerals

Neuter collective numerals

English has a limited number of collective numerals ('pair', 'trio', 'quartet', 'quintet' etc.), however it is possible to make a collective neuter form of virtually any number in Croatian, e.g.: **dvoje**, **troje**, **četvero/čtvoro**, **petero/petoro**, **šestero/šestoro**, **sedmero/sedmoro** ... **jedanaestero/jedanaestoro**, **dvanaestero/dvanaestoro** etc. As in English ('a pair of ...'), these numerals take the genitive:

Desetero/desetoro putnika je došlo na izlet.

Ten passengers came on the outing.

They are used in two main situations:

(a) When the numeral refers to a group of mixed gender:

Troje nas je sjedilo na terasi.

Three of us were sitting on the terrace.

Ima šestero/šestoro gostiju na večeri.

There are six guests for dinner.

(b) With collective nouns, whether or not they refer to the same gender: **djeca** (which may be mixed or not), **braća** (which is obviously all male):

Imamo troje djece: dva sina i kćer.

We have three children: two sons and a daughter.

Karte za četvero/četvoro odraslih i dvoje djece, molim.

Tickets for four adults and two children, please.

(In this case the children could be two boys or two girls or mixed.)

Zamisli, ona ima sedmero/sedmoro braće!

Imagine, she's got seven brothers!

There are declensions for these numerals, but they are virtually obsolete:

gen. **dvoga, troga, četvorga/četvera** etc.

dat./loc./instr. **dvoma, troma, četvorma** etc.

These forms are never used in the modern language after a preposition, but you will find them occasionally in oblique cases when there is no preposition:

Putovat ću s dvoje prijatelja.

I shall travel with two friends.

but **Nama dvoma je govorio.**

He spoke to the two of us.

Masculine collective numerals

These are used to refer to a group of males. They have a feminine singular form, but are followed by a plural verb. If the verb is in the past tense, the participle may be either masculine plural or feminine singular:

Dvojica su došla. (or došli)

Two men came.

They are formed by the addition of the suffix **-ica** to the collective stem: **dvojica, trojica, četverica/četvorica, peterica/petorica, šesterica/šestorica** etc. They are generally used when the men they refer to have already been mentioned:

Ona ima sedmero/sedmoro braće: trojica su liječnici, dvojica su inženjeri, a dvojica su još uvijek na fakultetu. She has seven brothers; three are doctors, two engineers and two are still at university.

‘Both’

English ‘both’ may be expressed in each of these ways:

oboje: **Imam sina i kćer, oboje su kod bake.**
I have a son and a daughter, they are both at their grandmother’s.

objica: **Poznajem njezina dva brata, objica su zgodna.**
I know her two brothers, both are good-looking.

Distributive numerals

There are adjectival forms of the neuter collective numerals, which agree in all respects with the noun they qualify. They must be used in the following situations:

(a) with those nouns which have only plural forms:

dvoja vrata two doors

troje novine three newspapers

Čitali smo istu vijest u trojim novinama.

We read the same piece of news in three papers.

Brava na dvojim vratima se slomila.

The lock on two doors is broken.

and

(b) with nouns denoting pairs of things:

Kupila sam dvoje cipele.

I bought two pairs of shoes.

On treba troje nove čarape.

He needs three new pairs of socks.

Morate otvoriti četvere oči.

You must have your eyes wide open.

| | <i>m.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>f.</i> | <i>m.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>f.</i> |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| nom. | dvoji | dvoja | dvoje | peteri | petera | petere |
| gen. | dvojih | dvojih | dvojih | peterih | peterih | peterih |
| dat. | dvojim | dvojim | dvojim | peterim | peterim | peterim |
| acc. | dvoje | dvoja | dvoje | petere | petera | petere |
| loc./instr. | dvojim | dvojim | dvojim | peterim | peterim | peterim |

Key to exercises

The following answers are for the main exercises only (marked by † in the text).

Unit 1

Exercise 3b

1 Ne, Ana nije Engleskinja, Ana je Irkinja. 2 Da, ja sam Englez. 3 Jeste li vi Englezi? 4 Oni su Škoti. 5 Jesi li ti Škot? 6 Moja žena je Irkinja. 7 Ne, mi nismo studenti, mi smo profesori. 8 Ne, ja nisam umoran, ja sam gladan. 9 Je li Marko student? 10 Ne, on nije student.

Exercise 5

Je. Je. Je. Jesi. Jesam. Vi. Nisam. Li. Je. Je.

Exercise 6a

1 Govorite li engleski? 2 Jeste li Englez? 3 Zar vi niste gospodin Cameron? 4 Ja se zovem Petar. 5 Mi smo umorni. 6 Učite li hrvatski?

Exercise 6b

A: Dobar dan. B: Dobar dan. A: Ja sam Ivan Balog. B: Drago mi je. Ja sam Declan Daly. A: Jeste li vi Englez? B: Ne, nisam, ja sam Irac. A: Jeste li vi student? B: Ne, nisam, ja sam profesor. A: Govorite li hrvatski? B: Samo malo. Učim.

Exercise 8b

Ja sam g. Smith. Tko ste vi? Zovem se Marko. Jeste li Englez? Ne, ja sam Hrvat. Govorite li engleski? Ne, na žalost. Ali vi razumi-jete hrvatski! Samo malo.

Exercise 8d

1 John je Englez. On govori engleski. 2 Martina je Slovenka. Ona govori slovenski. 3 Gospodin Antić je Hrvat. On govori hrvatski. 4 Marta je Njemica. Ona govori njemački. 5 Pierre je Francuz. On govori francuski. 6 Roberto je Talijan. On govori talijanski. 7 Jorge je Španjolac. On govori španjolski.

Exercise 8e

1 Kako se on zove? 2 Kako ste? 3 Jeste li vi Englezi? 4 Zar vi niste Englez? 5 Govorite li engleski?

Unit 2

Exercise 2

Svi često putuju danas. Svi vole putovati vlakom kad imaju vremena, ali kad putuju poslovno onda se voze zrakoplovom. Dok se voze vlakom, svi vole gledati kroz prozor. Ponekad idu u hodnik popušiti cigaretu ili razgovaraju o putovanju.

Exercise 3

u. putovati. je. mora. se. zatvara.

Exercise 4

1 Mora učiti hrvatski. 2 Želiš govoriti jezik. 3 Volimo spavati. 4 Moraju pušiti. 5 Voli se voziti autom.

Exercise 5a

1 Vozim se autom. Oni se voze autom. 2 Zove se Alan. Putnik se zove Alan. 3 Žele se sjećati. Ona se želi sjećati. 4 Dućan se zatvara. Zatvara se u 8 sati.

Exercise 5c

1 Volite li putovati? 2 Ne volim putovati zrakoplovom. 3 Gledate li kroz prozor? 4 Često spavaju u vlaku. 5 Voli putovati vlakom kad ima vremena.

Exercise 6b

1 b; 2 b; 3 a; 4 c; 5 d

Exercise 6c

1 Putuješ li ti često? 2 On voli putovati. 3 Ona ne puši. 4 Mi se vozimo autom. 5 Marko često spava kad putuje. 6 Vi morate sada ići. 7 Ja želim učiti hrvatski. 8 Oni ne razumiju španjolski. 9 On se zove Ivan. 10 Oni ne piju vino.

Unit 3

Exercise 1a

gospođe, Hrvati, Englezi, žene, mladići, djevojke, Irkinje, jezici, cigarete, hodnici, prozori, putovnice

Exercise 1b

djevojke razgovaraju; prtljaga dolazi; putovnice se pokazuju; torbe se uzimaju; Alan misli; ja se veselim; vlak stiže; ti putuješ; stjuardesa prilazi; Ivo i Mara šetaju

Exercise 2b

1 (b); 2 (a); 3 (d); 4 (c); 5 (a)

Exercise 3b

cigarete. Englezi. torbe. hodnici. luke. sinovi. putovnice. vlakovi. Hrvati. automobili.

Exercise 3c

1 Putnici putuju. 2 Kave se piju. 3 Putovnice se pokazuju. 4 Jezici se govore. 5 Vlakovi stižu. 6 Zrakoplovi dolaze. 7 Sela se vide. 8 Cigarete se puše.

Exercise 5b

švicarski sir, rimske fontane, praško pivo, londonski parkovi, zagrebačke ulice, hrvatska televizija, bečka zračna luka

Exercise 6c

1 Je li ovo zagrebačka zračna luka? 2 Je li to carinska kontrola? 3 Imate li što prijaviti? 4 Gdje su putovnice? 5 Imate li mnogo stvari? 6 Je li ovo vaša torba? 7 Gdje su kolica? 8 Moramo li pokazati putovnice?

Unit 4

Exercise 5b

A: Dobar dan, ja sam Vjekoslav Kovačić. B: Drago mi je. Ja sam John Green. A: Jeste li iz Engleske? Dobro govorite hrvatski. B: Hvala, govorite li vi engleski? A: Samo malo. Ostajete li u Zagrebu? B: Nekoliko dana. Znete li gdje se nalazi hotel Palace? A: Mislim

da je blizu kolodvora. Ovo je predgrađe Zagreba. B: Evo nas. Je li ovo vaša torba? A: Je. Hvala. Drago mi je što smo se upoznali. B: I meni. Svako dobro. Do viđenja! A: Do viđenja!

Exercise 5d

Vesna ide na *kolodvor* jer mora čekati prijatelja iz *Rijeke*. Vlak stiže na vrijeme. Kad Ivan dođe, idu u *hotel* da ostave stvari, a onda idu u *restoran*. Hotel je blizu *kolodvora*. Ivan je u vlaku. Gleda kroz *prozor* i misli da vidi *Vesnu*. Vesna čeka na platformi. Ivan izlazi iz *vlaka*. Ivan i Vesna se pozdravljaju. Ivan nema puno stvari. Ima samo *torbu* i nešto za *Vesnu*.

Unit 5

Exercise 1b

1 Djeca daju majkama ruke. 2 Dajemo carinicima putovnice. 3 Oni govore prijateljima istine. 4 Momci daju djevojkama poklone. 5 Profesori govore studentima.

Exercise 4b

1 Nije daleko do hotela, idemo pješice. 2 Nemamo rezervacije, trebamo dvokrevetnu sobu. 3 Ima samo jedna slobodna soba, nalazi se na trećem katu. 4 Ako imate mnogo prtljage, dječak će vam ponijeti stvari. 5 Kad izađete iz dizala, soba je na lijevoj strani hodnika. 6 Na žalost dizalo ne radi, treba ići stubištem. 7 Evo vam ključ, molim vaše putovnice. 8 Soba je velika, i ima lijep pogled na park. 9 Ako trebaš kišobran, stvari su u ormaru. 10 Kupaonica je lijepa, ima tuš, umivaonik i WC.

Exercise 4d

Idem u Zagreb. Putujem zrakoplovom. Trebam hotel blizu auto-busnog kolodvora. Ne nosim mnogo prtljage pa mogu ići u hotel pješice. Trebam jednokrevetnu sobu. Želim veliku sobu s pogledom na park. Želim biti na prvom katu jer ne volim dizala. Trebam kupaonicu s tušem, WC i umivaonikom.

Exercise 4e

1 (c); 2 (a); 3 (c); 4 (d); 5 (a)

Exercise 4f

Petar je u *vlaku*. Putuje na *more*. Želi provesti vikend s *prijateljima* u *Splitu*. Petar obično putuje *zrakoplovom*, ali sada ima vremena pa putuje *vlakom*. U kupe ulazi konduker. Petar daje *kondukeru* kartu. Kad dođe u *Split*, na *kolodvoru* ga čeka prijatelj Ivan.

Unit 6

Exercise 3a

1 Taj Škot je lijep. 2 Irkinje su lijepe. 3 Je li vaša soba udobna? 4 Zrakoplov je udoban. 5 Je li autobusna postaja blizu? 6 Imaš li veliki crni kišobran? 7 Dalmatkinje su lijepe i elegantne. 8 Je li vaša torba crna? 9 Zar nije pogled s balkona lijep? 10 Zagreb je ugodan grad. 11 Stari Zagreb je malen, ali lijep. 12 Je li Palace dobar hotel? 13 Nije velik hotel, ali je udoban. 14 Hvar je lijep otok. 15 To je naš veliki sin, vidite li kroz prozor? 16 On može nositi veliki crni kofer. 17 Ovo je naš hotel; vidiš da je ugodan. 18 Dvokrevetna soba nije jako velika. 19 Ali soba je udobna i ima lijep pogled na park. 20 Putnici su umorni i žele spavati.

Exercise 4a

1 (b); 2 (a); 3 (b); 4 (c); 5 (d)

Unit 7

Exercise 1

1 Ovo je jedna moja prijateljica. 2 Ovo je jedan moj prijatelj. 3 Jedna žena ima prekrasan stan u Dubrovniku. 4 Jedan putnik putuje sam u Zagreb. 5 Jedno dijete je u vlaku bez roditelja.

Exercise 2a

1 We have to reserve two rooms at the hotel. 2 At the post office we buy three stamps. 3 I need one envelope and five airmail letters. 4 You must send one registered letter. 5 Where can I hand in these four parcels? 6 You must change those twenty traveller's cheques in an exchange office. 7 We have a letter of credit for your bank. 8 You can change \$100 in the bank. 9 They want to take £12 out of their savings book. 10 She wants to invest these £53 in her post office savings account.

Exercise 2c

1: Vidim na ulici 3 lijepe djevojke. 2:2 visoka čovjeka hodaju po parku. 3: Molim vas, 2 svijetla piva. 4:5 debelih studenata ide u moju školu. 5:3 velike kuće se grade.

Exercise 3b

Dva putnika izlaze iz hotela. Žele poslati neka pisma i javiti se telefonom prijateljima u Dubrovniku. – Oprostite, kažu mladog ženi na ulici – znate li gdje se nalazi pošta? – Glavna pošta je kod kolod-vora. Nije daleko odavde. Skrenite desno i idite ravno. – Hvala lijepo na pomoći. – Nema na čemu. Do viđenja.

Unit 8

Exercise 1

1 Tko je direktor novog hotela? 2 Gdje je ključ naše sobe? 3 Je li to kuća tvojih roditelja? 4 Preporučujem vam bocu domaćeg vina. 5 Imaš li ključeve crvenog auta? 6 Evo adrese naših prijatelja. 7 Je li ovo mjesto stare gospođe? 8 Kako je ime ukusnog likera? 9 Gdje su vrata spavaće sobe? 10 Je li ovo prtljaga tih novih putnika?

Exercise 2b

1 Ima li svježeg kruha? 2 Ima li bijelog šećera? 3 Ima li domaćeg vina? 4 Ima li svježe ribe? 5 Ima li crne kave?

Exercise 3a

1 Imate vrlo lijepu kuću. 2 Balkon je pokraj dnevne sobe. 3 Hodnik vodi u spavaću sobu. 4 Imamo jako malo predsoblje. 5 Volim ove lijepe zastore. 6 Što vidite kroz velike prozore? 7 Gdje su vrata novog stana? 8 Pazite, imaju opasnog psa! 9 Ove kuće imaju lijepe vrtove. 10 Vidite li velike balkone novih stanova?

Exercise 3b

1 Molim vas, govedu juhu i zelenu salatu. 2 Vidim lijepu djevojku. 3 Ovaj restoran ima dobru hranu. 4 Ove vile imaju prekrasne vrtove. 5 Molim vas, bijelo vino.

Unit 9

Exercise 3a

1 Hotel nije daleko od glavne pošte. 2 U tramvaju sjedim svaki dan s istim starim gospodinom. 3 Ima izvrstan restoran u tom lijepom hotelu. 4 Vidimo svoje stare prijatelje kroz staklena vrata. 5 Mislim da se vaša prtljaga nalazi među svim tim torbama. 6 Prijatelji pričaju o prekrasnom boravku na moru. 7 Kad izlazite iz kavane, dućan je na lijevoj strani. 8 Tvoja putovnica se nalazi na stolu kod prozora. 9 Sada hodamo prema katedrali, preko Trga bana Jelačića. 10 Ima nekoliko dućana ispod trga pred hotelom Esplanada.

Exercise 3b

1 The hotel is not far from the main post office. 2 In the tram I sit every day with the same old gentleman. 3 There is an excellent restaurant in that nice hotel. 4 We see our old friends through the glass door. 5 I think that your luggage is among all those bags. 6 The friends are talking about their lovely stay at the sea. 7 When you come out of the café, the shop is on the left. 8 Your passport is on the table by the window. 9 We are now walking

towards the cathedral, across Ban Jelačić Square. 10 There are several shops under the square in front of the Esplanade hotel.

Exercise 3c

1 Kad smo na Gornjem gradu, imamo pogled na Donji grad. 2 Idemo prema poznatoj ulici Ilici. 3 Pijem kavu s dobrim prijateljima. 4 Nalazimo se na glavnom kolodvoru. 5 Pokazujem grad starim prijateljima. 6 Sada smo nasuprot neogotičkoj katedrali. 7 U velikom parku ima mnogo klupa. 8 On govori o zagrebačkoj povijesti. 9 Volim jesti u malim restoranima. 10 Idemo prema umjetničkim galerijama.

Exercise 4

1 Gleda se nogomet vikendom. 2 Ide se na izlet nedjeljom. 3 Ne kupuju se knjige jer su skupe. 4 Čitaju se novine svaki dan. 5 Pije se puno kava svaki dan.

Exercise 5a

1 Idete li k bratu? 2 Dućan se nalazi za poštom. 3 Ima lijep parkić pred hotelom. 4 Vodim prijatelja na Gornji grad. 5 Ima lijepa crkva u tom selu. 6 Idu prema kolodvoru ovom ulicom. 7 Zna li on nešto o Gornjem gradu? 8 Možete vidjeti katedralu nad tim krovovima. 9 Među kućama ima nekih vrlo starih. 10 Gledamo crvene krovove grada pod brijegom.

Reading passage 1: Zagreb

Our walk starts on Ban Jelačić Square in the Lower Town. This main square of Zagreb has existed since the seventeenth century. The oldest house on present-day Ban Jelačić Square is no. 15, and the 'youngest' the skyscraper at the beginning of Ilica Street. Ilica is one of the longest, perhaps even the oldest, and certainly one of the most popular streets in Zagreb. There is a statue of Ban Josip Jelačić on a horse in the square, and to its right there is a well called 'Manduševac'. Zagreb's name is connected to the well. Once a horseman ordered a woman, Manduša, by the well: 'Manduša, get (a ladleful of water)!' And that is why the well became 'Manduševac' and the town 'Zagreb'. We go straight ahead from Manduševac along Bakačeva Street towards the Cathedral. We pass by the Tourist Information centre. Now we are on Kaptol, opposite the large neo-gothic cathedral. Kaptol is part of the Upper Town. This is where Zagreb's history began. Zagreb is located on two small hills, called Kaptol and Gradec. We are going from Kaptol towards Zagreb's most famous market: Dolac. Here Zagreb citizens buy fresh fruit and vegetables and then go to Tkalčićeva Street for coffee, because there are lots of cafés and restaurants there. We are back again on Ban Jelačić Square, from where we go towards Zrinski Square, better known as Zrinjevac. This is a square of big plane trees, pensioners' benches, tourist agencies, monuments, art galleries. At the end of the square, opposite the main railway station, is yet another statue – King Tomislav on a horse. The statue on Tomislav's Square is a frequent subject of postcards of Zagreb.

Unit 10

Exercise 1b

Jučer sam šetao od jutra do mraka. Ustali smo rano ujutro i popili smo samo jednu kavu i pojeli jedan kolač. Nismo imali vremena za veliki doručak jer je naš vodič već čekao na trgu. Malo smo kasnili. Najprije smo krenuli na razgledavanje starog grada i kate-drale. Jedan dio grupe je išao u Gradski muzej dok je drugi dio grupe otišao na razgledavanje sportskih objekata u parku. Svi smo se našli na ručku u pivnici 'Medvedgrad'. Poslije ručka smo razgle-davali novi dio grada gdje smo posjetili i moderni trgovački centar i tržnicu.

Kad sam došao kući, bio sam umoran i gladan.

Exercise 2 (second stage)

1 Jeste li stigli na granicu jučer? 2 Je li rezervirao dvokrevetnu sobu u hotelu? 3 Jesu li vidjeli katedralu i kazalište? 4 Je li pošla posjetiti prijatelje? 5 Jesu li vidjeli mnogo zanimljivih stvari u gradu? 6 Jesmo li sreli vaše prijatelje u Dubrovniku? 7 Jeste li pili domaću rakiju kod prijatelja? 8 Je li stavio bijelo vino u hladnjak jutros? 9 Jesu li se dobro odmorili u udobnom hotelu? 10 Jesi li hodao/jeste li hodali cijeli dan?

Exercise 3a

A: I haven't seen the new American film, how about you? B: I haven't either. Have you and Vesna been in the new café by the Sava? A: No. We haven't been anywhere. Have the children come to you? B: No. They didn't want to be in the city. A: I thought they really liked the city. But, you never know!

Exercise 3b

1 On je rekao da nije imao vremena pa nije napisao pisma. 2 Jeste li bili jučer na izletu? 3 Ja nikad nisam bio u Zagrebu, a svake godine idem u Hrvatsku. 4 Radio je cijelu noć prekjucher pa je već dva dana umoran. 5 Drago mi je da ste uspjeli kupiti karte za Split i da ste dobili dobar let.

Exercise 3c

1 Jučer sam cijeli dan spavala dok je Marko bio na poslu. 2 Putovali su cijelo jutro pa su sada umorni. 3 Jutros sam stavio bocu bijelog vina u hladnjak pa je sada dovoljno hladno. 4 Upoznao sam Ivana kad sam živio u Dubrovniku. 5 Dok sam studirao u Londonu, naučio sam mnogo.

Exercise 5

1 Na kolodvoru je čekalo pet umornih putnika. 2 Na zidu su stajale tri crvene boce. 3 U kupeu su sjedila dva sumnjiva tipa. 4 U hodniku je stajalo sedam crnih kofera. 5 Na park

su gledale četiri prostrane sobe. 6 U gradu se prodavalo šest udobnih stanova. 7 Na stolu je čekalo pet ukusnih jela. 8 Dva preporučena pisma su stigla za oca. 9 Četiri telefonska razgovora su dugo trajala. 10 Pet ukusnih jela je čekalo na stolu.

Unit 11

Exercise 1

1 mene; 2 mnom; 3 mi; 4 meni; 5 mene; 6 me; 7 mi; 8 mnom; 9 mi; 10 me

Exercise 2

1 ti; 2 tebe; 3 te; 4 tobom; 5 tebe; 6 ti; 7 tebi; 8 ti; 9 te; 10 tebe

Exercise 3

1 sebe; 2 se; 3 sobom; 4 se; 5 sebi; 6 sebe; 7 sebi; 8 si; 9 sobom; 10 se

Exercise 4

1 mu; 2 joj; 3 nju, njega; 4 ga; 5 njom; 6 je; 7 je; 8 ga; 9 ju; 10 joj

Exercise 5a

1 njima; 2 ih; 3 nam; 4 vas; 5 nas; 6 vam; 7 vas; 8 njih; 9 vama; 10 nas

Exercise 5b

1 Je li me vidio? 2 Pokazala mi je knjigu. 3 Idu sa mnom. 4 Dolaziš k meni večeras. 5 Bio je kod mene jučer. 6 Jesu li te posjetili? 7 Dao sam ti knjigu. 8 Sjedili su iza vas. 9 Hodao je prema tebi. 10 To je jako lijepo od vas. 11 Kupio je tu knjigu za sebe. 12 Nosimo mnogo stvari sa sobom. 13 Treba sebi nešto kupiti. 14 Morate više misliti o sebi. 15 Mogu samo za sebe govoriti.

Exercise 6a

1 Jesi li bio kod njega? 2 Sinoć smo je vidjeli. 3 Jeste li ga gledali? 4 Ona se igrala s njom. 5 Dao mu je knjigu. 6 Bili su kod nje na ručku. 7 Putovali su s njima. 8 On je lijepo govorio o njoj. 9 Jeste li ih otpratili na kolodvor? 10 Pokazala ju je prijateljima.

Exercise 6c

John mi je rođak. Brat mi je oženjen Aninom sestrom. Je li ti bratić? Moja sestra je rastavljena. Slažu li se dobro? Imate li braće ili sestara? Udala se jako mlada. Imamo nećaka. Moja majka ima polubrata.

Exercise 6d

(i) Jučer me je moj prijatelj pozvao na utakmicu. Rekao je da voli ići sa mnom jer se pokraj mene osjeća sigurno. Meni je bilo drago da moj prijatelj tako misli o meni. Pričao mi je zanimljive priče o drugim utakmicama.

(ii) Moj prijatelj Marijan pozvao me je na izlet. Predložio sam mu da idemo na planinarenje. Putem smo sreli Ladu. Pitali smo je želi li ići s nama. Bilo joj je vrlo drago. I nama je bilo drago što ona ide s nama.

Exercise 7a

1 Vidio/vidjela sam ga. 2 Jesi li je poznavao/poznavala? 3 Pozvali su nas. 4 Čuli smo ih. 5 Molim te/vas. 6 Govorim ti istinu. 7 Jeste li mu dali knjigu? 8 Idemo s njima. 9 Često govorim o njoj. 10 Moji roditelji su kod nas sada.

Unit 12

Exercise 2e

Petar se sprema za ljetovanje. Odlučio je najprije otići na plan-inarenje, a onda na more. Najprije će morati spakirati stvari za kampiranje; šator, vreću za spavanje, kuhalo..., a onda će pakirati laganu ljetnu odjeću. Petar neće putovati sam. S njim će ići i njegov prijatelj Ivan. Krenut će najprije vlakom u Rijeku, odakle će se voziti autobusom do Donje Klade. Od tamo će početi hodati do planinarskog doma 'Zavižan' na Velebitu. Provest će 5 dana na planinarenju, a onda će sići na obalu gdje će ih čekati grupa prijatelja i s njima će ići na otok Rab. Na Rabu će kampirati tjedan dana.

Exercise 3b

Moram napraviti plan za ljetovanje. Želim putovati u Hrvatsku početkom lipnja. Posjetit ću prijatelje u Zagrebu. Ostat ću neko-liko dana s njima. Onda ću poći u Split. Mislim da ću putovati vlakom. Volim vlak i možete mnogo vidjeti kroz prozor. Bit će vruće, ali to neće biti teško za mene. Volim vrućinu. Stalno ću nosit šešir. Onda ću poći na Hvar. Rezervirat ću privatnu sobu blizu mora. Hvar je jako lijep otok. Već sam bio/bila tamo više puta i znam da mi se mnogo sviđa.

Exercise 3c

1 Neće sada doći, jer je kasno. 2 Bit će hladno na vrhu brda, ali je vidik divan. 3 Ručat ćemo kada vi dođete. 4 Nije čuo vijesti, jer ne gleda televiziju. 5 Možete sjedjeti vani ako želite.

Unit 13

Exercise 1

1 Soba je na drugom katu. 2 Pošta je iza prvog ugla lijevo. 3 Ovo mu je peta knjiga. 4 Kupaoonica je treća vrata desno. 5 Je li vam ovo prva večera u Dalmaciji?

Exercise 3a

1 Doći će u ponedjeljak. 2 Ostat ćeš do subote, zar ne? 3 Srijedom igram nogomet. 4 Idemo u kino u petak. 5 Što radiš u nedjelju? 6 Uvijek se javljam mami subotom. 7 Nedjeljom idemo s djecom u šetnju. 8 Dolaze na večeru u srijedu. 9 Stigla je rano u četvrtak. 10 Pozvao te je u kazalište u subotu.

Exercise 3b

1 (b); 2 (c); 3 (a); 4 (b); 5 (a)

Reading passage 2: 'White' by Dubravko Mihanović

Characters: Workman (60), Boy (20) **Scene:** An empty room with bare walls. An open window on the left. The floor is covered with paper, empty beer bottles, an ashtray. Painting gear scattered about the room.

Time: Between 8 and 9 in the morning, one day in July. The workman and the boy are painting the right-hand wall. The boy is on the ladder.

Workman: Did you watch last night? *Boy:* Who? *Workman:* Who? Ours. *Boy:* Sort of. A bit. *Workman:* You have to watch that. *Boy:* I know. *Workman:* Ours are slow. *Boy:* Who? *Workman:* Our football players. I say they're slow. The Danes run. A lot. They're over the whole pitch. You know what I have been thinking ... *Boy:* What? *Workman:* You see, all of these ... Northerners ... all of them run a lot. Take the Danes. They run. The Swedes? They run. The Norwegians? They run. OK, I don't know about the Finns. They don't really play football. *Boy:* No? *Workman:* Now, I've been thinking – maybe they run because it's cold up there. So they have to keep moving. To get warm. So they got into the habit. *Boy:* Maybe. *Workman:* So they run lots even when they play away. Out of habit.

Note about the author: Dubravko Mihanović

Born in 1975 in Zagreb. After grammar school, he enrolled at the Drama Academy where he studied script-writing. His first play, 'The Penguins' was performed in Požega and then in Zagreb at the Gavella Theatre. He is also editor of the magazine *Tide*.

Unit 14

Exercise 2

1 kraćim. 2 bližoj. 3 dubljem. 4 višim. 5 daljih. 6 jaćim. 7 tišem. 8 većoj. 9 skupljem. 10 gorća.

Exercise 3b

1 Više volim putovati zrakoplovom, iako je skuplje. 2 Źeli poslati ovo pismo najbržim putem. 3 Dajte mi manji obrok za dijete, molim vas. 4 Spavat će bolje u tišoj sobi. 5 Imate li veće džempere?

Exercise 3c

1 Ben Nevis je najviši vrh Škotske. 2 Ove godine nam je bolji godišnji odmor od prošle godine. 3 Moj stan je veći od tvog. 4 Zrakoplov je brži od auta. 5 Atlantik je dublji od Jadranskog mora. 6 Marko je najpametniji student na godini. 7 Danas je najljepši dan u lipnju. 8 Ovo vino je skuplje od piva. 9 Mi smo najmanja grupa studenata. 10 Vlakovi u Hrvatskoj su jeftiniji od autobusa.

Exercise 3d

London je veći od Zagreba. New York je užurbaniji od Splita. Split je prljaviji od Zadra. Švicarska je čistća od Engleske. London je prometniji od Zagreba.

Exercise 4a

Idemo na godišnji odmor u subotu, prekосуtra! Ne želimo nositi mnogo, pa ćemo uzeti samo najpotrebnije stvari. Imam jedan mali kofer i jednu veliku torbu. Uzet ću hlaće i džemper, jer je ponekad svježje navečer, tri haljine, suknju, dvije majice, dvije bluze, cipele, čarape i donje rublje. Mužće uzeti hlaće, pet košulja, tri majice, šorc i dva džemperera. On može nositi kupaće kostime i rućnike.

Exercise 4b

Ana: Danas se prvi put nalazim s Markom. Što mislišćto ću obući? Ovu laganiju zelenu haljinu ili plave hlaće i bijelu majicu? Iva: Danas je hladnije nego što je bilo jućer. Mislim da je bolje da obućeš nešto toplije. Ana: Imaš pravo. Hoću li obući onda crnu dugu suknju i crvenu majicu ili ovu kraću ljubićastu suknju i bijelu košulju? Iva: Bolje ti stoji ljubićasta boja nego crna. U crnoj boji izgledaš starije. Ana: Eh, dobro. Ti imaš više ukusa od mene.

Exercise 5c

1 (a); 2 (c); 3 (c); 4 (a); 5 (a)

Unit 15**Exercise 1b**

(i) A: Molim vas tu autokartu. B: Želite li ovu manju u mjerilu 1:25 000 ili onu veću? A: Koliko košta ta manja? B: Ova manja košta 35 kuna, a veća 50 kuna. A: Uzet ću tu manju, hvala.

(ii) A: Koliko košta taj crveni džemper? B: Mislite li na ovaj svijetlo crveni ili onaj tamno crveni? A: Na taj svijetlo crveni. Mogu li ga probati? B: Izvolite, kabine su na drugom katu. A: Hvala.

(iii) A: Jesu li te novine današnji *Večernji list*. B: Ne, ove novine su *Jutarnji list*, a one su *Večernji list*. A: Molim vas onda te novine, a je li izašao novi broj *Glorije*? B: Da, evo vam novog broja na toj strani.

Exercise 2a

1 Je li to Jasnin muž? 2 Gdje su putnikove rukavice? 3 Upoznao sam suprugu/ženu kod Slavkove sestre. 4 Putujemo Ivanovim novim autom. 5 Hoćeš li vidjeti Aninu majku? 6 Karte su u Norinoj torbi. 7 Ideš li u kino s Tomovim bratom? 8 Želi upoznati ženinog nećaka. 9 Jeste li vidjeli profesorov šešir? 10 Ostavili su prtljagu u Markovom autu.

Exercise 2b

1 Ovo je Markov stan. 2 Ovo je Marijina torba. 3 Ovo su ženini ključevi. 4 Ovo su muževe knjige. 5 Ležite na susjedovoj terasi. 6 Pušite Ivanove cigarete. 7 Idete na Majin rođendan. 8 Idete gledati prijateljicinu novu kuću. 9 Ovo je kolegino dijete. 10 Spavam na sinovom novom krevetu.

Reading passage 1: By car to the Plitvice Lakes

A modern motorway leads from Zagreb to Karlovac towards the Adriatic coast. This road passes through the fertile and picturesque valley of the Korana river. At the village of Rakovica the road turns towards Split, and after a few kilometres the first cascades and waterfalls of the Plitvice Lakes National Park can be seen. This magnificent work of nature represents one of the greatest attractions in Europe and one of the most attractive places in the interior of Croatia. Sixteen lakes, of beautiful blue-green pastel colours, in which the green of dense forests is reflected, pour into one another in cascades and waterfalls. Some cascades are 30 and even up to 78 metres high, while some exceptionally beautiful ones are far smaller. Paths link the lakes which enables visitors to get to know them all completely and to enjoy the beauty and peace of this beautiful natural phenomenon. In order that the beauty of this area should be completely preserved, the driving of cars is prohibited in the immediate proximity of the lakes.

Exercise 3b

1 (a); 2 (c); 3 (c); 4 (b)

Unit 16**Exercise 1**

1 Spremit ćemo svoje stvari. 2 Nisu bili u svojoj sobi kad sam ušao. 3 Vidio sam tvoju sestru u pošti. 4 Putujete li svojim autom? 5 Moja kći je pošla u Englesku s nekim svojim prijateljima. 6 Je li vaš sin kod svog prijatelja? 7 Posjetit će moje roditelje. 8 Stanujem kod svoje majke u Londonu. 9 Bili smo u vašoj kući jučer. 10 Mora pisati svojoj sestri! 11 Tražite li svoju torbu? 12 Njezin otac slavi svoj osamdeseti rođendan. 13 Putuje li mojim autom? 14 Treba dati ovu knjigu svojoj majci. 15 Hoće li spavati u tvojoj sobi?

Exercise 2a

(I) Marko, Ivan i Maja izlaze iz kuće. Vani pada kiša. Njihovi kišobrani su u hodniku. Marko: Jeste li vidjeli moj kišobran? Ne mogu ga naći. Ivan: Ja sam već našao svoj kišobran. Mislim da si ti svoj kišobran ostavio sinoć u kupaonici. Marko: Ah, da, imaš pravo, vidim ga u kadi. Maja: Ma, ne, Marko, taj kišobran je moj, a tvoj je u hodniku pokraj ogledala.

(II) Vesna i Marija traže Markov auto na parkiralištu. Vesna: Kako izgleda Markov auto? Marija: Njegov auto je još uvijek crveni Fiat uno. Vesna: Kako to misliš još uvijek? Marija: Marko nije zadovoljan sa svojim autom jer se stalno kvari. Njegov motor je star. Prije neki dan mu je pukla guma pa sam mu morala posu-diti svoj auto. Vesna: Hoćete li onda na more ići tvojim autom ili Markovim? Marija: Idemo mojim jer je sigurniji.

(III) Ivan i Maja idu u posjet svojim prijateljima. Njihovi prijatelji žive u velikoj četverosobnoj kući. To nije njihova kuća, nego je unajmljuju, ali za samo dva mjeseca će se preseliti u svoju novu kuću. Njihova djeca će biti sretna jer nova kuća ima velik vrt. Nova kuća ima i garažu za njihov auto.

Exercise 2c

1 Ne radi im motor. 2 Sin mi obožava sportske automobile. 3 Kad ti Marija vrati knjigu, mogu li je ja čitati? 4 Sutra ću mu sina odvesti na automobilske trke. 5 Sigurna sam da joj je ovo novi bicikl. 6 Uzela si je čašu sa stola. 7 Ovo joj je momak. 8 Vidio sam ti brata jučer. 9 Vodio sam mu psa u šetnju. 10 Pozvao sam ti sestru u kino.

Exercise 2e

Our car has broken down. We are on the Zagreb–Karlovac motorway, some 15 km from Karlovac. Can you send a mechanic to us? It seems that something's wrong with the engine. My husband has stayed with the car. I'm without a car. Can you come in half an hour? Will you be able to take me in the truck? Thank you, I shall wait here on this bench in the sun.

Exercise 3a

1 Kad budem imala 18 godina, kupit ću si auto. 2 Ići ćemo u kino kad budemo imali malo više vremena. 3 Kad budemo kupili stan, preselit ćemo se. 4 Kad budeš pročitala knjigu, vrati je u knjižnicu. 5 Kad bude popio kavu, otići će na posao.

Exercise 3b

1 Kad budu uredili vrt, napraviti će veliki roštilj. 2 Otići će na godišnji odmor kad bude kupio/la avionske karte. 3 Kad budu kupovali pokućstvo, ići će na veliki sajam pokućstva. 4 Kad Marko bude imao 10 godina, preselit ćemo se u Španjolsku. 5 Idemo na plažu kad budemo našli hotel.

Exercise 4a

– Halo, je li to Marko? Javljam se da kažem da polazimo na more u subotu. – Blago vama! Nadam se da će biti lijepo vrijeme. Ima li koga da vam čuva mačku? Rado ću navratiti s vremena na vrijeme. – Hvala, to je lijepo od tebe. Zlatanov nećak će biti ovdje i on će vjerojatno dovesti neke svoje prijatelje. – Kuda/kamo idete? Jeste li rezervirali negdje sobu? – Nismo. Valjda ćemo naći privatni smještaj bez problema. Ne znamo točno gdje ćemo biti. – A kad se vraćate? – Možemo ostati samo pet dana. Hoćeš li biti u Zagrebu kad se vratimo? – Hoću. Poći ću kasnije u Italiju. – Dobro, vidjet ćemo se uskoro dakle. – Sretan put!

Exercise 4b

Na cestama se danas često događaju prometne nesreće. Razlog je ili auto u kvaru ili vozači. Vozači se moraju brinuti o autu i obavljati redoviti tehnički pregled. Kad se dogode nesreće onda možemo dobiti tehničku pomoć od Hrvatskog autokluba. Vozači mogu dobiti tehničku pomoć 365 dana u godini, 24 sata dnevno, radnim danom, nedjeljom i praznikom. Tehnička pomoć vozačima na cesti obuhvaća popravak kvara na vozilu na cesti, uklanjanje vozila u kvaru, napuštenih vozila ili vozila oštećenih u prometnoj nesreći i prijevoz do najviše 100 km. Za ove usluge u Republici Hrvatskoj je jedinstveni cjenik usluga.

Usluge popravka vozila na cesti.

Unit 17**Exercise 1a**

1 Pismo koje je jutros došlo nalazi se na stolu. 2 Gdje je knjiga koju ste mi dali? 3 Prijatelji s kojima smo putovali su sada u Engleskoj. 4 To je prvo pismo koje mi je napisao! 5 Mislim da smo izgubili adresu koju nam je dala. 6 Je li ovo hotel u kojem radi tvoja sestra? 7 Tko je ta djevojka s kojom si bio sinoć u kinu? 8 Prijatelj kojem sam dala tvoju adresu dolazi sutra. 9 Auto kojim su putovali je jako malen i star. 10 Zar to nije vaš bratić s kojim smo se upoznali prošle godine?

Exercise 1b

1 Ovo je knjiga koju sam ti preporučio. 2 Ovo je čovjek o kojem/kome/kom sam ti pričao. 3 Koji film želiš gledati? 4 Kolegica koja radi sa mnom je Markova žena. 5 To je auto koji najviše volim. 6 Ovo je moj prijatelj kojeg/koga/kog sam pozvao na rođendan. 7 Gledali smo film koji/što je dobio Oskara. 8 Želim upoznati tvog prijatelja koji živi na moru. 9 Ovo je najbolji restoran u kojem/ kome/kom sam bio. 10 Ovo je krevet na kojem/kome/kom ja spavam.

Exercise 1c

1 Ovo je moj prijatelj Petar koji živi i radi u Londonu. 2 Torba, u kojoj ima puno knjiga, je na stolu. 3 Ovo je ulica u kojoj živi Ivan. 4 Marija je studentica s kojom živi Ana. 5 Ovo je film koji sam ti preporučio. 6 Marko je dobar konobar s kojim/kim su svi zadovoljni. 7 Naši studenti, o kojima sam ti pričao, idu na izlet u Dubrovnik. 8 On želi razgovarati s profesorom koji govori hrvatski. 9 Ovo je moj muž kojeg(a) /koga/kog si upoznao prije tjedan dana. 10 To je film koji smo gledali jučer.

Exercise 4a

1 Vlak kasni trideset minuta. 2 Opet je zakasnio na večeru. 3 Silazim dizalom, pričekaj me kod vrata. 4 Oprostite, hoćete li sići na sljedećoj stanici? 5 Napisao sam ovo pismo prošlog tjedna, a još je uvijek na mom stolu! 6 Piše svojem bratu u dnevnoj sobi. 7 Ne sjećam se ovog križanja, jesi li siguran da je ovo pravi put? 8 Konačno se sjetio gdje je parkirao auto! 9 Vaša kći jako lijepo čita. Koliko ima godina? 10 Pusti ga da pročita svoje pismo na miru. 11 Moj prijatelj prolazi svaki dan pokraj te prodavaonice. 12 Prošao je pokraj mene na ulici, ali me nije vidio. 13 Sigurna sam da nešto krije od nas. 14 Moja teta je negdje sakrila svoj nakit, a sad ga ne može naći. 15 Pošta se otvara u osam sati, možeš onda kupiti marke. 16 Ta nova prodavaonica će se otvoriti petog listopada. 17 Nikad ne večeramo prije osam i trideset navečer, pa dođi kad možeš. 18 Hoće li moći pojediti cijeli ovaj obrok? 19 Popij to crno vino, onda ćeš moći probati ovo bijelo. 20 Pijemo domaću rakiju, hoćete li i vi?

Exercise 4b

Marko je sada skoro odrastao čovjek, ali pokušajte sada *preskočiti* deset ili jedanaest godina i vratiti se unazad; pa zatvorite oči i *zamislite* način na koji on tada *provodi* vrijeme dok je bio dječak. U to vrijeme, prije desetak godina dok je živio na selu *samo je čitao*, a otac *ga je poučavao*. Kad *nije učio*, *sjedio je* na suncu i *spavao*. Danas se Marko dobro *sjeća* svog djetinjstva.

Dialogue 4

Who came to see you? – No one, I was alone. – Where is the young man who was with you on Saturday? – I don't know; he went somewhere. – Whose is that nice black bag? – I don't know, someone must have forgotten it. – Is that the house in which you were born? – So I was told, I don't remember! – What's the town you grew up in like? – Small

and boring. Everyone young wanted to run away. – Then it must have got smaller and smaller. – No, at the beginning it didn't seem that it was anybody's town, but it gradually became ours. – Do you see any old friends? – No one. – What are your plans now? – I haven't any plans. – Why are you in such a bad mood? – No reason. Probably because of the weather!

Exercise 6

1 Netko je došao da te vidi. 2 Ne želim ni s kim da se vidim! 3 Je li bilo koga kod kuće? 4 Ne, nije bilo nikoga. 5 O čemu ste razgo-varali? 6 Kome će dati knjigu? 7 Govorio mi je o nekome u hotelu. 8 S kim si bio na moru? 9 Čija je ta lijepa kuća? 10 Čime ću pisati? Nemam olovke.

Unit 18

Exercise 1c

1 Kupi; 2 Idite; 3 Ručajmo i otidimo; 4 Uzimate; 5 Dođi; 6 Budi; 7 Govori; 8 Kupujmo; 9 Pogledajte; 10 Pomozimo.

Dialogue 2b

At the doctor's.

Nurse: How can I help you? *Patient:* I think I need to see a doctor. *Doctor:* Have a seat. How are you feeling? *Patient:* I don't feel well. I've been ill for a few days. I have a headache, high temperature, my throat is sore, I can't swallow. I keep coughing and sneezing. And of course my nose is running. Yesterday I had a temperature of 38.5 degrees. *Doctor:* Why didn't you come earlier? *Patient:* I thought it would go away. I drank tea with honey and lemon and painkillers, but now I have a stomach-ache as well. *Doctor:* Take off your clothes, so I can examine you. Breathe deeply! Your lungs are fine, but your blood pressure is a bit high. *Patient:* Is it serious, doctor? *Doctor:* You have flu. You have to lie down and take medicine regularly. I'll write you a prescription. *Patient:* Thank you. Goodbye. *Doctor:* Goodbye.

Exercise 2a

1 Boli je glava. 2 Boli ga grlo. 3 Boli ih trbuh. 4 Imaju gripu. 5 Stalno kašlju i kišu. 6 Prehladen sam. 7 Slomio sam nogu. 8 Uganuo sam gležanj. 9 Imam visoku temperaturu. 10 Curi joj nos.

Exercise 2b

Da čujem! Idimo! Da probam! Neka pjevaju! Neka sjedne! Neka udu! Da vidimo! Popijmo ovo vino! Neka jede! Neka još malo čitaju!

Exercise 4b

Teško je biti dijete. Tvoji roditelji, nastavnici, bilo tko stariji, svi ti stalno govore što moraš raditi: – Ustani, obuci se, operi zube, namjesti krevet, ne zaboravi se počestljati, nemoj zakasniti na autobus, pojedj sve, budi doma u sedam sati, javi se čim stigneš, dođi ovamo, nemoj biti bezobrazan, ne razgovaraj sa mnom na takav način! – Pitam se hoću li ja na takav način govoriti svojoj djeci?

Exercise 4c

1 (b); 2 (a); 3 (c); 4 (a); 5 (b)

Exercise 4d

1 Obično kupujem hranu u samoposluživanju, ali jučer sam sve kupio/kupila na tržnici. 2 Kad potrošim svoju mjesečnu plaću, onda počnem trošiti svoju uštedevinu. 3 Najviše volim putovati vlakom, ali sutra moram otputovati zrakoplovom. 4 Nemoj dolaziti svaki dan, nego samo dođi kad imaš vremena. 5 Moj muž je izašao prije pet minuta, on obično ne izlazi ovako kasno. 6 Ne možemo sada ući u dizalo jer nema dovoljno mjesta. Na ova se vrata samo ulazi. 7 Kad ti pročitaš knjigu, onda ću je ja početi čitati. 8 Ja pijem kavu svako jutro. Kad popijemo sve, kupit ćemo još. 9 Napisao/ napisala sam razglednicu prijatelju, a poslije podne ću pisati e-mailove. 10 Spavam cijelu noćim zaspim.

Unit 19**Exercise 1a**

1 Ne bih htio/htjela izaći danas. 2 Biste li htjeli putovati s njima? 3 Bismo li mogli pomoći? 4 Pozvao/pozvala bih je, ali ne bi došla. 5 Bilo bi bolje ručati ovdje. 6 Ne bi željela sjediti s njim. 7 Bi li mi ti pisao/pisala? 8 Bi li u to vjerovao? 9 Ne bi prepoznao djecu. 10 Bi li mogli doći sutra?

Exercise 2

1 Ako možeš, pomoz mi da se preselim. 2 Sutra ću ići na trčanje ako je vrijeme lijepo. 3 Ako sutra ne pada kiša, idemo na izlet. 4 Nazvat ću te ako budem imao problema. 5 Ako nemaš vremena, nemoj doći. 6 Ako budeš čitao novine poslije podne, pročitaj članak o Hrvatskoj. 7 Kupi mi čokoladu ako ideš u prodavaonicu. 8 Nemoj jesti orahe ako si alergična na njih. 9 Uzmi moj auto ako moraš ići na posao rano ujutro. 10 Ako voli more, neka ide u Dalmaciju.

Exercise 3a

1 Ako ih želiš vidjeti, dođi odmah. 2 Da znaš što mi je rekla, ne bi se smijao. 3 Ako idemo ovim putem, brže ćemo stići na obalu. 4 Ako si ga želio vidjeti, zašto nisi rekao? 5 Da

sam pročitala pismo, znala bih da dolaziš. 6 Film bi vam se svidio, da ste ga gledali. 7 Bi li oni putovali s nama da smo išli vlakom? 8 Da je stigla na vrijeme, upoznala bi našeg sina. 9 Recite mi ako avion kasni, molim vas. 10 Ako si gladna, možeš večerati s nama.

Exercise 3b

1 Da imam auto, otišao/otišla bih na izlet. 2 Kad bih bio star kao on, puno bih putovao. 3 Da sam došao na vrijeme, sreo bih ga. 4 Da imam vremena, otišao/otišla bih s tobom na kavu. 5 Nazvao bih ga odmah da je kod kuće. 6 Da sam ja na tvom mjestu, ne bih radio/radila i vikendom. 7 Da imam puno novaca, kupio/kupila bih kuću na moru. 8 Kad bih našao posao koji volim, bio bih jako sretan. 9 Da govorim talijanski, dobio/dobila bih posao. 10 Da ne puše bura, vozili bi trajekti.

Exercise 4a

1 Čujem da se ovdje pravi jako dobar sir. 2 Može li se slušati Radio-Zagreb u Londonu? 3 Njegove knjige se čitaju diljem svijeta. 4 Katedrala se jasno vidi na brdu. 5 Prtljaga se ne prima u garderobi poslije 22 sata.

Exercise 4b

1 Pije mi se bijelo vino. 2 Marku se vozi bicikl./Vozi mu se bicikl. 3 Jede mi se sladoled. 4 Ide mi se u kino. 5 Ide mi se sljedeći vikend na planinarenje. 6 Sanji se izlazi petkom i subotom. Izlazi joj se petkom i subotom. 7 Ide vam se u Španjolsku na more. 8 Čita ti se knjiga cijeli dan. 9 Ne radi mi se vikendom. 10 Govori im se hrvatski.

Exercise 5

A: Kakvo je danas vrijeme? Lijepo izgleda. B: Zašto pitaš? A: Mislio sam da možemo nekamo izaći ako ne pada kiša. B: Hladno je, više bih voljela ostati kod kuće. A: Ne možeš ostati cijeli dan unutra! B: Zašto? A: Hajde, sunce sja. Mogli bismo na Sljeme. B: Vjetar uvijek puše na brjegovima. A: Glupost! B: Idi ti onda. A: Bilo bi ljepše da smo skupa. B: Slažem se. Kako bi bilo da se skupa prošetamo do Gradske kavane?

Exercise 6a

Posljednji putnici su sišli u predgrađu i Tina je ostala sama u kupeu. Ustala je i prišla prozoru. Njezine plave oči su promatrale neonske reklame koje su je podsjećale na njezin rodni grad. Stajala je uz taj prozor nekoliko sati ranije i pozdravljala Zagreb. Glavni kolodvor je bio jedini znanac koji ju je ispratio. S uzdahom je obukla bundu, uzela torbu i izišla na hodnik. Putnici su mahali i pozdravljali rođake i znance. Tinu je obuzeo čudan osjećaj osamljenosti. Vlak se zaustavio i ona je među prvima skočila na peron.

Unit 20

Exercise 1

1 Gledajući televiziju, čuo je kako netko zvoni na vrata. 2 Svirajući gitaru, nisam čuo da zvoni telefon. 3 Razgovarajući sa Sanjom u kafiću, vidio sam Petra kako prolazi pokraj nas. 4 Gledajući tele-viziju, ne volim odgovarati na pitanja. 5 Kuhajući u kuhinji, niste čuli da vas zovem.

Exercise 2a

1 Završivši razgovor s njim, otišao sam kući. 2 Dobivši pismo, odmah sam napisao odgovor. 3 Pročitavši knjigu, vratio sam je u knjižnicu. 4 Primivši plaću, otišao sam u dućan i sve sam potrošio. 5 Potrošivši sve, nije mi ostalo ništa.

Exercise 2b

Pripremajući večeru za svoje prijatelje, zaboravio je na vrijeme. Već je bilo 8 sati, a prijatelji su dolazili oko 8.30. Čuvši zvono na vratima, Marko se jako iznenadio. Otvarajući vrata i pozdravljajući se sa svima, zaboravio je na ribu koja se pekla u pećnici. Vrativši se u kuhinju, shvatio je da je riba izgorjela.

Exercise 2c

1 Mislim da sam vidio kako dolaze. 2 Jesi li čuo kako pjeva? 3 Našli smo ih kako se igraju u parku. 4 Nije primijetio kako izlazim. 5 Stajala je kod prozora i gledala kako ljudi prolaze.

Exercise 3

1 Većina njegovih knjiga je već prevedena na engleski. 2 Kruh je već ispečen. 3 Ovo sjedalo je zauzeto. 4 On je oženjen. 5 Pogledajte odgovor u napisanom dokumentu. 6 Njegova žena nije bila pozvana. 7 On je došao nepozvan. 8 Na stolu su narezan kruh, skuhana riba, oprana salata i voće i prženi krumpiri. 9 Već dugo nisam gledao tako dobro režiran film. 10 Ovo je već dobro isprobana tehnika.

Exercise 4a

1 Znaš li da me je Ivan jučer pozvao u kino? 2 Htio sam ga upoz-nati s njom. 3 Jako je zaposlen i ne može se s nama naći večeras u restoranu. 4 Drago mi je što ste nas opet posjetili. 5 Prošle godine smo išli i na more i na skijanje. 6 Ovo je moja prijateljica s kojom sam išla u istu školu. 7 Dala sam joj sve svoje knjige. 8 Jasno mi je da ti se on jako sviđa. 9 Ivan vas želi vidjeti prije nego što otputuje. 10 Koliko dugo ste živjeli zajedno?

Exercise 5

1 *Gospodar prstenova*. Otkada je prvi put objavljena 1954–55. Tolkeinova originalna i snažna fantazija, ‘Gospodar prstenova’ je stekla slavu, obožavatelje i izvrsne kritike. Ni jedan drugi pisac Tolkeinovog stoljeća nije stvorio tako poseban imaginaran svijet kao što je Međuzemlja, potpun sa svojom vlastitom geografijom, povijesti, jezicima i legendama. I, svakako, nitko nije stvorio tako drage likove kao Tolkeinovi velikodušni hobiti dlakavih nogu. Danas je Tolkeinova epska fantazija još uvijek popularna i godišnje se u svijetu proda na desetine tisuća. Tolkeinova klasična djela imaju mnogo obožavatelja, čak i četrdeset godina poslije objavljivanja. Prevedena su na 38 jezika.

Prvi je dio nove filmske verzije ‘Prstenova družina’ emitiran u prosincu 2001., a druge filmske verzije romana ‘Gospodara prstenova’ su emitirane 2002. i 2003. Ti su filmovi još više povećali popularnost romana.

2 Zagrebačke soliste osnovao je prije gotovo trideset godina Antonio Janigro. Javnosti su već godinama poznati kvalitetom interpretacija. Dosta se zna i o njihovim uspjesima, ali ne i kako oni zapravo žive, rade, s kakvim se problemima susreću.

Translations of main texts

Here are translations for the main dialogues of Units 1 to 5 and also of 'A story of our time' and 'Love story'. When you feel confident, use them to translate back into Croatian and then check your version with the original.

Translations for Units 1 to 5

Unit 1

The travellers meet

MR CAMERON: Good morning. (lit. 'Good day')

MR ANTIĆ: Good morning.

CAMERON: Excuse me, do you speak English?

ANTIĆ: No, unfortunately. Do you understand Croatian?

CAMERON: Only a little. I'm learning. You're Croatian (lit. 'a Croat') aren't you?

ANTIĆ: Yes. And are you English? (lit. 'English people')

CAMERON: No. I'm a Scot, my name is Alan Cameron. And my wife is Irish (lit. 'an Irish woman'). Her name is Nora.

ANTIĆ: I am Marko Antić. Pleased to meet you.

CAMERON: And I you.

Unit 2

Conversation in the plane

MR ANTIĆ: Do you like travelling?

MR CAMERON: Yes, I like it very much. I travel often. What about you? Do you like travelling?

ANTIĆ: Yes, I do, especially by train when I have time. Unfortunately I often have to travel by plane on business.

CAMERON: I like driving by car, but Zagreb is too far. I too like travelling by train.

ANTIĆ: Yes, I like to look out of the window while I'm travelling, also to sleep a little, and sometimes I go out into the corridor to smoke a cigarette. It's pleasant.

CAMERON: I agree! But one rarely has time for that ...

Unit 3

Arrival at the airport

ALAN: Here we are in Zagreb!

ANTIĆ: Is this the first time you are in Zagreb?

NORA: Yes. We are very pleased.

ANTIĆ: The airport is small. The formalities are quickly completed. You must show your passports. Have you anything to declare?

NORA: No. The luggage is taken from the conveyor belt and then one passes through customs, is that right?

ANTIĆ: That's it.

NORA: Is anyone waiting for you here?

ANTIĆ: Yes, my son. In fact I see him there by the door!

NORA: Look out, Alan, our things are coming! I'm going to find a trolley.

Unit 4

Where are you from?

ALAN: Are you from Zagreb, Mr Antić?

ANTIĆ: No, but from Karlovac, that's a small town not far from Zagreb. But I'm staying for a little at my son's. Where are you going now? Have you a reserved room?

ALAN: Yes. We're going to the Hotel Palace. I think it's near the main railway station.

ANTIĆ: Yes it is. Are you staying in Zagreb?

NORA: For a few days. We have friends here. Then we're going to the sea.

ANTIĆ: I wish you a pleasant stay. I'm very pleased that we met you.

NORA: So are we. If you come to England, here is our address.

ANTIĆ: Thank you, you never know! All the best, goodbye!

ALAN AND NORA: Goodbye!

Unit 5

In the hotel

At reception

RECEPTIONIST: Good morning, may I help you?

ALAN: Good morning. We are Mr and Mrs Cameron.

RECEPTIONIST: Do you have reservations?

ALAN: Yes, for a double room.

RECEPTIONIST: Just a moment. Here we are. You are in room 25 on the second floor.
Your passports please. Here is the key. The boy will take your things. Go by the lift.
The room is on the left-hand side of the corridor when you come out of the lift.
NORA: Thank you. Give the key to my husband: I'm going by the stairs as I don't like lifts.
ALAN: You can give the bag to the boy.

In the room. Alan opens the door; then Nora arrives as well.

NORA: Let me see. Oh, what a lovely big room! It has a lovely view on to the park as well!
BOY: Your things are here in the wardrobe. And in the bathroom there is a shower, washbasin and WC. Do you need anything else?
ALAN: No, thank you. Everything's all right.

Translations of 'A story of our time'

Unit 1

Mark Dunlop is English. He is travelling to Zagreb. He is learning Croatian. He understands quite a lot of the language, but he says that he doesn't yet speak well. Now he is tired. Let him sleep!

Unit 2

Mark is travelling by plane to Zagreb. He usually likes travelling, but today he is tired. He tries to read (his) textbook: he must learn Croatian! The stewardess comes past with drinks. Mark drinks a whisky. His eyes close. The textbook closes.

Unit 3

The stewardess comes up to Mark. 'Excuse me, sir, here we are in Zagreb!' Mark wakes up. 'Really? Great! Thanks!' He takes his bag and umbrella out of the luggage rack and goes towards the exit from the aircraft. 'Welcome to Zagreb! Goodbye!' 'Thank you! Goodbye!'

Unit 4

Mark goes slowly out of the aircraft. It is a beautiful day in Zagreb. He feels stupid because he's carrying an umbrella. 'Like a real Englishman,' he thinks. He quickly finds his luggage. He forgets to look for a trolley. He carries his bag through customs control. Luckily it is not heavy. He has nothing to declare. He goes out through the door.

Unit 5

At the airport, Mark meets the colleague with whom he is to work throughout his stay in Zagreb. 'Good afternoon! You are Mark Dunlop?' 'Yes! Good afternoon! And you are?' 'I am Jasna Culek.' 'Pleased to meet you!' 'Welcome to Zagreb!' 'Thank you! I'm really pleased!' 'You must be tired. Please get into the car. We're going to your hotel.' 'I'm not tired, but I want to see the hotel. Thank you.' 'You're welcome!'

Unit 6

Mark goes into his room. It is small, but comfortable. He likes the room: the walls are painted a pleasant light blue colour, there are nice pictures of Zagreb on the walls. Mark does not want to unpack straight away. He takes a beer from the mini-bar, switches on the television and stretches out on the bed. The telephone rings. Jasna is calling. She's inviting him to dinner. Mark puts the glass on the little table beside the bed. He gets up with a sigh. He opens his bag and takes out his things. He looks sadly at his clothes: everything is crumpled...

Unit 7

Jasna takes Mark to the old part of the town to a flat on the ground floor of a large, old house. One enters the flat through a lovely garden, full of flowers. Jasna introduces Mark to her parents and offers him a seat beside the window. Jasna's father asks Mark what he would like to drink and brings home-made brandy. Mark remembers the beer in the hotel and the whisky on the plane and drinks slowly. He knows that he should drink the whole glass immediately, but he feels that he must be careful, he dare not get drunk, so he asks for a glass of water as well.

Unit 8

The next day, Mark wakes early. He has to get ready for a visit to Jasna's office. He must iron a clean white shirt and choose an appropriate tie. He goes down to the restaurant and orders a white coffee. Soon Jasna comes for him. She is driving a little, old car, very convenient for the town. The streets are full of traffic: it is Monday and everyone is rushing to work. The office is in the new part of town, on the other side of the Sava river, over a big bridge.

Unit 9

Mark carefully follows the way to Jasna's office, because he has to know how to find the way himself. Jasna explains that when he comes out of the hotel he must turn right and cross the main road at the traffic lights. Opposite the garage on the same side of the street there is a bus stop. Here he can catch a bus which runs across the Sava almost to the building where her office is. The building is easily recognized, because there is a nicely arranged little garden in front of it full of young trees where it is pleasant to sit because

the air near the Sava is always fresher than in the centre of town. Then he has to report to the porter and take the lift to the fourth floor. The office is at the end of the corridor on the left-hand side when one comes out of the lift.

Unit 10

Mark has begun to keep a diary: the working part of his stay in Croatia is beginning. He has decided to keep the diary in Croatian in order to practise the language at the same time: 'Today I was in the main office for the first time. I was excited because I didn't know what was awaiting me, for instance: did everyone know English or would I have to say everything in Croatian straight away? Luckily it all went well: I spoke sufficiently well and I understood everything they said. When it was a matter of something complicated, Jasna translated. It was pleasant. They were all kind.'

Unit 11

Today the director of the firm called a meeting in the main office. He showed me the business projects for the whole year: what is done in spring, summer, autumn and winter. In spring on the whole contracts are signed with the producers of raw material – in this case fruit. Agricultural businesses and farms are visited. In summer and autumn there is most work over processing the raw materials and at various trade fairs. In winter people work on maintenance of the plant and the acquisition of new outlets.

Unit 12

Today the director explained that the firm has branches in other towns of Croatia as well. The main office is in Zagreb, of course, then there are two big factories (I've already been with Jasna to one near Karlovac) and I hope I'll have a chance to see some other branches of the firm. After that there are five regional offices, which are mostly concerned with buying raw materials on the local market. Each factory has its manager, and each regional office its head who are directly responsible to the managing director in Zagreb. I need to make a plan with Jasna about what she would be able to show me while I'm here.

Unit 13

After getting back from the office today, I sat down with Jasna in the hotel bar to discuss the rest of my stay. I have another two weeks at my disposal. I want to get to know the work of every branch, so we have decided that the day after tomorrow, that is the fifth of October, we shall set off by car to visit the whole network. We shall start in the north and go round all the eastern areas. Then, around the tenth, we shall set off towards the west, and come back by the southern road. We shall arrive in Karlovac on the seventeenth.

Unit 14

I've begun to get ready for the journey, but I've established that I didn't bring enough shirts from home. It'll be hard to iron anything while we are on the road, so I think that it will be sensible to buy a couple more shirts which can be washed and immediately dried. As the larger shops work till 8 p.m., I shall go tomorrow after the official lunch with representatives of the Chamber of Commerce. For that meeting I shall have to put on a jacket and tie – which is unpleasant, as I have quite lost the habit in the informal atmosphere of 'our' office.

Unit 15

This morning I got up early. I cancelled the room and paid the bill. At the agreed time, Jasna appeared in an unknown car. I asked her whether we would be travelling in this car, and she explained that she had borrowed the car from the firm because it was bigger; there was more room for our things and it would be more comfortable for the journey. Besides, if necessary we would be able to take colleagues to business lunches or dinners, which we could not have done in that other car. But Jasna said that she would miss it nevertheless, because she was very fond of her old, reliable 'friend'.

Unit 16

Last night I came back from the journey. It was all very interesting but I must say that I got very tired. I didn't have any time to write my diary at all. We were on our feet the whole day. During the day we looked in detail at factories and talked with people in the local offices. Now I have a clear insight into the whole network of this extensive firm. And after the official visit, there were obligatory formal lunches and dinners, where they treated us abundantly to vast quantities of delicious food and drink.

Unit 17

Today I had a meeting in the first factory we visited. Their main products are fruit juice and jams. I believe that these products could succeed in our market. And at the same time, I would like to try to place some British products, biscuits for example, whose basic component would also be fruit. Now I must see with the management board what the conditions are for the import of products from abroad, what taxes there are and generally what are all the procedures involved.

Unit 18

Jasna came early for me to take me to the main office. I put on my formal suit for that important meeting. We arrived in time. They met us warmly and took us into the main conference hall. They had even invited a representative of the Chamber of Commerce who came at the end to explain to me the principles of the import and export system in

Croatia. Before that I talked about all the details of the business and representatives of the various departments of the firm prepared contracts and various other necessary papers.

Unit 19

At the very end of the meeting, when everything had been agreed, the accountant came who is responsible for everything concerned with paying taxes. It was fairly complicated for me but they were all good-humoured and patient and explained everything to me slowly. The main thing is that Value Added Tax is paid on imported goods but not on processed goods for export. At the end the directors of the firm came so that we could formally sign the contracts. Then I gave a short speech (in Croatian!) in which I said how pleased I was with my business here and that I expected we would work successfully together. Now I can hardly wait to get home and start on our shared business!

Unit 20

Croatia's geographical position makes it an interesting business partner. After the failure of the communist administration and the introduction of political pluralism, Croatia is currently designing a legal system that will help direct her towards a market economy. In line with these changes, the Croatian Chamber of Commerce has organized itself as a modern business and professional institution tailored to the needs of businesses on the territory of Croatia, as well as abroad. The blueprint for the present Croatian Chamber of Commerce is based on West European Chambers with a few special features rooted in our own traditions. The Chamber includes over twenty county Chambers and a central Chamber based in Zagreb, the capital of Croatia. The Chamber's main objectives are the promotion of Croatian business interests at home and abroad, the exchange of business information between potential partners through an effective information database, and business education. In recent times, the Croatian economy has undergone extensive changes. Thousands of new private enterprises have sprung up. There are approximately 60,000 active economic entities in Croatia today. Its abundant natural and human resources and a long-standing business tradition make Croatia an ideal business partner for the future.

Translations of 'Love story'

Unit 1

Ivo and Mara love each other. They are sitting in the City Café and looking into each other's eyes. 'You're so beautiful! I love you very much!' says Ivo. 'You are beautiful too. I'm really happy!' says Mara. 'Come over here so that I can kiss you!' 'But not here, Ivo! Everyone's looking at us. You know Dubrovnik's a small town!'

Unit 2

Ivo and Mara are walking beside the sea. 'What do you want to do?' asks Ivo. 'I don't know,' replies Mara. 'What do you suggest?' 'I don't know either. Do you want to go to the cinema?' 'Maybe. What's on?' 'There's some new Italian film on. They say it's excel-lent.' 'OK. I really feel like going to the cinema!'

Unit 3

'Have you got any money?' asks Mara. 'Wait while I look. But, where's my wallet? It's not here, imagine. It must be at home.' 'Ivo,' says Mara in a serious tone, 'what is this? You never have any money. I always pay for everything. I've had enough.' 'Don't be like that! I'm going to get my wallet. We can meet at the cinema.' 'I won't go on like this. I'm going home to listen to music. You can come if you like.' 'Thanks. I don't feel like music. I'm going to the cinema.' 'Bye then.' 'Goodbye.'

Unit 4

'Hello, Mara here. Who is it?' 'Ivo speaking.' 'Hello, Ivo.' 'Listen, Mara, I have to see you. What are you doing?' 'Nothing. I've got (some) friends (here). We're talking.' Pause. 'You can't come out, then?' 'No.' 'Who's there?' 'Why do you ask?' 'No reason.' Pause. 'So, you're not coming out?' 'No.' 'OK then, if that's how it is. Bye.' 'Bye.' A few days later. The phone rings at Ivo's. 'Hello.' 'Is that you, Ivo?' 'Yes.' 'Mara here.' 'Hi.' 'How are you?' 'OK. You?' 'All right. What are you up to?' 'Nothing special. I'm sitting around, reading something.' 'Oh?' Pause. 'Why are you calling, Mara? What do you want?' 'Listen, Ivo, don't be so angry!' 'I'm not angry.' 'You don't phone.' 'Do you want me to?' 'Well, we're friends, aren't we?' 'Of course we're friends.' 'You're cross again?' 'No I'm not. But someone's calling me. I've got to go.' 'Goodbye, then.' 'Bye, Mara.'

Unit 5

Ivo and Mara meet on Stradun. 'Oh, hi, Mara! How are you? What are you up to?' 'I'm OK. I'm going to Nada's.' 'You look good. New dress?' 'Why no! I've been wearing it for years!' 'It suits you. May I see you to Nada's?' 'If you like. What have you been doing recently?' 'Nothing. Sitting around at home.' 'Why don't you go out?' 'You know I'm not interested in going out without you.' 'Oh, Ivo ...' Ivo cautiously takes hold of Mara's hand. She does not say anything. They walk like that for some time without a word. 'Hey, Mara, where are we going? This isn't the way to Nada's!' 'Oh, you're right!' 'Is she waiting for you?' 'No.' 'OK then. Can we walk a bit?' 'Yes.' Pause. Ivo stops and looks Mara in the eyes. 'How simple everything is all of a sudden. I'm glad that we're here, together.' 'Me too.'

Unit 6

‘What are you doing tonight, Mara?’ Ivo asks suddenly. ‘Nothing special. Nada wants us to meet up with some of her friends in town. Why do you ask?’ ‘My cousin’s coming. He’s older than me, he lives in Hercegovina, in a village not far from Mostar. He doesn’t know Dubrovnik, so I want to show him the town.’ ‘Well then, join us, we’ve got a nice crowd and we always enjoy new acquaintances.’ ‘Agreed. I have to meet him at the bus station this afternoon and take him home. Come in front of the City Café at 6 p.m.’ ‘OK. Now I really must go to Nada’s. See you!’ ‘Bye!’ The young people kiss, as though everything is as before.

Unit 7

In the evening, the young people meet at the City Café. They are sitting on the terrace by the harbour and looking at the boats. Ivo’s cousin Mate is a tall young man with black hair and blue eyes, handsome, cheerful and witty. He makes an exceptional impression on all the girls. They all order coffee and cakes. ‘Come on, tell (us) how your life is in Hercegovina,’ suggests Ivo. ‘I can’t imagine that it can really interest you: life is fairly boring there. There are an awful lot of fields and nothing happens.’ ‘What are your plans now?’ asks Mara. ‘Well, I’ve got a degree in engineering, you know. Now I have to go abroad somewhere to specialize.’ All the girls look at him, a bit sad and disappointed, when they hear that.

Unit 8

The young people are walking slowly along Stradun. The summer evening is exceptionally beautiful, still and warm. The moon is almost full. ‘How lovely it is here in the moonlight,’ says Maja, one of the girls in the group. She is walking right beside Mate, and thinking how strong his shoulders are. ‘Yes, lovely, especially for sleepwalkers!’ Mate goes on without looking at her. ‘Where is your home, Mate?’ asks Mara. ‘In a small village, near Medjugorje.’ ‘Oh, how lovely it is there, among the hills!’ sighs Maja. ‘How do you like Mostar?’ ‘Very much. It’s a small town, but it’s not a bad place to study!’ ‘Yes, everyone says Mostar is an exceptionally interesting and lovely town,’ says Mara. ‘But, even so, how do you like the most beautiful town in Croatia?’ asks Ivo. ‘Up to now, I like everything very much, but I must say that I’m looking at it over these beautiful women’s heads, and that makes the landscape even more beautiful.’ Each of the girls smiles secretly to herself, for each thinks that these words refer to her.

Unit 9

‘I say, Mara,’ says Ivo a few days later, ‘Mate has fitted into our group really well from the first day, don’t you think?’ ‘Fantasticly, really. He’s an exceptional young man in every way.’ Ivo looks at her seriously, ‘Well, there’s no need to exaggerate. But he’s fun to be with.’ ‘How much longer is he staying in Dubrovnik?’ ‘I don’t know exactly. I think he’s staying about a fortnight and he’s been here nearly a whole week already.’

‘What are you doing tonight?’ ‘You know I always play basketball on Tuesdays. We have a match tonight. Mate probably wants to come with me.’ ‘If he hasn’t any plans of his own ... I get the impression that he likes Vesna.’ ‘Do you think so, seriously? I don’t know. Well, she’s a good-looking girl.’ Ivo obviously feels better. ‘Come on, it’s time I went. They’re waiting for me for lunch. Have a good time this evening. See you tomorrow.’ ‘Bye, Mara.’

Unit 10

Mara is at Vesna’s in the afternoon. ‘Vesna, please, if you’re my friend, invite Mate for cakes this evening.’ ‘How can I suggest such a thing?’ ‘Easily. You surely see that *I* can’t. Because of Ivo, I mean.’ Vesna looks at her carefully, ‘You like Mate a lot, don’t you?’ ‘I don’t know, Vesna, I’m confused and worried. I don’t know what’s happening to me. One minute I think I truly love Ivo, but as soon as I look at Mate, my head starts spinning.’ ‘You’re not the only one, it seems!’ ‘Perhaps. It doesn’t matter. Can you call him? Please. I don’t have his mobile number, so you’ll have to look for him at Ivo’s.’ ‘All right, Mara, calm down. I’m going to call him. Only it’s not my fault if you complicate your life!’ ‘Of course not. Thanks, Vesna, you’re a real friend!’

Unit 11

‘Hello, is Mate there, please?’ ‘No. Who wants him?’ ‘This is Vesna.’ ‘Vesna! Ivo here.’ ‘Oh, hello, Ivo.’ ‘So you’re looking for Mate?’ ‘Yes ...’ Vesna was embarrassed. ‘Will he be back soon?’ ‘I’m expecting him any minute. He’s forgotten his mobile phone at my place. Do you have a message?’ ‘... No ..., or rather yes. Do you know what Mate’s doing this evening?’ ‘I don’t know, he may be coming with me to the match. If you tell me what it’s about I’ll tell him, let him give you a call.’ ‘All right, thanks ... I just wanted to invite him to my place, I know you’re going out, so, so that he’s not bored ... But if he’s going to the match as well ... never mind. Tell him there’ll be a few friends round at my place, so, if he feels like it, we want to see him ...’ ‘OK. Thanks, Vesna. Bye.’ ‘Thank you, Ivo.’ Vesna puts the receiver down and wipes her forehead. She feels very uncomfortable.

Unit 12

‘Heavens, Mara, that’s the last time I do you a favour!’ ‘You don’t mean it. Was it really so very awkward?’ ‘Not very, terribly! What will Mate think of me now?’ ‘I’ll explain that it’s my fault. Not immediately, of course. But one day. Did Ivo ask whether I would be at your place?’ ‘No, I don’t think it occurred to him.’ ‘It’s better that it didn’t.’ ‘Hey, Mara, you’re presumably not going to hide it from him?’ ‘Of course not. You don’t seem to have much faith in me.’ ‘That’s not true. Only I don’t know what you intend to do.’ ‘I don’t know either, to tell you the truth. But I can tell you that I want Mate to come tonight with all my heart.’

Unit 13

The girls were sitting, listening to music. It was already getting late and Mate was not there. 'I know he won't come,' says Mara in a dejected tone. 'Perhaps it's better that way.' 'Goodness, Vesna,' says their friend Ankica, 'you never undertake anything, you don't risk anything. What kind of life is that, without any danger, or at least uncertainty?' 'All right, I admit it can be boring, but when other people's feelings are involved, I certainly won't take any risks.' The bell. Ankica glances at Mara. 'You're quite pale, Mara! Something serious is happening to you!' Vesna goes to open the door. Soon Mate's voice is heard. 'Thanks very much for thinking of me.' 'Well it's quite natural when you're otherwise on your own and we're sitting here. Please go into the room. I'll bring the cake I baked with Mara.'

Unit 14

As soon as Mate came in there was an awkward silence among the girls. 'OK, young ladies, offer me a seat!' 'Sorry, Mate, we really are rude! Please come over here and sit next to Ankica on the sofa. It'll be more comfortable than on that chair.' Mara got up from the sofa to offer him her place. 'Don't get up, there's room for (us) all.' Mate sat down, really close to Mara, who was still unusually pale. 'Come on,' said Ankica gaily, 'tell us what you've been doing today. Do you still like Dubrovnik?' 'Of course,' Mate began, with the intention of turning his words into a joke as usual. Then he changed his mind and fell silent. The whole evening passed pleasantly, but in a somewhat quiet and subdued manner. They listened to music, drank beer and in the end they even sang. But they sang mainly mournful Bosnian love songs.

Unit 15

At eleven o'clock, Mara looked at her watch. 'Heavens, folks, I must go at once. I have to catch the last bus.' 'You're right, it's time,' said Ankica. 'I must go too.' 'Which way are you going?' asked Mate, 'I could see you home.' 'You're very kind. Well, I live three houses from here! So that wouldn't take much of your time. But Mara has more than half an hour's journey to her house.' 'Oh, thanks. I'm used to it. The bus stops more or less outside my house. I don't need anything,' said Mara decisively. 'Maybe, but I've been brought up like that. What can I do? I wouldn't sleep properly if I knew you were walking alone in the dark.' 'Thanks, then. I'll just get my mac then we can go if you're so insistent.' 'Not another word. Thanks again, Vesna, it was very nice.' 'Thanks for coming. Goodbye. Bye, Mara.' 'Bye, Vesna, till tomorrow. And ... thanks.'

Unit 16

Mara sat in the bus without a word. 'Why are you so quiet?' asked Mate cheerfully, 'it's not your style, as far as I've been able to observe.' 'No, it's not, you're right.' 'What is it then, you seem sad.' 'I'm not, really, I don't know what's got into me lately ... Forget it. How long are you thinking of staying in Dubrovnik?' 'I'm not quite sure. A few more

days.' 'Have you ... any obligations?' began Mara. 'Is ... anyone waiting for you?' 'A girl, you mean?' 'Well, ... anyone.' 'In a way, yes. I've been going out with a girl for some time, but ...' 'But?' 'I don't know how long it will last. What about you, how long have you and Ivo been together?' 'Nearly a year. But ...' 'But?' 'We'd better not talk about it. I daren't. Especially not to you.' 'Why? Aren't we friends?' 'Yes, Mate. Come on, this is my stop.'

Unit 17

When they got off the bus, Mate took Mara by the hand and stopped under a street light. He leaned against the post. 'Listen, Mara,' he said, 'why are you so mysterious? I want to know what's going on. Why did you say "especially not to me"? There's something I don't understand going on.' 'It's better not to ask, honestly, Mate, it's better not to put it into words ... I've been feeling strange ever since you came. I want to be with you all the time. Now, alone with you tonight, I think I'm in heaven. I want this moment to last for ever. But as soon as I say it, I know it will all be over immediately.' 'Are you crazy? What about Ivo? While I'm a guest in his house? How could you think of such a thing!' 'Don't, Mate, please! I tell you, I know it's all over as soon as it's put into words. Oh, how happy I was this evening, and how short a time it lasted!' 'Don't be pathetic. Nothing happened. I have to go home in any case.' 'What's your girlfriend called?' 'Why do you ask? It's not because of her.' 'Why then?' 'Come on, where's your house? It's late.' 'So, it's over.' 'Nothing's over, there wasn't anything anyway. Come on, go inside and sleep peacefully. This conversation will seem comic in the morning.' 'Goodnight. Let's shake hands and don't be angry with me ...'

Unit 18

The next day, Mara got up late. Mate was constantly in her mind. She kept hanging round the telephone. She switched on the computer and checked her emails. No message. Finally she went out for a long walk with the dog. Her parents watched her suspiciously. 'What's the matter, darling? Are you ill?' 'No. There's nothing wrong with me. I want to go for a walk. Leave me alone.' When she came back in the afternoon, she sat down straight away to phone Vesna. 'Ah, Mara, where have you been? Ivo has rung several times, looking for you. There was no one at your place and he didn't know where to find you. Your mobile was switched off.' 'I went out. Did Ivo say anything?' 'About what?' 'Mate. He may be leaving soon.' 'How did it go with him? It turned out well that he was able to see you home, didn't it?' 'I don't know, perhaps it wasn't so good.' 'Why not?' 'I said too much. That's why he's going so soon.' 'Maybe he won't. Go on, give Ivo a ring and see.' 'I will, I'll call round later, OK?' 'Of course, bye.'

Unit 19

'Hello, is Ivo at home please?' 'Yes, just a moment. Who is it?' 'Mara.' 'Ah, Mara, he's been looking for you all day. How are you, dear?' 'Fine, thanks, Auntie Dragica. I'm sorry Ivo's been trying to find me for so long.' 'I'll go and call him now. He'll be pleased.' 'Hello, Mara.' 'Hello, Ivo. How was it at the match?' 'Fine. And how was your

secret meeting?’ ‘What secret meeting? At Vesna’s you mean?’ ‘What else?’ ‘Why, Ivo, there wasn’t anything secret about it, why shouldn’t Vesna invite whoever she likes to her place?’ ‘There’s no need for any explanation. You know perfectly well what it’s about. Mate is leaving this evening. Because of you. I hope you’re proud of yourself!’ ‘Why should I be proud? Oh, Ivo, let’s meet so that I can explain!’ ‘There’s no point. I wouldn’t have anything to say to you. That’s why I was looking for you, just to say that you shouldn’t expect me any more. Goodbye.’ ‘Ivo ... Ivo ... ?!’

Unit 20

A week after her conversation with Ivo, a letter arrived for Mara. She did not recognize the handwriting. She hurried to open the envelope and saw what she had been secretly waiting for: it was a letter from Mate.

My dear, crazy little Mara,

I have the impression that after all I owe you a letter and some kind of explanation. I’m afraid you’ve ended up on your own because Ivo was terribly angry. I didn’t tell him anything, except that I had felt uncomfortable that evening at Vesna’s because I felt someone was playing games with me. Then I mentioned the fact that I had taken you home. He must have guessed something and he asked me some direct questions which I had to answer straight, as a friend. I had grown very close to Ivo in the short time I spent in Dubrovnik. He’s my cousin and I care about him.

There’s another reason why I had to leave Dubrovnik straight away. Perhaps you’ve already guessed. I realized that I wasn’t indifferent to you either. I found your company unusually attractive, and I had begun to be a bit afraid. An impossible situation! But still, you deserve to know. One day we’ll all be able to meet and be friends again, I’m sure. We’ll be able to have a good laugh at the foolishness of our youth. For the moment it’s better to put an end to something which hasn’t even begun, but which could have caused all of us harm and pain. Be happy and patient. Don’t be angry with Ivo or me. It will all pass.

I love you, you know.

Mate.

Mara pressed the letter to her breast and burst into inconsolable tears. Somewhere deep within her she admired Mate’s sensible decisiveness but at the same time it seemed illogical that, beside both these dear boys, she had to be left on her own.

Croatian–English glossary

The glossary does not contain every word introduced in the units, but the most common ones are here. The numbers in brackets refer to the unit in which the word first appears. Each time you look an item up in the glossary, make a small dot beside it. When there are three dots beside an item, you will know that this is a word you really need to learn!

A

a but, and (1)
ako if (3)
ali but (2)
ambulanta clinic (18)
autocesta motorway (15)
auto(mobil) car (2)

B

baka grandmother (11)
balkon balcony (6)
barem at least (15)
baš (emph. part.) really (1)
baviti se (imp.) to occupy oneself with (12)
besplatan, -tna free, gratis (19)
bez (+ gen.) without (5)
bijel(i) white (8)
bilježnica notebook (20)
blagajna till (17)
blijed pale (13)
blizu (+ gen.) near, nearby (4)
u blizini nearby
bluza blouse (14)
boca bottle (8)
bog! hi!; bye! (4)
bogznakakav (with neg. verb) no great shakes (20)
boja colour (6)
bojati se (imp. **bojim se**) to be afraid (19)
boljeti (impers.; only used in 3rd pers. **bolime** ...) to hurt (18)
bolnica hospital (15)
bolničarka nurse (18) (also **medicinska sestra**)
bombon sweet (candy) (17)
boravak stay, sojourn (4)
brak marriage (11)
brat (pl. **braća** coll. f. sing.) brother (11)
bratić cousin (male) (11)

breskva peach (17)
briga concern (14)
brijati se (imp. **brijem se**) to shave (13)
brijeg hill (15)
brjegovit hilly (18)
brinuti se (imp. **brinem se**) to worry (10)
brod boat (7)
brzo quickly (4)
buditi (se) (imp.) (pf. **probuditi**) to wake (up) (3)
bura north wind (19)

C

carinska kontrola customs control (3)
cesta road (8)
cestarina road toll (15)
cijeli whole (7)
cijena price (19)
crn crno vino black (3) red wine
crven red (14)
cvijeće (cvijet a flower) flowers (6)

Č

čak even (14)
čas moment (5)
čarapa stocking, sock (14)
čaša glass (6)
čekati (imp.) to wait (3)
čelo forehead (11)
čestitati (imp. and pf. + dat.) to congratulate (7)
često often (2)
čim as soon as (10)
činiti (imp.) **ciniti se** (dat.) to do, make (8) to seem
čist clean (8)
čitati (imp. **pročitati**) to read (2)
čovjek man, person (2)
čudan, čudna strange (16)
čuditi se (imp.) to be surprised
čuti (imp. and pf. **čujem**) to hear (4)
čuvati (se)(imp. **sačuvati**) to look after, take care of, keep (12)

D

da yes (1)
da that (1), in order to (2)
dakle therefore, so (4)
daleko far away, distant (9)
dama lady (6)
dan day (1)
danas today (2)
dati (pf.) *see* **davati** (5)

- datum** date (13)
davati (imp.**dajem**, pf. **dati**) to give (2)
desni right-hand (8)
dinja melon (17)
diljem (+ gen.) throughout (19)
dio (gen. **dijela**) part (7)
dirati (imp.)(pf. **dirnuti,dirnem**) to touch (18)
diviti se (imp.) to admire, be amazed (19)
dizalo lift (5)
djeca (f. coll.)**dijete** (gen.**djeteta**) children (6) child
dječak boy (5)
djed grandfather (10)
djelovati (imp.**djelujem**) to act, work (18)
djevojka girl (7)
dnevni day, daily (adj. from **dan**) (6)
dnevnik diary (10)
dno bottom (14)
doba (n.)**u ovo dobagodišnja doba** time, period, season; at this time (7); seasons
dobar, dobra good (1)
dobiti (pf.**dobijem**) to receive, acquire (10)
dobro došao,došla, došli welcome (3)
dočekati (pf.) to meet, wait for (6)
doći (pf. **dođem**,imp. **dolaziti**) to come (1)
dogadati se(imp.) (pf.**dogoditi se**) to happen (7)
dogovoriti se(pf.) (imp.**dogovarati**) to agree, arrange (6)
dojam impression (7)
dokdok ne ... while (2) until
dokle until when (16)
dolazak (gen.**dolaska**) arrival (5)
dolaziti (imp.)(pf. **doći,dođem**) to arrive, come (4)
doma at home, home (3)
domaći local, homemade (6)
domaćica housewife, hostess (10)
donekle up to a point (17)
donijeti *see* **donositi**
donositi (imp.)(pf. **donijeti,donesem**) to bring, carry (7)
doručkovati(imp.**doručkujem**) to have breakfast (13)
dosadan, -dna boring (7)
dosta enough (3)
do videnja goodbye (3)
dovoljan, -ljna sufficient (6)
doživjeti (pf.)(imp. **doživim,doživljavati**) to experience (18)
drag dear (3)
drago mi je I am glad, pleased to meet you (1)
dragocjen precious, valuable (17)
drugi second (5), other (13)

društvopraviti **nekomedruštvo** company (4), to keep some one company

drveće (coll. n.) trees (9)

dućan shop (2)

dug long (time and space) (16)

duga rainbow (14)

dugovati (imp.**dugujem**) to owe (20)

duhovit witty (7)

duša soul; dear (3)

dvokrevetnasoba double room (5)

dvorana hall (7)

Dž

džemper jumper, jersey (14)

E

Engleska England (1)

engleski English, e.g. language

Engleskinja Englishwoman (1)

Englez Englishman (1)

eventualno perhaps (15)

evo (+ gen.) here is, here are (4)

F

formalnost (f.) formality (3)

formular form (7)

G

gdje where (6)

glačati (imp.**izglačati**) to iron (14)

gladan, -dna hungry (2)

glava head (8)

glavni main (7)

glavobolja headache 18)

glazba music (3)

gledati (imp.)(pf. **pogledati**) to look (at) (1)

glup foolish, stupid (4)

godina year (5)

gore up, above, upstairs (9)

gospodin Mr, gentleman (1)

gospođa Mrs, lady (1)

gost guest, visitor (8)

gotovo almost (9)

govor speech, talk (8)

ni govora! out of the question!

govoriti (imp.) to speak (1)

grad city, town (1)

gradić small town (4)

granica limit, border (19)

grmljavina thunder (19)

grožde (coll.) grapes (17)

gubiti (imp.) to lose (*see izgubiti*)
guma tyre (16)
gust dense, thick (18)
gužvati (imp. **izgužvati**) to crumple, crease (14)

H

haljina dress (5)
hauba bonnet (hood) (16)
hlače trousers, slacks (14)
hlad shade (12)
hladnjak refrigerator (10)
hodati (imp.) to walk (10)
hodnik corridor (2)
Hrvat, Hrvatica Croatian man, woman (1)
Hrvatska Croatia (1)
hrvatski Croatian (1)
hvalahvala lijepo thank you (3) thank you very much (7)

I

i and, too (2)
iako although (11)
ići (imp. **idem**) to go (2)
igrati se (imp.) to play (9)
imati (imp.)(neg. **nemati**) to have (8)
imati pravo to be right (2)
ime name (7)
inače otherwise (13)
inozemstvo abroad (7)
iskren sincere (10) **isplati se** (impers.) it's worth (15)
ispred (+ gen.) in front of (7)
ispružiti se (pf.) to stretch out (6)
isti same (9)
istina truth, it's true (12)
istok east (9)
iz (+ gen.) out of (4)
iza (+ gen.) behind (7)
izabrati (pf. **izaberem**) to choose (8)
izaći (pf. **izadem**, imp. **izlaziti**) to go out (4)
izbjeći (pf. **izbjegnem**, imp. **izbjegavati**) to avoid, escape (16)
izglačati (pf. **glačati**) to iron (8)
izbor choice (14)
izgledati (imp.) to seem (5)
izgubiti (pf.)(imp. **gubiti**) to lose (17)
izgužvan crumpled (6)
izlaz exit (3)
izlaziti (imp.) (4) *see izaći*
izložiti (pf.)(imp. **izlagati**) to display (17)
iznajmiti (pf.)(imp. **iznajmljivati**) to rent out (14)

izravno directly (12)
izraziti (se)(imp.) to express (17)
izvanredan,-dna extraordinary, special (7)
izvoli, izvolite please, help yourself, may I help you? (5)
izuzetan, -tna exceptional (9)
izvrstan, izvrsna excellent (2)

J

jak strong (8)
jako very (2)
jakna jacket (14)
jasan, jasna clear (4)
jastuk pillow, cushion (20)
javljati se (imp.)(pf. **javiti**) to get in touch (6)
jedan, jedna one, a (2)
jedini only, unique (10)
jednostavan,-vna simple (5)
jedva hardly (20)
jelovnik menu (8)
jer because (5)
jesen (f.) autumn (11)
jesti (imp.)**jedem**, pf. **pojesti**) to eat (17)
jezero lake (15)
jezik tongue, language (1)
još still, again, more (5)
još ne not yet
jučer yesterday (10)
jug south (9)
juha soup (8)
jutros this morning (10)
južni southern (15)

K

kabina booth (7)
kad(a) when (2)
kad god whenever (8)
kakav, kakva what kind of (3)
kako how (1)
kamo where to (4)
kaniti (imp.) to intend (12)
kao as (11)
karta ticket, map (13)
kasno late (9)
kat floor, storey (5)
kava coffee (8)
kavana café, restaurant (1)
kazalište theatre (9)
kazati (imp.)**kažem**) to say (2)

- kći** (f.) *alsokćer* (f.) daughter (*see* p. 295) (20)
kino cinema (2)
kiša rain (19)
kišobran umbrella (3)
ključ key (5)
knjižara bookshop (1)
knjiga book
kočnica brake (15)
kod (+ gen.) at, near, at the house of (3)
kofer suitcase (14)
koji which, what, who (8)
kolač cake (7)
kolica trolley (3)
količina quantity (16)
koliko how much, how many (8)
kolodvor *also postaja* station (4)
komad piece, theatre play (13)
konzerva tin (17)
kosa hair (7)
koštati (imp.) to cost (7)
košulja shirt (8)
koverta envelope (7)
koža skin, leather (12)
kraj end (8); area, region
krajolik landscape (16)
krasan, krasna beautiful (3)
kratak, kratka short (17)
kravata tie (8)
krcat crowded, packed (14)
krenuti (pf. **krenem**, imp. **kretati, krećem**) to move, set off (13)
krevet bed (5)
kriv guilty, to blame (10)
križanje crossroads (15)
kroz (+ acc.) through (2)
kruh bread (17)
kuća house (17)
kući (to) home (6)
kuhinja kitchen (6)
kupaći kostim swimming costume (14)
kupaonica bathroom (5)
kupanje bathing (20)
kupiti (pf. **kupovati**, imp. **kupujem**) to buy (14)
kupnja shopping (12)
L
lak easy, light (4)
lakat elbow (18)

- lavabo** washbasin (5)
ležati (imp.**ležim**) to lie, recline (20)
li (interrog. part.) (1)
lice face (18)
liječnik *also* **doktor** doctor (18)
lijek medicine (18)
lijep beautiful, nice (1)
lisnica purse (3)
lijevi left (5)
lopta ball (20)
loš bad (8)
loza, lozovača grape brandy (10)
lupati (imp.**lupim**, pf.**lupnuti**) to bang, knock (16)
luka harbour, port (7)
Lj
ljeto ljeto in summer (11) summer; **ljetni** (adj.) (8)
ljetovanje summer holiday (3)
ljubazan, -zna pleasant, kind (2)
ljut angry (18)
M
majica undershirt, T-shirt (14)
majka mother (11)
mali, malen manji small (6) comp. of **mali** (7)
malo a little, a bit (1)
marka stamp (7)
među (+ instr.) among (8)
međunarodni international (7)
medutim however (15)
meso meat (8)
metnuti (pf.**metati**, imp.**mećem**) to put, place (14) (informal)
miješan mixed (8)
miran peaceful (8)
misliti (imp.**pomisliti**) to think (4)
mjesec moon, month (8)
mjesto place (8)
mlad young (6)
mladić young man (6)
mnogo (+ gen.) a lot (of) (3)
moći (imp. and to be able (3) pf. irreg.)
mogućnost (f.**po mogućnosti**) possibility (11) if possible (13)
moj, moja, moji etc. my (1)
molba request, favour (15)
moliti (imp.)(pf. **zamoliti**) to pray, ask (a favour) (7)
molim please (5)
morati (imp.) to have to, must (2)
more sea (4)

most bridge (8)
motor engine (16)
možda perhaps (2)
može OK (2)
mrtav, mrtva dead (16)
muž husband (11)

N

načinna taj način way, means (18) in that way
naći (pf. **nađem**, imp. **nalaziti**) to find (3)
naći se to meet (6)
nadati se (imp.) to hope (9)
nakit jewellery, ornaments (17)
nakon (+ gen.) after (13)
nalaziti (se)(imp. **naći**) to be situated (9)
namjera intention (14)
namjeravati(imp.) (pf. **namjeriti**) to intend, plan (4)
napraviti (pf.)(imp. **praviti**) to make (14)
napuniti (pf.)(imp. **puniti**) to fill (15)
naravno of course (10)
naročito particularly (2)
naručivati (imp. **naručujem**, pf. **naručiti**) to order (7)
nasloniti (se)(pf.) (imp. **naslanjati**) to lean (17)
nasmijati se(imp. **nasmijemse**) to smile (8)
naš, naša, našietc. our (3)
navečer in the evening (6)
navika habit (19)
naviknuo, -nula(past part. of **naviknuti**) accustomed (15)
na primjer for example (10)
na žalost unfortunately (1)
na žaru charcoal-grilled (8)
ne (neg. part.) no (2)
nebo sky (20)
nećak, nećakinja nephew, niece (11)
nedaleko(+ **od** + gen.) not far (4)
negdje somewhere (9)
nego but (after neg.) (4)
neka let ... (1)
nekako somehow (7)
nekamo somewhere (with motion) (7)
neki some (6)
nekoliko several, a few (4)
nema na čemu you're welcome (7)
nema smisla there's no point (19)
nema veze never mind (19)
nemati (neg. of **imati**, imp.) not to have (3)
nemoj, nemojte don't ... (3)

- neposredan, -dna** direct, immediate (12)
nepoznat unknown (15)
nesigurnost (f.) uncertainty (13)
nesreća misfortune, accident (18)
nestrpljiv impatient (7)
nešto something (2)
netko someone (3)
neugodan, -dna unpleasant (18)
ni ... (ni) neither ... (nor) (2)
nikad(a) never (3)
nikad se ne you never
zna know (4)
ništa nothing (5), never mind (11)
noć (f.) night (10)
noćenje spending the night (14)
noga foot, leg (16)
nositi (imp.) to carry (4), wear (5)
novac (gen.**novca**) money (3)
novčanik wallet, purse (3)
novi new (2)
novine newspaper (12)
nuditi (imp.)(pf. **ponuditi**) to offer (7)
nježan, nježna tender, soft (12)
O
obala shore, coast (19)
obavezan, -zna obligatory (16)
obaviti (pf.)(imp. **obavljati**) to carry out, perform (7)
obično usually (2)
obilazak (from**obilaziti**) visit (15)
obilaziti (imp.**obići**, pf.**obiđem**) to go round (11)
obitelj (f.) family (11)
objašnjavati(imp.) (pf.**objasniti**) to explain (9)
oblačiti se (imp.)(pf. **obući se**) to dress (13)
oblak cloud (19)
oblačno cloudy
očekivati (imp.**očekujem**) to expect (19)
oči (f. pl.) (**okon.** sing.) eyes (1)
očito evidently (9)
od (+ gen.) from, away from (4)
odakle from where (4)
odavde from here (9)
odavno ‘since’ a long time (10)
odijelo suit (14)
odjeća clothes (6)
odgojen brought up (15)
odgovarati(imp.) (pf.**odgovoriti**) to answer (2)

- odgovoran** responsible (12)
odlučiti (se)(pf.) (imp.**odlučivati**) to decide (12)
odmah immediately (6)
odmor rest (19)
odmoriti se (pf.)(imp. **odmarati**) to rest (10)
odnos relationship, attitude (11)
odnositi se(imp.) to refer to (8)
odnosno or rather, that is (11)
odrasti (pf.**odrastem**, imp.**odrastati**) to grow up (8)
odrastao, odrasla(past part.) grown-up
odreden definite, certain (15)
odspavati (pf.) to take a nap (19)
odvesti (pf.**odvezem**, imp.**odvoziti**) to drive, take (6)
ogroman, -mna huge (16)
ogrtač overcoat (13)
okupati se (pf.)(imp. **kupati**) to bathe (19)
oluja storm (19)
onda then (3)
ondje over there (6)
opasan, -sna dangerous (18)
opasnost (f.) danger (13)
opet again (4)
opisati (pf.)(imp. **opisivati**) to describe (17)
oprezan, -zna careful (5)
oprostiti (pf.)(imp. **oprašati**) to forgive (3)
orah walnut (8)
ormar wardrobe, cupboard (5)
osim (+ gen.)**osim toga** apart from besides (2)
osjećaj feeling (13)
osjećati (se)(imp.) (pf.**osjetiti**) to feel (4)
osjetljiv sensitive (12)
osnovan founded (17)
ostajati (imp.**ostati**, pf.**ostanem**) to remain (4)
ostali remaining, others (17)
ostatak remainder (20)
ostavljati (imp.)(pf. **ostaviti**) to leave, abandon (7)
osvježiti se (pf.)(imp.**osvježavati se**) to refresh oneself (20)
otac (gen. **oca**) father (11)
otok island (4)
otpratiti (pf.)(imp. **pratiti**) to accompany (5)
otputovati (pf.) to set off (12)
otraga behind (18)
otvarati (imp.)(pf. **otvoriti**) to open (6)
otvoren open (7)
ovaj, ova, ovo this (3)
ovamo over here (1)

ovdje here (2)

ovisi (o + loc.) it depends (on) (13)

ovisno (o + loc.) depending (on) (13)

ozbiljan, -ljna serious (9)

ozlijeden injured (18)

oženiti se (pf.)(imp. **ženiti se**) to get married (11)

P

padati (imp.**pasti**, pf.**padnem**) to fall (19)

padati na pamet to occur to (12)

pak nevertheless (8)

pakirati se(imp.) to pack (6)

pakiranje packing (14)

palačinka pancake (8)

paliti (imp.) to switch on (6)

pamet (f.) mind (18)

pametna, -tna clever (18)

paprika capsicum, pepper (17)

par pair, couple; a few (16)

bračni par married couple (12)

para (colloq.) money (3)

pas (gen. **psa**) dog (18)

pasta za zube toothpaste (20)

pasti *see* **padati**

pašteta paté (17)

paziti (imp.) to watch, take care (3)

pažljiv careful (9)

pejsaž landscape (16)

piće drink (6)

pisac (gen. **pisca**) writer (13)

pismo letter (7)

pitati (imp.) to ask (a question) (2)

piti (imp. **pijem**, pf. **popiti**) to drink (2)

pivo beer (6)

pješak pedestrian (9)

pješice on foot (5)

plaća pay, salary (19)

plaćati (imp.)(pf. **platiti**) to pay (15)

plav blue, blonde (6)

plin gas (19)

po (+ loc.) along, through; + acc. for (3)

pobijediti (pf.) to win (17)

početak (gen.**početka**) beginning (13)

početi (pf.**počnem**, imp.**počinjati**,**počinjem**) to begin (10)

poći (pf. **pođem**,**polaziti**) to go, set off (10)

pod floor (17)

podići (pf.**podignem**, imp.**podizati**,**podizem**) to lift, raise (16)

- podnositi** (imp.) to bear, support (12)
područje region, district (15)
pogled look, view (5)
pogledati (pf. **gledati**) to take a look (9)
pogotovo especially (16)
pogrešan, -šna mistaken, wrong (15)
pojavit se (pf.) to appear (15)
pojesti (pf. **pojedem**, imp. **jesti**) to eat (up) (19)
pokazati (pf. **pokažem**, imp. **pokazivati**, **pokazujem**) to show (3)
pokraj (+ gen.) beside (2)
pokućstvo furniture (6)
pokušati *see* **pokušavati**
pokušavati(imp.) (pf. **pokušati**) to attempt, try (2)
polako slowly (4)
polazak departure (15)
položaj position (11)
poljubiti (pf.)(imp. **ljubiti**) to kiss (1)
pomalo a little, now and then (2)
pomoć (f.) help (7)
pomoći (pf. **pomognem**, imp. **pomagati**, **pomažem**+ dat.) to help (5)
ponekad sometimes (2)
ponijeti (pf. **ponesem**) to take (along), carry off (5)
ponovno again (16)
popeti se (pf. **popnem se**, imp. **penjati se**, **penjem se**) to climb (9)
popiti (pf.) *see* **piti**
popravljati(imp.) (pf. **popraviti**) to mend, repair, correct (17)
popuniti (pf.)(imp. **popunjavati**) to fill up (17)
poruka message (11)
posao (gen. **posla**) work, business (7)
poseban, -bna special (13)
posjediti (pf.)(imp. **sjediti**) to sit (for a while) (6)
posjet visit (8)
posjetiti (pf.)(imp. **posjećivati**) to visit (4)
poslati (pf. **pošaljem**, imp. **slati**) to send (7)
poslije (+ gen.) after (10)
poslije podne (in the) afternoon (6)
poslovno on business (2)
posljednji last (12)
postaja stop, station (4)
postajati (imp. **postajem**, pf. **postati**, **postanem**) to become (18)
posuđivati (imp. **posuđujem**, pf. **posuditi**) **nekome** to lend (15)
posuditi odnekoga to borrow
pošta post, post office (7)
potpuno completely (14)
potreban, -bna necessary (16)
pouzdan reliable (15)

- povratak** (gen.**povratka**) return (13)
povrće vegetables (17)
pozdraviti (pf.)(imp.**pozdravljati**) to greet (20)
pozivati (imp.**pozvati**, pf.**pozovem**) to invite (6)
poznaničnik acquaintance (6)
poznavati (imp.)(pf. **poznati**) to know, be acquainted (4)
prašak powder, medicine (18)
prašina dust (18)
prati (imp.**perem**, pf.**oprati**) to wash (14)
pratiti (imp.) to accompany, follow (9)
pravi real, right (10)
praviti (imp.)(pf. **napraviti**) to make (12)
prebaciti (pf.**prebacivati**,imp.**prebacujem**) to throw over, give a lift (16)
predaleko too far (2)
predati (pf.**predavati**, imp.**predajem**) to hand in, over (7)
predjelo hors d'oeuvre (8)
predlagati (imp.)(pf. **predložiti**) to suggest (2)
predstava performance (13)
predstaviti(pf.) (imp.**predstavljati**) to present, introduce (10)
pregled overview, examination (16)
pregledati(pf.) (imp.**pregledavati**) to examine (3)
prekjučer the day before yesterday (10)
preko (+ gen.) across (8)
preko puta opposite (9)
prekosutra the day after tomorrow (12)
prekrasan, -sna beautiful (4)
prelaziti (imp.**preći**, pf.**pređem**) to cross (3)
prema (+ loc.) towards (3)
prema tome therefore (15)
prenoćiti (pf.)(imp. **noćiti**) to spend the night (15)
preporučen registered (7)
preporučivati(imp.) (pf.**preporučiti**) to recommend (8)
prepoznavati(imp.) (pf.**prepoznati**) to recognize (9)
pretjerivati(imp.) (pf.**preterujem;pretjerati**) to exaggerate (9)
previše too much (13)
prevruć too hot (16)
preživjeti (pf.) to survive (12)
pričati (imp.) to tell, talk (7)
pridružiti se(pf.) to join (company) (6)
prijatelj friend (4)
prijaviti (pf.) to announce, declare (3)
prijaviti se to report (9)
prije (+ gen.) before; earlier (10)
prije podne morning (5)
prijedlog suggestion (13)
prilaziti (imp.**prići**, pf.**pridem**) to approach (3)

- prilično** quite (7), considerably (9)
prilika opportunity, circumstance (13)
primati (imp.)(pf. **primiti**) to receive (14)
primijetiti (pf.) to notice (5)
pristojan, -jna polite (15)
privlačan, -čna attractive (19)
prizemlje ground floor (7)
priznavati (imp.**priznajem**, pf.**priznati**) to admit, confess (13)
prljav dirty (14)
probati (imp.and pf.) to try (2)
proći (pf.**prođem**, imp.**prolaziti**) to pass by (10)
prodavačica saleswoman (17)
prodavaonica shop (2)
produžiti (pf.) to continue (15)
proizvod product (17)
proljeće spring (11)
prometan, -tnapromet congested (8) traffic
promijeniti (pf.)(imp. **mijenjati**) to change (19)
prostran spacious (6)
prošetati se *see* **šetati** (8)
provjeriti (pf.)(imp.**provjeravati**) to check, confirm (15)
provesti (se) (pf.**provedem**, imp.**provoditi (se)**) to spend time (9)
prozor window (2)
prtljaga luggage (3)
prtljažnik luggage rack (3) boot (trunk)
prvi first (3)
ptica bird (19)
pun full (6)
puno much, many (7)
pustiti (pf.)(imp. **puštati**) to leave (16)
put time (7) way, journey (10)
putnik traveller (1)
putovati (imp.**putujem**) to travel (1)
putovnica passport (3)
- R**
- račun** account, bill (15)
raditi (imp.) to do, work (4)
radni (dan) working (day) (13)
rado gladly (4)
radostan, -sna joyous (18)
rajčica tomato (8)
rakija brandy (10)
rani early (8)
raspoložen in a good mood (11)
rastati se (pf.), to divorce, part (11) (**od nekoga**)
ravno straight (15)

- razboljeti se** (pf.) (imp. **razboljevati se**) to fall ill (15)
razgledavati (imp.) (pf. **razgledati**) to view, look over (17)
razglednica picture postcard (7)
razlog reason, cause (20)
razgovarati (imp.) to converse, talk (13)
razgovor conversation (7)
razmisliti (pf.) (imp. **razmišljati**) to reflect, think over (12)
razni various (8)
razočaran disappointed (7)
razumjeti (imp. and pf.) to understand (1)
razuman, -mna sensible (15)
recepција (hotel) lobby, desk (6)
recept prescription (18)
reći (pf. **reknem**) to say, tell (6)
redu redu order in order, all right (5)
riba, riblji (adj.) fish (8)
riječ (f.) word (5)
rijeka river (8)
rijedak, rijetka rare (11)
rod kin (11)
roditelj parent (7)
roditi se (pf.) to be born (13)
rodak, rodica relation (11)
rodendan birthday (7)
roštilj grill (19)
rub edge (16)
rublje (coll.) **donje rublje** linen, clothes underwear (14)
ručak (gen. **ručka**) lunch (9)
ruka hand, arm (5)
rukovati se (imp. **rukujem se**) to shake hands (17)
rupčić handkerchief (17)

S

- s, sa** + gen. + instr. from (9), with (9)
sad, sada now (1)
sad ću ... I'll just ... (16)
sam alone (9)
samo just (1) **samoposluživanje** self-service, supermarket (17)
sastanak (gen. **sastanka**) meeting (14)
sasvim quite, altogether (8)
sat hour, watch (7)
sav, sva all, whole
prije svega above all (16)
savjet advice, counsel (12)
semafor traffic lights (15)
sestra sister (11)
silaziti (imp.) (pf. **sići, sidem**) to come down, get off (6)

- siguran, -rna** certain (3)
sin son (4)
sinoć last night (16)
sir cheese (17)
sitniš, sitan novac small coins, change (17)
sjećati se (imp.) (pf. **sjetiti se**) + gen. to remember (8)
sjediti (imp.) (pf. **posjediti**) to sit, be sitting (1)
sjesti (pf. **sjednem**) to sit down (7)
sjever north (9)
skakati (imp. **skačem**, pf. **skočiti**) to jump, dive (20)
skrenuti (pf. **skrenem**, imp. **skretati, skrećem**) to turn (9)
skrivati (imp.) to hide (12)
skup expensive (7)
skupa together (5)
sladak, slatka sweet (8)
sladoled ice cream (17)
slagati se (imp. **slažem se**, pf. **složiti se**) to get on (11) to agree (8);
sličan, slična similar (11)
slijediti (imp.) to follow (16)
sljedeći following (8)
slika picture (6)
slomiti (pf.) (imp. **lomiti**) to break (18)
slučaj case, chance (11)
slučajno by chance (17)
ni slučajno not on your life!
slušalica receiver (11)
slušati (imp.) to listen (3)
služiti (imp.) (pf. **poslužiti**) to serve (6)
smatrati (imp.) to consider, believe (6)
smetati (imp.) (+ dat.) to disturb, bother (12)
smijati se (imp. **smijem se**) to laugh (8)
smiriti (se) (pf.) to soothe, calm (10)
smjeti (imp. **smijem**) to dare, be allowed (7)
smještaj lodging (12)
snaga strength, energy (16)
soba room (4)
spavaća soba bedroom (6)
spavati (imp.) to sleep (1)
spreman, -mna ready (6)
spremati (se) (imp. **spremiti (se)**) to get ready, prepare (4)
spremiti (se) *see spremati (se)*
srce heart (12)
sreća fortune, luck, happiness (13)
srećom luckily (4)
sredina milieu, surroundings (4)
sretan, -tna happy (1)

- stajati** (imp. **stojim**) stand (9) to suit (5),
stalno constantly (12)
stan flat, apartment (6)
stanovati (imp. **stanujem**) to reside, dwell (5)
star old (6)
stati (pf. **stanem**) to stop (9)
staviti *see* **stavljati**
stavljati (imp.) (pf. **staviti**) to place, put (6)
stići *see* **stizati**
stizati (imp. **stižem**, pf. **stići**, **stignem**) manage (4) to arrive (3),
stol stolić table (8) little table (6)
stolac (*also* **stolica**) chair (14)
strana side (9)
stranac (gen. **stranca**) foreigner (17)
strašan, -šna terrible (12)
strm steep (9)
strog stern, severe (19)
strpljiv patient (19)
struja current, electricity (19)
stubište staircase (5)
stuba stair
stupanj degree (19)
stvar (f.) thing (3)
suh dry (17)
suknja skirt (14)
sunčan sunny (16)
suprug husband (5)
supruga wife
susjedni neighbouring, next (5)
sutra tomorrow (9)
svakako certainly (4)
svaki every (3)
svako dobro all the best (4)
svakodnevni everyday (19)
svatko everyone, each (4)
sve everything (3)
svejedno all the same (8)
svi all, everyone (1)
svidati se (imp.) (pf. **svidjeti se**) **svida mi se film** to appeal to, to like I like the film (6)
svijet world (11)
svijetao, svijetla light, bright (6)
svjež fresh, cool (9)
svoj one's own (4)
svratiti (pf.) (imp. **svraćati**) to drop in (18)
svuda, svugdje everywhere (20)

- šaliti se** (imp.) (pf. **našaliti se**) to joke (11)
šetati (se) (imp.) (pf. **prošetati (se)**) to (go for a) walk (2)
šljivovica plum brandy (2)
šminka make-up (17)
što (for decl., *see* Unit 17) what (2), that (4)
šutljiv quiet (16)
šutjeti, šutim to be silent
T
tad(a) then, at that time (5)
taj, ta, to that (6)
takav, takva of such a kind (3)
tako so, in such a way (3)
takoder likewise (1)
tamo there (3)
tek just (13)
teškoća difficulty (10)
težak, teška difficult, heavy (4)
ticati se (imp.) **što se mene tiče** as far as I am to concern concerned (9)
tih quiet (14)
tijekom (+ gen.) in the course of (5)
tišina silence (14)
tko who (3)
tlak pressure (15)
to that (*see* **taj**) (3)
točno exactly (5)
topao, topla warm (8)
torba bag (3), handbag (17)
trajati (imp. **trajem**) to last, continue (13)
traperice jeans (17)
tražiti (imp.) (pf. **potražiti**) to seek, look for (4)
trčati (imp. **trčim**) to run (13)
trebati (imp.) to need (5)
trenutak moment (5)
trg square (9)
tržište market (economy) (17)
tu here (6)
tuš shower (5)
tužan, -žna sad (6)
tvrd hard (17)
U
učiti (imp.) (pf. **naučiti**) to learn (1)
ući (pf. **udem**, imp. **ulaziti**) to enter + **u** + acc. (10)
udati se (pf. to marry)
udavati se, udajem se (refers to imp. woman) (11)
udoban, -bna comfortable (6)
udžbenik textbook (2)

- ugao** (gen. **ugla**) corner (7)
uglavnom on the whole (11)
ugodan, -dna pleasant (2)
ugostiti (pf.) to entertain (16)
uključivati (imp. **uključujem**, pf. **uključiti**) to include (6)
ukupno altogether, in all (7)
ukus taste (14)
ukusan, -sna delicious, tasty (8)
ulaz entrance (7)
ulaziti (imp. **ući**, pf. **uđem**) to enter (6)
ulica street (9)
ulje oil (8)
umjeren moderate (19)
umivaonik washbasin (5)
umivati se umiti se (imp. to wash (13)
umoran, umorna tired (1)
umoriti se (pf.) to tire oneself (16)
unutra inside (16)
uopće in general; (with neg. verb) at all (8)
upaliti (pf.) (imp. **paliti**) to ignite, switch on (16)
uplašiti (se) (pf.) (imp. **plašiti (se)**) be frightened to frighten, (18)
upoznati (pf.) (imp. **upoznavati**) to meet, get to know (1)
upravo just, exactly (20)
ured office (8)
u redu all right, OK (6)
uskoro soon (5)
usluga favour (12)
uspješan, -šna successful (13)
uspjeh success
uspjeti (pf. **uspijem**, imp. **uspijevati**) to succeed (10)
usput on the way (12)
ustajati (imp. **ustajem**, pf. **ustati, ustanem**) to get up (6)
uvijek always (3)
uvjet condition (17)
uz (+ acc.) up, alongside (8)
uzak, uska narrow (14)
uzbuđen excited (10)
uzbuđenje excitement (16)
uzdah sigh (6)
uzdahnuti to sigh (8)
uzeti *see* **uzimati** (8)
uzimati (imp.) (pf. **uzeti, uzmem**) to take (3)
uživati (imp.) **u nečemu** to enjoy oneself to enjoy something (16)
- V**
- vaditi** (imp.) (pf. **izvaditi**) to take out, remove (6)
valjda presumably (12)

- vani** outside (19)
važan, važna important (7)
večer (f.) (gen. **večeri**) evening (8)
večera dinner, evening meal (6)
večeras this evening (6)
već already (10)
većina majority (19)
veliki large (3)(def. form is usually used)
veseo, vesela cheerful (7)
veseliti se (imp.) to be glad about, look forward to (3)
vidjeti (imp. and pf. **vidim**) to see (3)
vidati (imp.) to see regularly, repeatedly (11)
vino wine (8)
visok tall, high (7)
više more (comp. of **mного**) (6), several (12)
vjerojatno probably (9)
vjerovati (imp.) (pf. **povjerovati**) (**nekome**) to believe (12)
vješati (imp. **povješati**) to hang (up)
vjetar (gen. **vjetra**) wind (19)
vježbati (imp.) to practise (10)
vlak train (2)
vlastit one's own (20)
voće (coll.) fruit (11)
voda water (7)
voditi (imp. **povesti**, pf. **povedem**) to take, lead (13)
volja will (19)
voljeti (imp. **volim**) to love (1)
vozilo vehicle (18)
voziti (se) (imp.) to drive (2)
vožnja driving (16)
vraćati (se) (imp.) (pf. **vratiti (se)**) to return (11)
vrata (n. pl.) door (3)
vrećica bag
najlon vrećica plastic bag (17)
vrijediti (imp.) to be worth (12)
vrijednost (f.) value (17)
vrijeme (gen. **vremena**) **na vrijeme s vremena na vrijeme** time (4); weather (16) on time (10) from time to time (10)
vrlo very (2)
vrt garden (7)
vruć hot (12)
vrućina heat (12)
vući (imp. **vučem**, pf. **povući**) to drag (14)
Z
za (+ acc.) for (9)
zabilježiti (pf.) (imp. **bilježiti**) to make a note (15)

- zaboravljati** (imp.) (pf. **zaboraviti**) to forget (4)
zabranjivati (imp.) (pf. **zabraniti**) **zabranjen** to forbid (14) forbidden
zabrinut worried (10)
zadovoljan, -ljna pleased, satisfied (6)
zadržati (se) (pf.) (imp. **zadržavati**) to keep, hold up (12)
zahvalan, -lna grateful (20)
zaista really (6)
zamisliti (pf.) (imp. **zamišljati**) to imagine (3)
zamoliti *see* **moliti** (8)
zanimati (imp.)
zanimati se za (+ acc.) to interest (7) to be interested in
zanimljiv interesting (9)
zapad west (9)
zapravo in fact, really (17)
za svaki slučaj just in case (14)
zašto why (12)
zatim then, next (4)
zato therefore (7)
zato što because
zatvarati (se) (imp.) (pf. **zatvoriti**) to close (2)
zaustavljati (se) (imp.) (pf. **zaustaviti**) to stop (5)
zaustavna traka hard shoulder (16)
zauzet occupied, busy (8)
zavoj bend (18)
završiti (pf.) to stop, finish, complete (17)
zbilja truly, honestly (3)
zbog (+ gen.) because of (10)
zbogom farewell (3)
zbuniti (se) (pf.) (imp. **zbunjivati**) to be confused, embarrassed (11)
zbunjen confused (10)
zdravlje health (18)
zelen green (8)
zemlja earth, country (5)
zgodan, -dna suitable, attractive (8)
zgrada building (9)
zid wall (6)
zima zimi winter in winter (11)
značiti (imp.) to mean (11)
znak sign (16)
znamenitost sight, thing of interest (9)
znati (imp.) to know (2)
zora u zoru dawn at dawn (19)
zrak air (9)
zvati (imp. **zovem**, pf. **pozvati**) to call, invite (1)
zvati (se) to be called (1)
zvoniti (imp.) (pf. **pozvoniti**) to ring (4)

zvono bell

zvučati (imp. **zvučim**) to sound (16)

zvuk sound (16)

Ž

žalost regret

na žalost unfortunately (1)

žao mi je I am sorry (20)

željeti (imp. **želim**, pf. **poželjeti**) to want, desire (2)

žena woman, wife (1)

žestok severe, strong (10)

žilet razor blade (17)

živ alive, lively (13)

živjeti (imp. **živim**) to live (6)

život life (7)

žuriti (se) (imp.) (pf. **požuriti**) to hurry (8)

žut yellow (14)

English–Croatian glossary

A

to be able **moći** (imp. and pf.) (**mogu, možeš, oni mogu; mogao, mogla**)

abroad **inozemstvo**

to accept **primati** (imp.), **primiti**

accident **nesreća**

aeroplane **zrakoplov, avion**

after **poslije** (+ gen.)

afternoon **poslije podne** (gen. **posljepodneva**)

although **mada, iako, premda**

always **uvijek**

and **i** (sometimes **a** if there is a slight element of contrast)

arrival **dolazak**

to arrive **dolaziti** (imp.), **doći** (**dodem; došao**)

to ask (a question) (a favour) **pitati** (imp.) **moliti** (imp.), **zamoliti**

B

bag handbag **torba taška**

to bathe **kupati se** (imp.), **okupati se**

bathroom **kupaonica**

beautiful **lijep, prekrasan**

because **zato što, jer**

bed **krevet**

bed linen **posteljina**

beer **pivo**

before **prije** (+ gen.); **ranije**

to begin **počinjati** (imp. **počinjem**), **početi** (pf. **počnem**)

behind **za** (+ instr.), **iza** (+ gen.); **otraga** (adv.)

to believe **vjerovati** (imp. **vjerujem** + dat.)

big **velik**

bill **račun**

birthday **rodendan**

black **crn**

boat (small motor or rowing boat) **brod; čamac**

bonnet (of car) **hauba**

book **knjiga**

bread **kruh**

breakfast (to have breakfast) **doručak** (**doručkovati, doručkujem**)

to bring (carry) **donositi** (imp.), **donijeti; dovoditi** (imp.), **dovesti, dovedem**

bus **autobus**

busy **zauzet, u poslu**

C

café **kavana, also kafić**

- to call to be called **zvati (zovem) zvati se**
 car **automobil, auto**
 to be careful **paziti** (imp.)
 to carry **nositi** (imp.)
 to celebrate **slaviti** (imp.)
 certain **siguran, sigurna**
 chair **stolac**
 cheap **jeftin**
 cheese **sir**
 chemist **ljekarna**
 child **dijete** (gen. **djeteta**; pl. **djeca**, f. sing. takes pl. verb)
 choice **izbor**
 cinema **kino**
 clean **čist**
 clear **jasan, jasna**
 clinic **ambulanta**
 clothes underwear, washing (both collec. nouns) **odjeća; rublje**
 coast **obala**
 coffee **kava**
 cold I am cold **hladan, hladna hladno mi je**
 to come **dolaziti** (imp.), **doći** (dodem)
 comfortable **udoban, -bna**
 completely **potpuno**
 Croat (person) **Hrvat, Hrvatica**
 Croatia **Hrvatska**
 crossroads **raskrižje, križanje**
- D**
- dangerous **opasan, -sna**
 date **datum**
 daughter **kći, kćer** (*see* p. 295)
 day **dan**
 dear **drag; mio, mila**
 to decide **odlučiti (se)** (pf.) **odlučivati (se)**
 I'm delighted **drago mi je**
 to depart **odlaziti** (imp.), **otići** (odem)
 departure **odlazak** (gen. **odlaska**)
 dictionary **rječnik**
 difficult **težak, teška**
 dinner **večera**
 direction **pravac** (gen. **pravca**)
 dirty **prljav**
 divorced **rastavljen**
 doctor **liječnik, -ica**
 dog **pas** (gen. **psa**)
 door **vrata** (n. pl.)
 double room **dvokrevetna soba**

dress **haljina**

drink **piće**

to drink **piti** (imp. **pijem**), **popiti**

dry **suh**

to dry **sušiti** (imp.)

E

early **rani**

east **istok**, **istočni** (adj.)

easy **lak**

to eat **jesti** (imp. **jedem**), **pojesti**

end **kraj**

engine **motor**

England **Engleska**

English English person **engleski Englez**, **Engleskinja**

enough **dosta**

entrance hall **predsoblje**

envelope **omotnica**, **koverta**

evening **večer** (f.)

excellent **izvrstan**, **-sna**

excuse me **oprostite**

expensive **skup**

to explain **objašnjavati** (imp.), **objasniti**

F

family **obitelj** (f.)

far **dalek**

father **otac** (gen. **oca**; pl. **očevi**)

fast **brz**

to find **nalaziti** (imp.) **naći**, **nađem**

to finish **završiti** (pf.)

first **prvi**

floor (storey) **kat**

food prepared dish **hrana jelo**

football **nogomet**

foreigner **stranac**, **strankinja**

to forget **zaboravljati** (imp.), **zaboraviti**

friend **prijatelj**, **prijateljica**

in front of **pred** (+ instr.), **ispred** (+ gen.)

fruit **voće** (n. coll.)

G

garden **vrt**

to get on (well) **slagati se** (imp. **slažem se**)

girl **djevojka**

to give **davati** (imp. **dajem**), pf. **dati** (**dam**)

to go **ići** (imp. and pf. **idem**)

gladly **rado**

good **dobar**, **dobra**

good-looking **zgodan, zgodna**
 grammar book **gramatika**
 grapes **grožđe** (n. coll.)
 to greet **pozdravljati** (imp.), **pozdraviti**
 guest **gost**

H

hair **kosa**
 happy **sretan, sretna**
 to have **imati** (imp.)
 to have to **morati** (imp.)
 he **on**
 head **glava**
 to hear **čuti** (imp. and pf. **čujem**)
 help **pomoć** (f.)
 to help **pomagati** (imp. **pomažem**), **pomoći** (**pomognem**)
 her **njezin, njen**
 here **ovdje, tu**
 to hide **kriti** (se) (imp. **krijem**), **sakriti** (se)
 hill **brdo**
 to hire **iznajmljivati** (imp.), **iznajmiti** (pf.)
 his **njegov**
 holiday **odmor**
 to hope **nadati se** (imp.)
 hospital **bolnica**
 house **kuća**
 hot I am hot **vruć; topao, topla toplo mi je**
 how much **koliko**
 hungry **gladan, gladna**
 to hurt (usually used in the 3rd pers.) I have a headache) **boljeti** (imp.) **boli me glava**
 husband **suprug, muž**

I

I **ja**
 ice cream **sladoled**
 if **ako**
 immediately **odmah**
 impossible **nemoguć**
 in **u** (+ loc.), into **u** + acc.
 injured **ozlijeđen**
 inside **unutra**
 to interest that interests me **zanimati** (imp.) **to me zanima**
 international **međunarodni**
 to invite **pozivati** (imp.), **pozvati, pozovem**

J

jewellery **nakit**
 journey **put, putovanje**
 jumper **džemper, vesta**

Kkey **ključ**kind **ljubazan**kitchen **kuhinja**to know **znati** (imp.)**L**language **jezik** (tongue)last last year **posljednji prošla godina**late **kasni** (to be late: **kasniti**, imp. **zakasniti**)to laugh **smijati se** (imp. **smijem**)lavatory **WC, toalet**to leave (abandon) (depart) **ostaviti** (pf.), **ostavljati odlaziti, otići**left (hand) **ljevi**letter **pismo**life **život**to like **voljeti** (imp. **volim**); **svidati se nekome**to live **živjeti** (imp. **živim**)living room **dnevna soba**little **malen, mali**local **domaći**to look look for look after **gledati** (imp.) **tražiti** (imp.) **potražiti** **čuvati** (imp.) **sačuvati**to lose **gubiti** (imp.), **izgubiti**to love to be in love **voljeti** (imp. **volim**) **biti zaljubljen**lucky you! **blago vama/tebi!**luggage **prtljaga****M**to marry **ženiti se** (imp.), **oženiti se** (of man); **udavati se** (imp. **udajem se**), **udati se** (of woman)meat **meso**to meet **sresti se** (pf. **sretnem**); **naći se** (pf.)menu **jelovnik**moment **čas, časak**month **mjesec**more **više**morning **jutro**mother **majka**much **mnogo** (+ gen.)my **moj****N**near **blizu** (prep. + gen.)never **nikad**new **nov**newspaper **novine** (pl.)next **sljedeći**night **noć** (f.)no **ne**

north **sjever**; adj: **sjeverni**
 to notice **primjećivati** (imp. **primjećujem**), **primijetiti**
 now **sad**

O

of course **dakako**, **naravno**
 often **često**
 old **star**
 on on to **na** (+ loc.) **na** (+ acc.)
 our **naš**
 outside **van**, **vani**

P

parent **roditelj**
 to park **parkirati se** (imp.)
 to pay **plaćati** (imp.), **platiti**
 peach **breskva**
 perhaps **možda**
 piece **komad** (*also* play, drama)
 pillow **jastuk**
 place **mjesto**
 to play **igrati se** (imp.)
 pleasant **ugodan**, **-dna**
 please **molim** (lit. 'I pray')
 to prefer **više voljeti**
 possible **moгуć**
 postcard (picture) **dopisnica**; **razglednica**
 post office **pošta**
 probably **vjerojatno**
 to put **stavljati** (imp.) **staviti**

Q

quiet **tih**

R

rain **kiša**
 to rain **padati kiša**
 to read **čitati** (imp.) **pročitati**
 ready **gotov**; **spreman**, **-mna**
 relation **rođak**, **rodica**
 to remain **ostajati** (imp.), **ostati** (**ostanem**)
 to remember **sjećati se** (imp.) (+ gen. of thing remembered) **sjetiti se**
 rest **odmor**
 to rest **odmariti se** (imp.), **odmoriti se**
 to return **vraćati** (se) (imp.), **vratiti** (se)
 right-hand **desni**
 river **rijeka**
 road **put**, **cesta**
 room **soba**
 round (a corner) **iza** (**ugla**)

Sstamp **marka**to say **reći** (pf.) (past part.: **rekao, rekla**), **kazati** (imp. **kažem**)school **škola**sea **more**second **drugi**to see **vidjeti** (imp. and pf. **vidim**)to sell **prodavati** (imp. **prodajem**), **prodati**to send **slati** (imp. **šaljem**), **poslati**to set off **polaziti** (imp.), **poći** (**podem**)shade **hlad**she **ona**shirt **košulja**shop **dućan, prodavaonica**shop window **izlog**to sing **pjevati** (imp.)sister **sestra**to sit (down) to be sitting) **sjesti** (pf. **sjednem**) **sjediti** (imp.)slacks **hlače** (f. pl.)small **malen, mali**to sleep **spavati** (imp.)to smoke **pušiti** (imp.), **popušiti**some **neki**someone **netko**something **nešto**somewhere **negdje**son **sin**song **pjesma** (*also* poem)soon as soon as **uskoro čim**to speak **govoriti** (imp.)spring **proljeće**to stand **stajati** (imp. **stajem**), **stati** (**stanem**)station **kolodvor, postaja**to stay (sojourn) **boraviti** (imp.)stop (bus etc.) **postaja, stanica**storm **oluja**straight **prav; ravan, -vna**soup thick soup **juha čorba**south **jug, južni** (adj.)suitcase **kofer, kovčeg**summer **ljetno**sun **sunce****T**table **stol**to take **uzimati** (imp.), **uzeti** (**uzmem**)to talk **govoriti, razgovarati** (imp.)

tea **čaj**

teacher **nastavnik** (primary), **profesor**

thank you **hvala**

theatre **kazalište**

their **njihov**

there **tamo**

they **oni** (m.), **one** (f.), **ona** (n.)

thing **stvar** (f.)

to think **misliti** (imp.), **pomisliti**

through **kroz** (+ acc.)

tin (of food) **konzerva**

today **danas**

tomorrow **sutra**

town **grad**

train **vlak**

to travel **putovati** (imp. **putujem**); noun **putovanje**

to try **probati** (imp. and pf.); **pokušavati** (imp.), **pokušati**

U

to understand **razumijevati** (imp.), **razumjeti** (**razumijem, oni razumiju**)

unfortunately **na žalost**

usually **obično**

V

vegetables **povrće** (coll.)

very **jako, vrlo, veoma**

view **pogled**

visit **posjet**

W

to walk to go for a walk **hodati** (imp.) **šetati** (imp.) **prošetati**

to want **željeti** (imp. **želim**)

to wash **prati** (imp. **perem**), **oprati**

to wash **umivati se**

oneself (**umijem se**)

washbasin **umivaonik, lavabo**

way **način**

direction **put**

we **mi**

weather **vrijeme** (gen. **vremena**)

week **tjedan**

welcome **dobro došao** (**došla, došli** etc.)

west **zapad, zapadni** (adj.)

wet **mokar, mokra**

when **kad**

where **gdje; kuda, kamo** (with movement)

white **bijeli**

who **tko**

why **zašto**

wife **supruga, žena**

wind **vjetar** (gen. **vjetra**)

window **prozor**

wine **vino**

winter **zima**

with **s, sa** (+ instr.)

without **bez** (+ gen.)

woman **žena**

work **posao** (gen. **posla**)

to work **raditi** (imp.)

world **svijet**

to write **pisati** (imp. **pišem**), **napisati**

Y

year **godina**

yes **da**

yesterday **jučer**

you **ti** (sing. familiar), **vi** (formal and pl.)

young **mlad**

your **tvoj** (sing. familiar), **vaš** (formal and pl.)

Subject index

The numbers refer to the units.

- accusative case 4
- accusative with prepositions 4
- adjectives 6, 9
 - accusative, genitive 8
 - comparative 14
 - dative, instrumental 9
 - nominative 6
 - phrases expressed by verbs 18
- adjectives from proper nouns 3
 - possessive, from proper nouns 15
- adverbs 2
 - comparative 14
- apologies 3
- articles, absence of 1
- aspect 2, 17, 18, 19

- being mistaken 2
- belonging (possession) 3
- biti** 1
- body, parts of 18
- breakdown on the road 16

- cars, preparing for journey 15
 - parts of a car 16
- climate 19
- clothes 4, 14
- colours 14
- coming and going 3
- commands 18
- comparative 14
 - structures with the comparative 14
- conditional 19
- countries, names of 5

- daily routine 19
- dates 13
- dative 5
- days of the week 13

demonstrative pronouns 15
doctor, visit 18
driving 15

enclitics 1

family relationships 10
finding your way 9
flats and furniture 6
future tense 12
 long form of the auxiliary 12
 structures with the future 12
future perfect 16
food and drink 8
 shopping for 17

genitive 4
greetings 1

hypotheses 19

imperative 18
instrumental 5
interrogative pronouns 17
introductions 1
itineraries 4

letters 3, 20
living costs 19
location 5
locative case 5
lost items 17

negative, double 3
nationalities 1
nema 4
nominative 3
nouns 3
numbers
 cardinal 7
 ordinal 13

ordering meals 8

participles 20
past tense 10
 negative 10
 questions 10
personal pronouns 1

- declensions 11
 - emphatic use 10
 - use of dative to express possession 10
- places
 - going to, coming from 4
 - in front, behind etc. 8
- police station 17
- possessive adjectives 15
- possessive pronouns 16
- prepositions 4, 9
 - with accusative 4
 - with instrumental 8
- pronouns
 - demonstrative 15
 - interrogative 17
 - personal 1
 - possessive 16
 - relative 17

- questions 1

- reflexive verbs 2, 8
 - reflexive phrases 19
- relative pronouns 17

- shopping
 - for food 17
- street directions 9
- superlative 14

- telephone conversations 4, 5, 7
- tenses
 - future 12
 - future perfect 16
 - other:
 - pluperfect, aorist 20
 - past 9
- time 13

- verbal nouns 20
- verbs 2, 'Grammar summary', pp. 299–300
 - use of verbs with numbers 7, 10
- vocative 3

- weather 19
- word families 1
- word order 1, 2, 10, 11, 12, 20